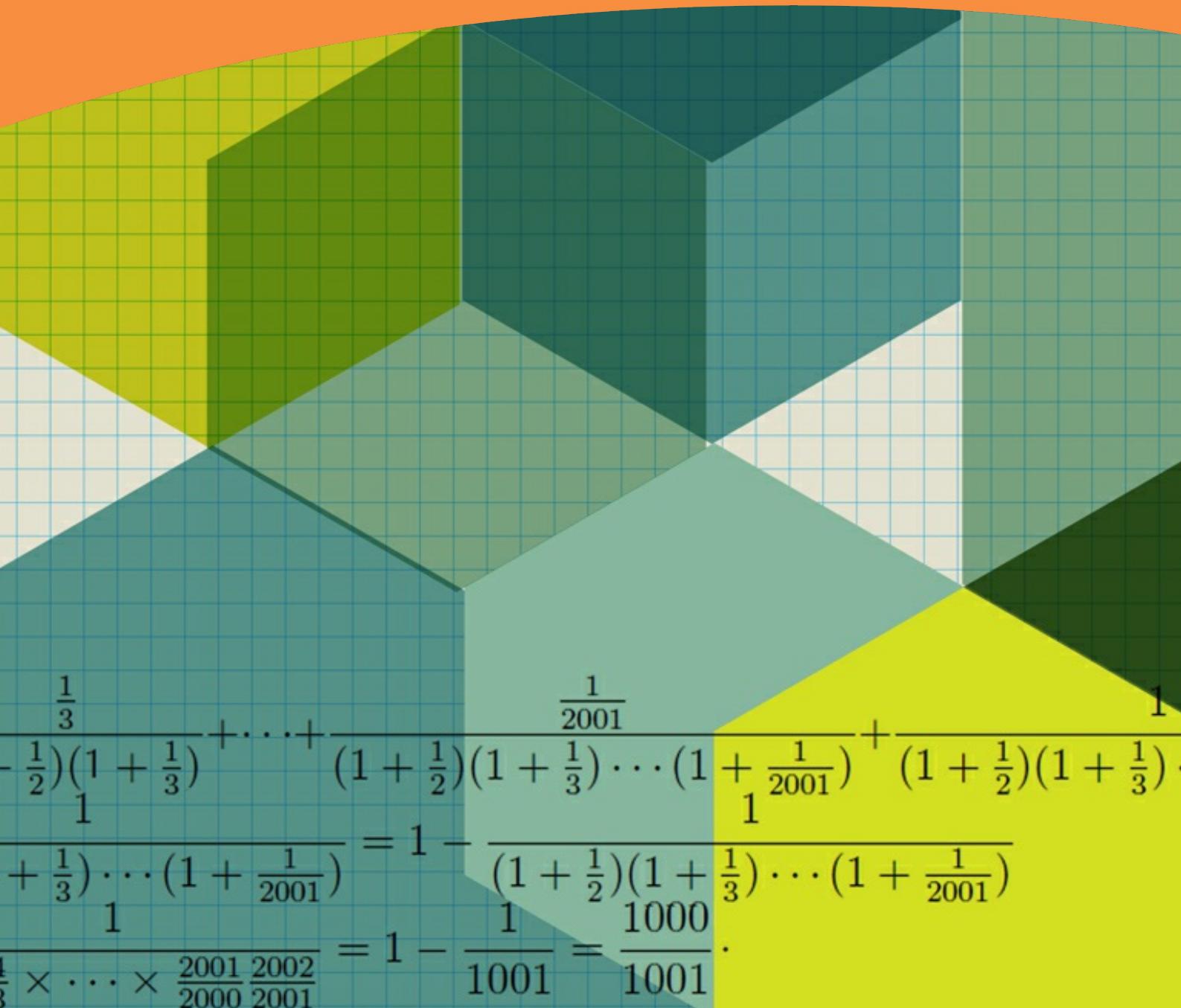


# Elementary Algebra

## Exercise Book II

Hao Wang; Wenlong Wang



WENLONG WANG AND HAO WANG

---

**ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA  
EXERCISE BOOK II**

Elementary Algebra Exercise Book II

2<sup>nd</sup> edition

© 2017 Wenlong Wang, Hao Wang & [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)

ISBN 978-87-403-1583-7

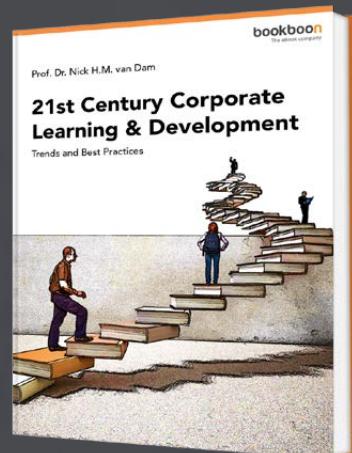
# CONTENTS

<b>Author Biographies</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Preface</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4 Trigonometric Functions</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>5 Sequences</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>6 Functions</b>	<b>95</b>

## Free eBook on Learning & Development

By the Chief Learning Officer of McKinsey

**Download Now**



Download free eBooks at [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)



**Click on the ad to read more**

# AUTHOR BIOGRAPHIES

Mr. Wenlong Wang is a retired mathematics educator in China.

Professor Hao Wang is a faculty member in the Department of Mathematical & Statistical Sciences at the University of Alberta, an advisory board member of Centre for Mathematical Biology, an associate editor for International Journal of Numerical Analysis & Modeling - Series B, an editor for Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory (an international journal of research and surveys), an editor for a special issue of The Canadian Applied Mathematics Quarterly, and an associate faculty member for Faculty of 1000 Biology. Dr. Wang has strong interests in interdisciplinary research of mathematical biology. His research group is working on areas as diverse as modeling stoichiometry-based ecological interactions, microbiology, infectious diseases, predator-prey interactions, habitat destruction and biodiversity, risk assessment of oil sands pollution. Mathematical models include ordinary differential equations, delay differential equations, partial differential equations, stochastic differential equations, integral differential/difference equations.

# PREFACE

The series of elementary algebra exercise books is designed for undergraduate students with any background and senior high school students who like challenging problems. This series should be useful for non-math college students to prepare for GRE general test - quantitative reasoning and GRE subject test - mathematics. All the books in this series are independent and helpful for learning elementary algebra knowledge.

The number of stars represents the difficulty of the problem: the least difficult problem has zero star and the most difficult problem has five stars. With this difficulty indicator, each reader can easily pick suitable problems according to his/her own level and goal.

Many thanks to Lina Zhang for translating and typing the our hand-writing notes into Latex.

## 4 TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

- 4.1 Given  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < 0$  and  $\sin x + \cos x = \frac{1}{5}$ , (1) find the value of  $\sin x - \cos x$ ; (2) find the value of  $\frac{3\sin^2 \frac{x}{2} - 2\sin \frac{x}{2}\cos \frac{x}{2} + \cos^2 \frac{x}{2}}{\tan x + \cot x}$ .

Solution: (1) The equation  $\sin x + \cos x = \frac{1}{5}$  implies that  $\sin x = \frac{1}{5} - \cos x$ . Substitute it into  $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$  to obtain  $25\cos^2 x - 5\cos x - 12 = 0$ . Then,  $\cos x = -\frac{3}{5}$  or  $\cos x = \frac{4}{5}$ . Since  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < 0$ , we have  $\cos x = \frac{4}{5}$  and  $\sin x = -\frac{3}{5}$ . Hence,  $\sin x - \cos x = -\frac{7}{5}$ .

$$(2) \text{ The expression is equal to } \frac{2\sin^2 \frac{x}{2} - \sin x + 1}{\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} + \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}} = (2 - \cos x - \sin x) \cdot \sin x \cdot \cos x = (2 - \frac{4}{5} + \frac{3}{5}) \cdot \frac{-3}{5} \cdot \frac{4}{5} = -\frac{108}{125}.$$

- 4.2 Find the range of  $y = \frac{\sin x + 1}{\cos x + 2}$ .

Solution: The equation implies that  $y\cos x + 2y = \sin x + 1$ , then  $\sin x - y\cos x = 2y - 1 \Rightarrow \sqrt{1+y^2} \sin(x - \phi) = 2y - 1$ , where  $\sin \phi = \frac{y}{\sqrt{1+y^2}}$ . Since  $\sin(x - \phi) \leq 1$ , that is  $\sqrt{1+y^2} \geq |2y - 1|$ . Squaring both sides of the equation, we can obtain  $3y^2 - 4y \leq 0$ . Therefore,  $0 \leq y \leq \frac{4}{3}$ , that is, the range of  $y$  is  $[0, \frac{4}{3}]$ .

- 4.3 Given  $f(\theta) = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sin \frac{5}{2}\theta}{2\sin \frac{\theta}{2}}$  ( $0 < \theta < \pi$ ), (1) express  $f(\theta)$  as a polynomial of  $\cos \theta$ . (2) If  $a \in R$ , find the range of  $a$  where there is at least one intersection of the curve  $y = a\cos \theta + a$  with the curve  $y = f(\theta)$ .

Solution: (1)  $f(\theta) = \frac{\sin \frac{5}{2}\theta - \sin \frac{1}{2}\theta}{2\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta} = \frac{\cos \frac{3}{2}\theta \sin \theta}{\sin \frac{1}{2}\theta} = 2\cos \frac{3}{2}\theta \cos \frac{\theta}{2} = \cos 2\theta + \cos \theta = 2\cos^2 \theta + \cos \theta - 1$ .

- (2) According to the given condition and (1), we have

$$\begin{cases} y = 2\cos^2 \theta + \cos \theta - 1 \\ y = a\cos \theta + a \end{cases}$$

It is easy to figure out that  $(\cos \theta + 1)(2\cos \theta - 1) = a(\cos \theta + 1)$ . Since  $0 < \theta < \pi$  and  $\cos \theta + 1 \neq 0$ , we have  $2\cos \theta - 1 = a$ . On the other hand,  $-1 < \cos \theta < 1$ , thus

$$-1 < \frac{a+1}{2} < 1, \text{ which is equivalent to } -3 < a < 1.$$

4.4 Given  $\tan \alpha = \frac{\sin \beta - \cos \beta}{\sin \beta + \cos \beta}$ , show  $\sin \beta - \cos \beta = \pm \sqrt{2} \sin \alpha$ .

Solution: The equation is equivalent to  $\cot \alpha = \frac{\sin \beta + \cos \beta}{\sin \beta - \cos \beta}$ , then  $\cot^2 \alpha + 1 = (\frac{\sin \beta + \cos \beta}{\sin \beta - \cos \beta})^2 + 1 = \frac{2}{1 - 2 \sin \beta \cos \beta}$ , hence  $\frac{1}{\sin^2 \alpha} = \frac{2}{(\sin \beta - \cos \beta)^2}$ , that is  $(\sin \beta - \cos \beta)^2 = 2 \sin^2 \alpha$ . Thus,  $\sin \beta - \cos \beta = \pm \sqrt{2} \sin \alpha$ .

4.5 Given  $e^x - e^{-x} = 2 \tan \theta, e^x + e^{-x} = 2 \sec \theta, 0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , solve for  $x$ .

Proof: Adding the given equations, we obtain  $e^x = \tan \theta + \sec \theta = \frac{1 + \sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = \frac{1 - \cos(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta)}{\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta)} = \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\theta}{2})$ . Since  $e^x > 0, 0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\theta}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}, \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\theta}{2}) > 0$ , then  $x = \ln \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\theta}{2})$ .

4.6 If acute angles  $x$  and  $y$  satisfy  $\sin y \csc x = \cos(x + y), x + y \neq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , evaluate the maximum value of  $\tan y$ .

Solution: Since  $\sin y \csc x = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y \Rightarrow \sin y(\sin x + \csc x) = \cos x \cos y \Rightarrow \tan y = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x + \csc x} = \frac{\sin x \cos x}{1 + \sin^2 x} = \frac{\sin x \cos x}{2 \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x} = \frac{\tan x}{1 + 2 \tan^2 x} \leq \frac{\tan x}{2\sqrt{2} \tan x} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$ , the equality holds if and only if  $\tan x = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ . Therefore, the maximum value is  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$ .

4.7 Given  $\sin \alpha + \sin \beta = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ , evaluate the range of  $\cos \alpha + \cos \beta$ .

Solution: Let  $t = \cos \alpha + \cos \beta \cdots ①$  and  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} = \sin \alpha + \sin \beta \cdots ②$ .

$①^2 + ②^2 \Rightarrow t^2 + \frac{1}{2} = 2 + 2 \cos(\alpha - \beta)$ , that is  $2 \cos(\alpha - \beta) = t^2 - \frac{3}{2}$ . Since  $-1 \leq \cos(\alpha - \beta) \leq 1 \Rightarrow -2 \leq t^2 - \frac{3}{2} \leq 2$ , then  $t^2 \leq \frac{7}{2}, t \in [-\frac{\sqrt{14}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{14}}{2}]$ , hence

$$(\cos \alpha + \cos \beta) \in [-\frac{\sqrt{14}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{14}}{2}].$$

4.8 Solve the inequality  $\arcsin \frac{x-3}{2x-1} > \frac{\pi}{6}$ .

Solution:  $\arcsin \frac{1}{2} = \frac{\pi}{6} \Rightarrow \arcsin \frac{x-3}{2x-1} > \arcsin \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \frac{x-3}{2x-1} > \frac{1}{2}$ .

On the other hand, by the domain of arcsine function, we can obtain  $-1 \leq \frac{x-3}{2x-1} \leq 1$ . Subsequently, we have  $x \leq -2$  as the solution.

4.9 Show  $\arctan \frac{4}{3} + \operatorname{arccot} \frac{5}{12} + \arctan \frac{56}{33} = \pi$ .

Proof: Since  $\tan(\arctan \frac{4}{3} + \arctan \frac{56}{33}) = \frac{\frac{4}{3} + \frac{56}{33}}{1 - \frac{4}{3} \cdot \frac{56}{33}} = -\frac{12}{5}$ , and  $\arctan \frac{4}{3} \in (\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ ,  $\arctan \frac{56}{33} \in (\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , then  $(\arctan \frac{4}{3} + \arctan \frac{56}{33}) \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$ . In addition  $\operatorname{arccot} \frac{5}{12} \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , it implies  $(\pi - \operatorname{arccot} \frac{5}{12}) \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi) \Rightarrow \arctan \frac{4}{3} + \arctan \frac{56}{33} = \pi - \operatorname{arccot} \frac{5}{12}$ . Therefore,  $\arctan \frac{4}{3} + \operatorname{arccot} \frac{5}{12} + \arctan \frac{56}{33} = \pi$ .

4.10 ★ If  $f(n) = \cos \frac{n\pi}{5}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ), evaluate the value of  $f(1) + f(2) + \dots + f(2000)$ .

Solution: Assume the period of the function is T, then  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\frac{\pi}{5}} = 10$ . Thus  $f(1) + f(2) + f(3) + f(4) + f(5) + f(6) + f(7) + f(8) + f(9) + f(10) = \cos \frac{\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{2\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{3\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{4\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{5\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{6\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{7\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{8\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{9\pi}{5} + \cos \frac{10\pi}{5}$ . Since  $\cos \frac{\pi}{5} = \cos \frac{9\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{4\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{6\pi}{5}$ ,  $\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} = \cos \frac{8\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{3\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{7\pi}{5}$ ,  $\cos \frac{3\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{5\pi}{5} = -\cos \frac{10\pi}{5}$ , then  $f(1) + f(2) + \dots + f(10) = 0$ . As a conclusion,  $f(1) + f(2) + \dots + f(2000) = 0$ .

4.11 ★ Find the monotony interval of the function  $y = \cos^2 x + \sin x$ .

Solution: Since  $y = \cos^2 x + \sin x = -\sin^2 x + \sin x + 1$ , let  $t = \sin x$ , then  $y = -t^2 + t + 1 = -(t - \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{5}{4}$ . It is monotonically increasing when  $x \in (-\infty, \frac{1}{2}]$ , and it is monotonically decreasing when  $x \in [\frac{1}{2}, \infty)$ . Since  $t = \sin x \leq \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow 2k\pi + \frac{5\pi}{6} \leq x \leq$

$2k\pi + \frac{13\pi}{6}$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ),  $t = \sin x \geq \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6} \leq x \leq 2k\pi + \frac{5\pi}{6}$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Additionally since the function  $t = \sin x$  is increasing in the interval  $[2k\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}, 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), and it is decreasing in the interval  $[2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, 2k\pi + \frac{3\pi}{2}]$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). As a conclusion, the increasing interval  $y = \cos^2 x + \sin x$  is  $[2k\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}, 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}] \cup [2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, 2k\pi + \frac{5\pi}{6}]$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), the decreasing interval is  $[2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}, 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}] \cup [2k\pi + \frac{5\pi}{6}, 2k\pi + \frac{3\pi}{2}]$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ).

4.12 ★★ Find the domain and range of the function  $y = \sqrt{\arccos(x^2 + x + 1)}$ .

Solution: According to the domain of square root, we can obtain  $0 \leq x^2 + x + 1 \leq 1$ . Since  $x^2 + x + 1 \leq 1$ , then  $-1 \leq x \leq 0$ . Hence, the domain of the function is  $[-1, 0]$ . Since  $x^2 + x + 1 = (x + \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{3}{4} \geq \frac{3}{4} \Rightarrow \frac{3}{4} \leq x^2 + x + 1 \leq 1 \Rightarrow 0 \leq \arccos(x^2 + x + 1) \leq \arccos \frac{3}{4} \Rightarrow 0 \leq \sqrt{\arccos(x^2 + x + 1)} \leq \sqrt{\arccos \frac{3}{4}}$ . Therefore, the range of the function is  $[0, \sqrt{\arccos \frac{3}{4}}]$ .

4.13 For arbitrary real number  $x$  and integer  $n$ , the equation  $f(\sin x) = \sin(4n+1)x$  always holds. Evaluate  $f(\cos x)$ .

Solution: Since  $f(\sin x) = \sin(4n+1)x$  and  $\cos x = \sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)$ , then  $f(\cos x) = f[\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)] = \sin[(4n+1)(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)] = \sin[2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} - (4n+1)x] = \sin[\frac{\pi}{2} - (4n+1)x] = \cos(4n+1)x$ .

4.14 ★★ Given  $x, y \in [-\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ ,  $a \in R$ , and  $x, y$  are the roots of the equation system,

$$\begin{cases} x^3 + \sin x - 2a = 0 \\ 4y^3 + \sin y \cos y + a = 0 \end{cases}$$

find the value of  $\cos(x + 2y)$ .

Solution: The second equation implies  $4y^3 + \sin y \cos y = -a$ . Multiply the equation by  $-2$  to obtain  $(-2y)^3 + \sin(-2y) = 2a$ . The first equation implies  $x^3 + \sin x = 2a$ , then  $f(x) = f(-2y)$ . Let  $f(t) = t^3 + \sin t$ . Since the function  $f(t)$  is increasing where  $t \in [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \Rightarrow x = -2y$ , therefore  $x + 2y = 0$ . As a conclusion,  $\cos(x + 2y) = 1$ .

4.15 Let  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  form a geometric sequence with the common ratio 2,  $\alpha \in [0, 2\pi]$ , and  $\sin \alpha, \sin \beta, \sin \gamma$  also form a geometrical sequence, find the values of  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ .

Solution: Let  $\beta = 2\alpha, \gamma = 4\alpha$ , and  $\frac{\sin \beta}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{\sin \gamma}{\sin \beta} \Rightarrow \frac{\sin 2\alpha}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{\sin 4\alpha}{\sin 2\alpha} \Rightarrow \cos \alpha = 2\cos^2 \alpha - 1 \Rightarrow 2\cos^2 \alpha - \cos \alpha - 1 = 0$ . The roots of  $2\cos^2 \alpha - \cos \alpha - 1 = 0$  are  $\cos \alpha = 1$  and  $\cos \alpha = -\frac{1}{2}$ . When  $\cos \alpha = 1$ , then  $\sin \alpha = 0$ , it does not satisfy the condition that the first term is nonzero. Therefore,  $\cos \alpha \neq 1$ . When  $\cos \alpha = -\frac{1}{2}$ , since  $\alpha \in [0, 2\pi]$ , then  $\alpha = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  or  $\alpha = \frac{4\pi}{3}$ . When  $\alpha = \frac{2\pi}{3}$ , then  $\beta = \frac{4\pi}{3}, \gamma = \frac{8\pi}{3}$ . When  $\alpha = \frac{4\pi}{3}$ , then  $\beta = \frac{8\pi}{3}, \gamma = \frac{16\pi}{3}$ .

4.16 Compare  $\arcsin \frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\arctan \sqrt{2}$ ,  $\arccos \frac{3}{4}$ .

Solution: Let  $\arcsin \frac{1}{3} = \alpha$ , then  $\sin \alpha = \frac{1}{3} < \frac{1}{2}$ , thus  $0 < \alpha < \frac{\pi}{6}$ .

Let  $\arctan \sqrt{2} = \beta$ , then  $\tan \beta = \sqrt{2}$ . Since  $1 < \sqrt{2} < \sqrt{3}$ , then  $\frac{\pi}{4} < \beta < \frac{\pi}{3}$ .

Let  $\arccos \frac{3}{4} = \gamma$ , then  $\cos \gamma = \frac{3}{4}$ . Since  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} < \frac{3}{4} < \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , then  $\frac{\pi}{6} < \gamma < \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

As a conclusion,  $\alpha < \gamma < \beta$ , therefore,  $\arcsin \frac{1}{3} < \arccos \frac{3}{4} < \arctan \sqrt{2}$ .



[www.sylvania.com](http://www.sylvania.com)

We do not reinvent the wheel we reinvent light.

Fascinating lighting offers an infinite spectrum of possibilities: Innovative technologies and new markets provide both opportunities and challenges. An environment in which your expertise is in high demand. Enjoy the supportive working atmosphere within our global group and benefit from international career paths. Implement sustainable ideas in close cooperation with other specialists and contribute to influencing our future. Come and join us in reinventing light every day.

Light is OSRAM

**OSRAM**  SYLVANIA



4.17 ★ Given  $\vec{a} = (\cos \frac{3}{2}x, \sin \frac{3}{2}x)$ ,  $\vec{b} = (\cos \frac{x}{2}, -\sin \frac{x}{2})$ ,  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . (1) Solve  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}$  and  $|\vec{a} + \vec{b}|$ . (2) If the minimum value of  $f(x) = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} - 2\lambda|\vec{a} + \vec{b}|$  is  $-\frac{3}{2}$ , compute  $\lambda$ .

Solution: (1)  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = \cos \frac{3}{2}x \cos \frac{x}{2} - \sin \frac{3}{2}x \sin \frac{x}{2} = \cos 2x$ ,  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ .  
 $|\vec{a} + \vec{b}| = \sqrt{(\cos \frac{3}{2}x + \cos \frac{x}{2})^2 + (\sin \frac{3}{2}x - \sin \frac{x}{2})^2} = 2\sqrt{\cos^2 x} = 2\cos x$ ,  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ .  
(2)  $f(x) = \cos 2x - 4\lambda \cos x = 2\cos^2 x - 4\lambda \cos x - 1 = 2(\cos x - \lambda)^2 - 1 - 2\lambda^2$ . Since  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , then  $\cos x \in [0, 1]$ .

When  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $\cos x = 0$ , then  $f(x)_{min} = -1$ . It does not satisfy the given condition.

When  $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ ,  $\cos x = \lambda$ , then  $f(x)_{min} = -1 - 2\lambda^2 = -\frac{3}{2}$ , then  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$ .

When  $\lambda \geq 1$ ,  $\cos x = 1$ , then  $f(x)_{min} = 1 - 4\lambda = -\frac{3}{2}$ , then  $\lambda = \frac{5}{8} < 1$ . It does not satisfy the condition  $\lambda \geq 1$ . After all,  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$ .

4.18 Let  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\sin A + \cos A = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ ,  $AC = 2$ ,  $AB = 3$ , find the value of  $\tan A$  and the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Solution: Since  $\sin A + \cos A = \sqrt{2} \cos(A - 45^\circ) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \Rightarrow \cos(A - 45^\circ) = \frac{1}{2}$ . Additionally,  $0 < A < 180^\circ$ , then  $A - 45^\circ = 60^\circ \Rightarrow A = 105^\circ \Rightarrow \tan A = \tan(45^\circ + 60^\circ) = \frac{1 + \sqrt{3}}{1 - \sqrt{3}} = -2 - \sqrt{3}$ . Since  $\sin A = \sin(45^\circ + 60^\circ) = \sin 45^\circ \cos 60^\circ + \cos 45^\circ \sin 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{6}}{4}$ , we have  $S_{\triangle ABC} = \frac{1}{2}AC \cdot AB \cdot \sin A = \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 3 \times \frac{\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{6}}{4} = \frac{3}{4}(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{6})$ .

4.19 Find the symmetric center, the symmetric axis equation of the function  $y = 3 - 2 \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3})$  and the value of  $x$  when  $y$  has the maximum and the minimum.

Solution : Since the symmetric center of  $y = \cos x$  is  $(k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), and the symmetric axis equation is  $k\pi$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Thus,  $2x - \frac{\pi}{3} = k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} \Rightarrow x = \frac{k\pi}{2} + \frac{5\pi}{12}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ).

Since  $2x - \frac{\pi}{3} = k\pi$ , then  $x = \frac{k\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{6}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), therefore the the symmetric center of the function  $y = 3 - 2 \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3})$  is  $(\frac{k\pi}{2} + \frac{5\pi}{12}, 3)$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), and the symmetric axis equation is  $x = \frac{k\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{6}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). When  $2x - \frac{\pi}{3} = 2k\pi \Rightarrow x = k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), the minimum of  $y = 3 - 2 \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3})$  is 1. When  $2x - \frac{\pi}{3} = (2k+1)\pi \Rightarrow x = k\pi + \frac{2\pi}{3}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), the maximum of  $y = 3 - 2 \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3})$  is 5.

4.20 ★ If the equation  $(2 \cos \theta - 1)x^2 - 4x + 4 \cos \theta + 2 = 0$  has two distinct positive roots, and  $\theta$  is an acute angle. Find the range of  $\theta$ .

Solution: Assume the two roots are  $x_1, x_2 > 0$ . Since  $\Delta = (-4)^2 - 4(2 \cos \theta - 1)(4 \cos \theta + 2) > 0$ , then  $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} < \cos \theta < \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  ①. Since  $x_1 + x_2 = \frac{4}{2 \cos \theta - 1} > 0$ , then  $\cos \theta > \frac{1}{2}$  ②. Since  $x_1 x_2 = \frac{4 \cos \theta + 2}{2 \cos \theta - 1} > 0$ , then  $\cos \theta < -\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\cos \theta > \frac{1}{2}$  ... ③. According to ①, ②, ③, we can obtain  $\frac{1}{2} < \cos \theta < \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ . Since  $\theta$  is an acute angle, then  $30^\circ < \theta < 60^\circ$ .

4.21 Let the function  $f(x) = -a \cos 2x - 2\sqrt{3}a \sin x \cos x + 2a + b$ , its domain is  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , the range is  $[-5, 1]$ . Evaluate  $a$  and  $b$ .

Solution:  $f(x) = -a \cos 2x - \sqrt{3}a \sin 2x + 2a + b = -2a \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}) + 2a + b$ . Since  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}] \Rightarrow -\frac{\pi}{3} \leq 2x - \frac{\pi}{3} \leq \frac{2\pi}{3}$ , then  $-\frac{1}{2} \leq \cos(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}) \leq 1$ . When  $a > 0$ , then  $b \leq f(x) \leq 3a + b \Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} 3a + b = 1 \\ b = -5 \end{cases}$$

we can obtain  $a = 2, b = -5$ .

When  $a < 0$ , then  $3a + b \leq f(x) \leq b \Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} 3a + b = -5 \\ b = 1 \end{cases}$$

we can obtain  $a = -2, b = 1$ .

4.22 ★ Given  $\tan(\cos^{-1} \sqrt{x}) = \sin(\cot^{-1} \frac{1}{2})$ , find the value of  $x$ .

Solution: Let  $\cos^{-1} \sqrt{x} = \theta$ , then  $\cos \theta = \sqrt{x}$ ,  $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = \frac{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \theta}}{\cos \theta} = \frac{\sqrt{1 - x}}{\sqrt{x}}$ . Let  $\cot^{-1} \frac{1}{2} = \phi$ , then  $\cot \phi = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\sin \phi = \frac{1}{\csc \phi} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \cot^2 \phi}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$ . The equation is equal to  $\frac{\sqrt{1 - x}}{\sqrt{x}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} \Rightarrow \frac{1 - x}{x} = \frac{4}{5}$ , therefore  $x = \frac{5}{9}$ .

4.23 ★ Let  $0 < \theta < \pi$ , find the maximum value of  $\sin \frac{\theta}{2}(1 + \cos \theta)$ .

Solution: Since  $0 < \theta < \pi$ , then  $\sin \frac{\theta}{2}(1 + \cos \theta) = 2\sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = \sqrt{2}\sqrt{2\sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \cos^4 \frac{\theta}{2}} \leqslant \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\left(\frac{2\sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}{3}\right)^3} = \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3} = \sqrt{2} \times \frac{2}{3} \times \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{4\sqrt{3}}{9}$ . Hence the maximum value of  $\sin \frac{\theta}{2}(1 + \cos \theta)$  is  $\frac{4\sqrt{3}}{9}$ .

4.24 ★ Find the value of  $\sin^4 \frac{\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \frac{5\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \frac{7\pi}{16}$ .

Solution: The quantity is equal to  $\sin^4 \frac{\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{3\pi}{16}\right) + \sin^4 \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{16}\right) = \sin^4 \frac{\pi}{16} + \sin^4 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \cos^4 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \cos^4 \frac{\pi}{16} = (\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{16})^2 - 2\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{16} \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{16} + (\sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{16} + \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{16})^2 - 2\sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{16} \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{16} = 2 - \frac{1}{2}(\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{8} + \sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{8}) = 2 - \frac{1}{2}[\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{8} + \sin^2(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{8})] = 2 - \frac{1}{2}(\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{8} + \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{8}) = \frac{3}{2}$ .



**Deloitte.**

© Deloitte & Touche LLP and affiliated entities.

Discover the truth at [www.deloitte.ca/careers](http://www.deloitte.ca/careers)



4.25 ★ Given vector  $\vec{m} = (\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$ ,  $\vec{n} = (\sqrt{2} - \sin \theta, \cos \theta)$ ,  $\theta \in (\pi, 2\pi)$ , and  $|\vec{m} + \vec{n}| = \frac{8\sqrt{2}}{5}$ , find the value of  $\cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8})$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $\vec{m} + \vec{n} = (\cos \theta - \sin \theta + \sqrt{2}, \sin \theta + \cos \theta)$ , then  $|\vec{m} + \vec{n}| = \sqrt{(\cos \theta - \sin \theta + \sqrt{2})^2 + (\sin \theta + \cos \theta)^2} = \sqrt{4 + 2\sqrt{2}(\cos \theta - \sin \theta)} = \sqrt{4 + 4\cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})} = 2\sqrt{1 + \cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})}$ . Since  $|\vec{m} + \vec{n}| = \frac{8\sqrt{2}}{5} \Rightarrow 2\sqrt{1 + \cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})} = \frac{8\sqrt{2}}{5} \Rightarrow \cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \frac{7}{25}$ . Since  $\cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}) = 2\cos^2(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8}) - 1 \Rightarrow \cos^2(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8}) = \frac{16}{25}$ . Since  $\pi < \theta < 2\pi \Rightarrow \frac{5\pi}{8} < \frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8} < \frac{9\pi}{8} \Rightarrow \cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8}) < 0$ . Thus,  $\cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{\pi}{8}) = -\frac{4}{5}$ .

4.26 ★★ Given  $\alpha, \beta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{4})$ ,  $3\sin \beta = \sin(2\alpha + \beta)$ ,  $4\tan \frac{\alpha}{2} = 1 - \tan^2 \frac{\alpha}{2}$ , evaluate  $\alpha + \beta$ .

Solution: Since  $4\tan \frac{\alpha}{2} = 1 - \tan^2 \frac{\alpha}{2} \Rightarrow \frac{4\tan \frac{\alpha}{2}}{1 - \tan^2 \frac{\alpha}{2}} = 1 \Rightarrow 2\tan \alpha = 1 \Rightarrow \tan \alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ .

Since  $3\sin \beta = \sin(2\alpha + \beta) = \sin(\alpha + \beta)\cos \alpha + \cos(\alpha + \beta)\sin \alpha$  ①,

$3\sin \beta = 3\sin(\alpha + \beta - \alpha) = 3\sin(\alpha + \beta)\cos \alpha - 3\cos(\alpha + \beta)\sin \alpha$  ②.

② - ①  $\Rightarrow \sin(\alpha + \beta)\cos \alpha = 2\cos(\alpha + \beta)\sin \alpha \Rightarrow \tan(\alpha + \beta) = 2\tan \alpha = 1$ . For  $\alpha, \beta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{4})$ , thus  $\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

4.27 ★ Find the domain and range of the function  $y = \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\arctan \sqrt{2\cos x - 1}$ .

Solution: the function is defined if and only if  $2\cos x - 1 \geq 0$ , that is  $\cos x \geq \frac{1}{2}$ .

Thus the domain of y is  $2n\pi - \frac{\pi}{3} \leq x \leq 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{3}$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ).

Since  $0 \leq \sqrt{2\cos x - 1} \leq 1$ , then  $0 \leq \arctan \sqrt{2\cos x - 1} \leq \frac{\pi}{4}$ , thus  $\frac{\pi}{8} \leq y \leq \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

Therefore, the domain of the function is  $x \in [2n\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}, 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{3}]$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), and the range is  $y \in [\frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ .

4.28 ★ Given  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\frac{a^3 + b^3 + c^3}{a + b + c} = c^2$ , and  $\sin A \sin B = \frac{3}{4}$ . Judge the shape of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Solution:  $\frac{a^3 + b^3 + c^3}{a + b + c} = c^2 \Rightarrow a^3 + b^3 = ac^2 + bc^2 \Rightarrow (a+b)(a^2 - ab + b^2) = c^2(a+b)$ . Since  $a+b \neq 0$ , then  $a^2 - ab + b^2 = c^2$  ①. The cosine theorem is  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$  ②. According to ①, ②, we get  $\cos C = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow C = 60^\circ \Rightarrow A + B = 120^\circ$ . Since  $\sin A \sin B = \frac{3}{4} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{2}[\cos(A-B) - \cos(A+B)] = \frac{3}{4}$ , then  $\cos(A-B) = \frac{3}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 1$ , thus  $A - B = 0 \Rightarrow A = B$ . Therefore  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle.

4.29 ★★ Let  $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $f(x)$  satisfies  $2f(-\sin x) + 3f(\sin x) = 4\sin x \cos x$ .

(1) Show  $f(x)$  is an odd function. (2) Find the analytic expression of  $f(x)$ .

(1) Proof: Since  $2f(-\sin x) + 3f(\sin x) = 4\sin x \cos x$  ①, substitute  $-\sin x$  into ① to obtain  $2f(\sin x) + 3f(-\sin x) = -4\sin x \cos x$  ②. ① + ②  $\Rightarrow 5f(\sin x) + 5f(-\sin x) = 0 \Rightarrow f(\sin x) = -f(-\sin x)$ , therefore  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

(2) Solution: ① - ②  $\Rightarrow f(\sin x) - f(-\sin x) = 8\sin x \cos x$ . Since  $f(\sin x) = -f(-\sin x) \Rightarrow 2f(\sin x) = 8\sin x \cos x$ , then  $f(\sin x) = 4\sin x \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}$ ,  $(-1 \leq x \leq 1)$ . Therefore,  $f(x) = 4x\sqrt{1 - x^2}$ ,  $(-1 \leq x \leq 1)$ .

4.30 ★ Solve the equation  $\sin x + \cos x + \sin x \cos x = 1$ .

Solution 1: Multiply both sides of the equation by 2 and adding 1, we obtain  $2(\sin x + \cos x) + 2\sin x \cos x + 1 = 3 \Rightarrow (\sin x + \cos x)^2 + 2(\sin x + \cos x) - 3 = 0 \Rightarrow [(\sin x + \cos x) - 1][(sin x + \cos x) + 3] = 0 \Rightarrow \sin x + \cos x = 1$  or  $\sin x + \cos x = -3$ . Since  $-1 \leq \sin x \leq 1$ ,  $-1 \leq \cos x \leq 1$ , we have  $\sin x + \cos x \neq -3$ .

Since  $\sin x + \cos x = 1 \Rightarrow \sqrt{2}\sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = 1 \Rightarrow \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \Rightarrow x + \frac{\pi}{4} = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$ , or  $x + \frac{\pi}{4} = (2k+1)\pi - \frac{\pi}{4} \Rightarrow x = 2k\pi$ , or  $x = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Therefore, the solution of the equation is  $\{x|x = 2k\pi, k \in \mathbb{Z}\} \cup \{x|x = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ .

Solution 2: Assume  $\sin x + \cos x = u$ , then  $\sin x \cos x = \frac{u^2 - 1}{2}$ . Substitute it into the

equation  $\sin x + \cos x + \sin x \cos x = 1$ :  $u + \frac{u^2 - 1}{2} = 1 \Rightarrow u^2 + 2u - 3 = 0 \Rightarrow u = 1$  or  $u = -3$ . Since  $-1 \leq \sin x \leq 1$ ,  $-1 \leq \cos x \leq 1$ , then  $u = \sin x + \cos x \neq -3$ . Hence,  $\sin x + \cos x = 1 \Rightarrow \sqrt{2}\sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = 1 \Rightarrow \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \Rightarrow x + \frac{\pi}{4} = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$ , or  $x + \frac{\pi}{4} = (2k+1)\pi - \frac{\pi}{4} \Rightarrow x = 2k\pi$ , or  $x = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$ , ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Therefore, the solution of the equation is  $\{x|x = 2k\pi, k \in \mathbb{Z}\} \cup \{x|x = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ .

4.31 ★ If  $0 < x < 45^\circ$ , and  $\lg \tan x - \lg \sin x = \lg \cos x - \lg \cot x + \lg 9 - \lg \sqrt{8}$ , find the value of  $\cos x - \sin x$ .

Solution: The given equation is equal to  $\lg(\sin x \cos x) - \lg(\tan x \cot x) = \lg \sqrt{8} - \lg 9$ , then  $\sin x \cos x = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{9}$ . Since  $(\cos x - \sin x)^2 = 1 - 2\sin x \cos x = 1 - \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{9} = \frac{9 - 4\sqrt{2}}{9}$ ,  $0 < x < 45^\circ$ ,  $\cos x > \sin x$ . Thus  $\cos x - \sin x = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{9 - 4\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{3}(2\sqrt{2} - 1)$ .

4.32 ★★ Find all positive integer solutions which satisfy the equation  $\tan^{-1} x + \cot^{-1} y = \tan^{-1} 3$ .

Solution:  $\tan^{-1} x + \cot^{-1} y = \tan^{-1} 3 \Rightarrow \tan^{-1} x + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{y} = \tan^{-1} 3 \Rightarrow \tan(\tan^{-1} x + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{y}) = \tan(\tan^{-1} 3) \Rightarrow \frac{x + \frac{1}{y}}{1 - \frac{x}{y}} = 3 \Rightarrow x = \frac{3y - 1}{y + 3} = 3 - \frac{10}{y + 3}$ . Since  $x, y$  are positive integers, then  $y + 3$  is the divisor of 10. Thus  $y = 2$  or  $y = 7$ ,  $x = 1$  or  $x = 2$ . As a conclusion, the positive integer solutions are

$$\begin{cases} x = 1 \\ y = 2 \end{cases}$$

or

$$\begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = 7 \end{cases}$$

4.33 ★★ Check the sign of the formula  $\frac{\sin(\cos \theta)}{\cos(\sin 2\theta)}$  when  $\theta$  is in the second quadrant.

If  $\pi < \alpha + \beta < \frac{4\pi}{3}$ ,  $-\pi < \alpha - \beta < -\frac{\pi}{3}$ , find the range of  $2\alpha - \beta$ .

SIMPLY CLEVER
ŠKODA

We will turn your CV into an opportunity of a lifetime

Do you like cars? Would you like to be a part of a successful brand?  
We will appreciate and reward both your enthusiasm and talent.  
Send us your CV. You will be surprised where it can take you.

Send us your CV on  
[www.employerforlife.com](http://www.employerforlife.com)

Solution: (1)  $2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 2k\pi + \pi$ . ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ )  $\Rightarrow -1 < \cos \theta < 0$ . The condition

$4k\pi + \pi < 2\theta < 4k\pi + 2\pi$  gives  $-1 < \sin 2\theta < 0$ . Thus  $\sin(\cos \theta) < 0$ ,  $\cos(\sin 2\theta) > 0$ .

Therefore  $\frac{\sin(\cos \theta)}{\cos(\sin 2\theta)} < 0$ .

(2) Assume  $x = \alpha + \beta$ ,  $y = \alpha - \beta$ ,  $2\alpha - \beta = mx + ny$ . Then  $2\alpha - \beta = m\alpha + m\beta + n\alpha - n\beta = (m+n)\alpha + (m-n)\beta$ . Comparing the coefficients, we have

$$\begin{cases} m+n=2 \\ m-n=1 \end{cases}$$

Hence  $m = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $n = \frac{3}{2} \Rightarrow 2\alpha - \beta = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}y$ . Since  $\pi < x < \frac{4\pi}{3}$ ,  $-\pi < y < -\frac{\pi}{3}$ , then  $-\pi < \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}y < \frac{\pi}{6}$ . As a conclusion, the range of  $2\alpha - \beta$  is  $(-\pi, \frac{\pi}{6})$ .

4.34 ★★ Let  $\tan \alpha + \sin \alpha = m$ ,  $\tan \alpha - \sin \alpha = n$ . Show  $m^2 - n^2 = 4\sqrt{mn}$ .

Solution: Multiplying the two equations together to obtain  $mn = \tan^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = \tan^2 \alpha(1 - \cos^2 \alpha) = \tan^2 \alpha \sin^2 \alpha$  ①.

Adding the two equations:  $2\tan \alpha = m + n \Rightarrow \tan \alpha = \frac{m+n}{2}$  ②.

Using subtraction for the two equations:  $2\sin \alpha = m - n \Rightarrow \sin \alpha = \frac{m-n}{2}$  ③.

Substituting ② and ③ into ①  $\Rightarrow mn = (\frac{m+n}{2})^2(\frac{m-n}{2})^2 \Rightarrow m^2 - n^2 = 4\sqrt{mn}$ .

4.35 ★ Given  $\frac{a}{\cos \alpha} = \frac{b}{\cos 2\alpha} = \frac{c}{\cos 3\alpha} \neq 0$ , show  $\sin^2 \frac{\alpha}{2} = \frac{2b-a-c}{4b}$ .

Proof: Applying the equal ratio theorem, we have  $\frac{b}{\cos 2\alpha} = \frac{a+c}{\cos \alpha + 3\cos \alpha} \neq 0$ . Since  $\cos \alpha \neq 0$ ,  $\cos 2\alpha \neq 0 \Rightarrow \frac{b}{\cos 2\alpha} = \frac{a+c}{2\cos \alpha \cos 2\alpha} \neq 0$ . In particular,  $b \neq 0$ ,  $\cos \alpha = \frac{a+c}{2b}$ . Therefore  $\sin^2 \frac{\alpha}{2} = \frac{1-\cos \alpha}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{a+c}{2b}) = \frac{2b-a-c}{4b}$ .

4.36 ★★ Let  $\sin^2(n+1)\theta = \sin^2 n\theta + \sin^2(n-1)\theta$ , and  $(n+1)\theta, n\theta, (n-1)\theta$  are the three interior angles of a triangle, find the integer value of  $n$ .

Solution:  $\sin^2(n+1)\theta = \sin^2 n\theta + \sin^2(n-1)\theta \Rightarrow \sin^2(n+1)\theta - \sin^2(n-1)\theta = \sin^2 n\theta \Rightarrow [\sin(n+1)\theta - \sin(n-1)\theta][\sin(n+1)\theta + \sin(n-1)\theta] = \sin^2 n\theta \Rightarrow 2\sin \theta \cos n\theta 2\sin n\theta \cos \theta = \sin^2 n\theta \Rightarrow \sin 2n\theta \sin 2\theta = \sin^2 n\theta$  (\*). Since  $(n+1)\theta + n\theta + (n-1)\theta = \pi$ , then  $n\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Substituting it into (\*), then  $\sin 2\theta = \frac{1}{2}\tan \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \Rightarrow 2\theta = \frac{\pi}{3} \Rightarrow \theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ . Since  $n\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ , we have  $n = 2$ .

4.37 ★★ Given  $\sin \alpha + 3 \cos \alpha = 2$ , compute  $\frac{\sin \alpha - \cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha}$ .

Solution: Let  $\frac{\sin \alpha - \cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha} = k \Rightarrow (1 - k) \sin \alpha = (1 + k) \cos \alpha$  ①. Denote  $\sin \alpha = 2 - 3 \cos \alpha$  ②. Applying ② ÷ ①, we have  $\cos \alpha = \frac{1 - k}{2 - k}$ . Substituting it into ①, we have  $\sin \alpha = \frac{1 + k}{2 - k}$  ( $k \neq 2$ ). Since  $\sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha = 1$ , then  $(\frac{1 + k}{2 - k})^2 + (\frac{1 - k}{2 - k})^2 = 1$ . It can be written as  $k^2 + 4k - 2 = 0$ . Solving the equation, we have  $k = -2 \pm \sqrt{6}$ . As a conclusion,  $\frac{\sin \alpha - \cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha} = -2 \pm \sqrt{6}$ .

4.38 ★★ Let  $a, b, c$  are the three side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$ , and they form a geometric sequence, and  $\cos B = \frac{3}{4}$ . (1) Find the value of  $\cot A + \cot C$ . (2) Let  $\overrightarrow{BA}\overrightarrow{BC} = \frac{3}{2}$ , compute  $a + c$ .

Solution: (1)  $\cos B = \frac{3}{4} \Rightarrow 0 < B < \frac{\pi}{2} \Rightarrow \sin B = \sqrt{1 - (\frac{3}{4})^2} = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}$ . Since  $a, b, c$  form a geometric sequence, applying the sine theorem, we have  $\sin^2 B = \sin A \sin C$ . Therefore  $\cot A + \cot C = \frac{\cos A}{\sin A} + \frac{\cos C}{\sin C} = \frac{\sin(A+C)}{\sin A \sin C} = \frac{\sin B}{\sin^2 B} = \frac{1}{\sin B} = \frac{4\sqrt{7}}{7}$ . (2)  $\overrightarrow{BA}\overrightarrow{BC} = \frac{3}{2} \Rightarrow ca \cos B = \frac{3}{2}$ . Additionally  $\cos B = \frac{3}{4}$ , thus  $ca = 2$ . Since  $b^2 = ac = 2$ , applying the cosine theorem  $b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$ , we have  $a^2 + c^2 = b^2 + 2ac \cos B = 5 \Rightarrow (a+c)^2 = a^2 + c^2 + 2ac = 5 + 4 = 9$ . Therefore,  $a + c = 3$ .

4.39 ★★★ If  $\log_{\tan \theta} \cos \theta = \frac{2}{3}$ , ( $\theta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ ), find the value of  $\log_{\csc^2 \theta}(\frac{\sin 2\theta}{2})$ .

Solution: Changing the base number of the given equation, we have  $\frac{\lg \cos \theta}{\lg \sin \theta - \lg \cos \theta} = \frac{2}{3} \Rightarrow \frac{\lg \cos \theta}{\lg \sin \theta} = \frac{2}{5} \Rightarrow \log_{\sin \theta} \cos \theta = \frac{2}{5}$ . Hence,  $\log_{\csc^2 \theta}(\frac{\sin 2\theta}{2}) = -\log_{\sin^2 \theta}(\sin \theta \cos \theta) = -\log_{\sin \theta}(\sin \theta \cos \theta)^{\frac{1}{2}} = -\frac{1}{2} \log_{\sin \theta}(\sin \theta \cos \theta) = -\frac{1 + \log_{\sin \theta} \cos \theta}{2} = -\frac{1 + \frac{2}{5}}{2} = -\frac{7}{10}$ .

4.40 ★ Given  $f(x) = 2a \cos^2 x + b \sin x \cos x$ ,  $f(0) = 2$ ,  $f(\frac{\pi}{3}) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , find the set of  $x$  values that satisfy the formula  $f(x) > 2$ .

Solution:  $f(0) = 2a = 2 \Rightarrow a = 1$ . Since  $f\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{1}{2}a + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}b = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , substituting  $a = 1$  into this formula, we have  $b = 2$ . Thus  $f(x) = 2\cos^2 x + 2\sin x \cos x = \sin 2x + \cos 2x + 1$ . Since  $f(x) > 2$ , then  $\sin 2x + \cos 2x + 1 > 2 \Rightarrow \sin(2x + \frac{\pi}{4}) > \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \Rightarrow 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4} < (2x + \frac{\pi}{4}) < 2k\pi + \frac{3\pi}{4}. (k \in Z)$ . Therefore the set of  $x$  values that satisfy the formula  $f(x) > 2$  is  $\{x | k\pi < x < k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}, k \in Z\}$ .

**4.41 ★★** Let  $a, b, c$  are the three side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$ , and they form a geometric sequence.  $\sin B + \cos B = m^2$ . Find the range of  $m$ .

Solution: Since  $a, b, c$  form a geometric sequence, then  $b^2 = ac$ . Applying the sine theorem, we have  $\sin^2 B = \sin A \sin C$ . Then  $1 - \cos^2 B = -\frac{1}{2}[\cos(A+C) - \cos(A-C)] \Rightarrow 2\cos^2 B + \cos B - 1 = 1 - \cos(A-C) \Rightarrow 2\cos^2 B + \cos B - 1 \geq 0 \Rightarrow \cos B \geq \frac{1}{2}$ , or  $\cos B \leq -1$  (truncated). Hence  $0 < B \leq \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Additionally since  $\sin B + \cos B = \sqrt{2} \sin(B + \frac{\pi}{4}) \Rightarrow 1 \leq m^2 \leq \sqrt{2} \Rightarrow -\sqrt[4]{2} \leq m \leq -1$ , or  $1 \leq m \leq \sqrt[4]{2}$ .

**About e-Learning for Kids** Established in 2004, e-Learning for Kids is a global nonprofit foundation dedicated to fun and free learning on the Internet for children ages 5 - 12 with courses in math, science, language arts, computers, health and environmental skills. Since 2005, more than 15 million children in over 190 countries have benefitted from eLessons provided by EFK! An all-volunteer staff consists of education and e-learning experts and business professionals from around the world committed to making difference. eLearning for Kids is actively seeking funding, volunteers, sponsors and courseware developers; get involved! For more information, please visit [www.e-learningforkids.org](http://www.e-learningforkids.org).



4.42 ★ Let  $\alpha, \beta$  are the two real roots of the equation  $x^2 + 2(\sin \theta + 1)x + \sin^2 \theta = 0$ , and  $|\alpha - \beta| \leq 2\sqrt{2}$ . Find the range of  $\theta$ .

Solution: Since the equation has real roots, then  $\Delta = 4(\sin \theta + 1)^2 - 4\sin^2 \theta = 8\sin \theta + 4 \geq 0 \Rightarrow \sin \theta \geq -\frac{1}{2}$ . Applying the Vieta theorem, we have

$$\begin{cases} \alpha + \beta = -2(\sin \theta + 1) \\ 2\alpha\beta = \sin^2 \theta \end{cases}$$

Hence  $(\alpha - \beta)^2 = (\alpha + \beta)^2 - 4\alpha\beta = 8|\sin \theta| + 4$  ①. Since  $|\alpha - \beta| \leq 2\sqrt{2} \Rightarrow (\alpha - \beta)^2 \leq 8$  ②. According to ① and ②, we have  $8|\sin \theta| + 4 \leq 8 \Rightarrow |\sin \theta| \leq \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow -\frac{1}{2} \leq \sin \theta \leq \frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $k\pi - \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ).

4.43 ★★ Let  $A, B, C$  are the three interior angles of triangle  $\triangle ABC$ , show that  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} \leq \frac{1}{8}$ .

Proof 1:  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} = -\frac{1}{2}(\cos \frac{A+B}{2} - \cos \frac{A-B}{2}) \sin \frac{C}{2} = -\frac{1}{2}(\sin^2 \frac{C}{2} - \sin \frac{C}{2} \cos \frac{A-B}{2}) = -\frac{1}{2}(\sin^2 \frac{C}{2} - \sin \frac{C}{2} \cos \frac{A-B}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \cos^2 \frac{A-B}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \cos^2 \frac{A-B}{2}) = -\frac{1}{2}[(\sin \frac{C}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{A-B}{2})^2 - \frac{1}{4} \cos^2 \frac{A-B}{2}] = \frac{1}{8} \cos^2 \frac{A-B}{2} - \frac{1}{2}(\sin \frac{C}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{A-B}{2})^2 \leq \frac{1}{8}$ .

Proof 2: Since  $\sin^2 \frac{A}{2} = \frac{1 - \cos A}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}) = \frac{a^2 - (b-c)^2}{4bc} \leq \frac{a^2}{4bc}$ , and  $\sin^2 \frac{A}{2} \geq 0 \Rightarrow \sin \frac{A}{2} \leq \frac{a}{2\sqrt{bc}}$ . Similarly, we have  $\sin \frac{B}{2} \leq \frac{b}{2\sqrt{ac}}$ ,  $\sin \frac{C}{2} \leq \frac{c}{2\sqrt{ab}}$ .

Hence  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} \leq \frac{a}{2\sqrt{bc}} \frac{b}{2\sqrt{ac}} \frac{c}{2\sqrt{ab}} = \frac{1}{8}$ .

4.44 ★ Given vectors  $\vec{a} = (2 \cos \frac{x}{2}, \tan(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}))$ ,  $\vec{b} = (\sqrt{2} \sin(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}), \tan(\frac{x}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4}))$ .

Let  $f(x) = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}$ . Find the value of  $x$  when  $f(x) = \sqrt{2}$ , ( $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ ).

Solution:  $f(x) = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 2\sqrt{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} \sin(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}) + \tan(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}) \tan(\frac{x}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4}) = 2\sqrt{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} (\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2}) + \frac{1 + \tan \frac{x}{2}}{1 - \tan \frac{x}{2}} \frac{\tan \frac{x}{2} - 1}{1 + \tan \frac{x}{2}} = 2 \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} + 2 \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} - 1 = \sin x + \cos x = \sqrt{2} \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \sqrt{2}$ . Thus  $\sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4}) = 1$ . On the other hand,  $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , thus  $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

4.45 ★ Let  $f(x) = \sin(\omega x + \phi)$  ( $\omega > 0, 0 \leq \phi \leq \pi$ ) is an even function defined in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Its graph is symmetric about the point  $M(\frac{3\pi}{4}, 0)$ . It is monotone on the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Find the values of  $\omega$  and  $\phi$ .

Solution: Since  $f(-x) = f(x) \Rightarrow \sin(-\omega x + \phi) = \sin(\omega x + \phi)$ , then  $2 \cos \phi \sin \omega x = 0$ . Since  $x \in R, \omega > 0$ , then  $\cos \phi = 0$ . In other words, since  $0 \leq \phi \leq \pi$ , we have  $\phi = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

Since its graph is symmetric about the point  $M(\frac{3\pi}{4}, 0)$ , then  $f(\frac{3\pi}{4} - x) = -f(\frac{3\pi}{4} + x)$ , then  $f(\frac{3\pi}{4}) = -f(\frac{3\pi}{4})$  when  $x = 0$ . Since  $f(\frac{3\pi}{4}, 0)$  is a point of the graph, then  $f(\frac{3\pi}{4}) = -f(\frac{3\omega\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{2}) = \cos \frac{3\omega\pi}{4}$ , that is  $\cos \frac{3\omega\pi}{4} = 0$ . Since  $\omega > 0$ , then  $\frac{3\omega\pi}{4} = \frac{\pi}{2} + k\pi, k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \Rightarrow \omega = \frac{2}{3}(2k+1)$ . When  $k = 0, \omega = \frac{2}{3}$ ,  $f(x) = \sin(\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{\pi}{2})$  is decreasing on the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . When  $k = 1, \omega = 2$ ,  $f(x) = \sin(2x + \frac{\pi}{2})$  is decreasing on the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . When  $k \geq 2, \omega \geq \frac{10}{3}$ ,  $f(x) = \sin(\omega x + \frac{\pi}{2})$  is not a monotone function on the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . After all,  $\omega = \frac{2}{3}$  or  $\omega = 2$ .

**4.46 ★★** Let sides  $a, b, c$  correspond to angle  $A, B, C$  in  $\triangle ABC$ , show  $\frac{a \cos B - b \cos A}{\sin(A - B)} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$ .

Proof: Since  $a \cos B - b \cos A = \frac{1}{c}(ac \cos B - bc \cos A) = \frac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}{2c} - \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2c} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{c}$ , we have  $\frac{a \cos B - b \cos A}{\sin(A - B)} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{c \sin(A - B)} = \frac{(\frac{c}{\sin C} \sin A)^2 - (\frac{c}{\sin C} \sin B)^2}{c \sin(A - B)} = \frac{c^2 \sin^2 A - c^2 \sin^2 B}{c \sin^2 C \sin(A - B)} = \frac{c(\sin A - \sin B)(\sin A + \sin B)}{\sin^2 C \sin(A - B)} = \frac{c2 \sin \frac{A-B}{2} \cos \frac{A+B}{2} 2 \sin \frac{A+B}{2} \cos \frac{A-B}{2}}{\sin^2 C \sin(A - B)} = \frac{c \sin(A - B) \sin(A + B)}{\sin^2 C \sin(A - B)} = \frac{c \sin(A + B)}{\sin^2 C} = \frac{c \sin C}{\sin^2 C} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$ .

**4.47 ★★** If  $\theta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{6})$ , compare  $\tan(\sin \theta), \tan(\tan \theta), \tan(\cos \theta)$ .

Solution: Since  $\theta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{6})$ , then  $0 < \sin \theta < \cos \theta < 1$ . Since  $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$ , then  $\sin \theta = \tan \theta \cos \theta$ . On the other hand,  $0 < \cos \theta < 1$ , we have  $\sin \theta < \tan \theta$ . Since  $0 < \tan \theta < \tan \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}, 1 > \cos \theta > \cos \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , then  $1 > \cos \theta > \tan \theta > 0$ . Hence  $0 < \sin \theta < \tan \theta < \cos \theta < 1$ . Since  $y = \tan x$  is increasing in the interval  $(0, 1)$ , then  $\tan(\sin \theta) < \tan(\tan \theta) < \tan(\cos \theta)$ .

4.48 ★★ Find the value of  $m$  which satisfies the inequality  $\cos^2 \alpha + 2m \sin \alpha - 2m - 2 < 0$ .

Solution:  $\cos^2 \alpha + 2m \sin \alpha - 2m - 2 < 0 \Rightarrow \sin^2 \alpha - 2m \sin \alpha + 2m + 1 > 0$ . Let  $\sin \alpha = t$ , then  $-1 \leq t \leq 1$ . Assume  $f(t) = t^2 - 2mt + 2m + 1 = (t - m)^2 - m^2 + 2m + 1 > 0$ ,  $t \in [-1, 1]$ . (1) If  $m < -1$ , then  $f(t)_{\min} = 2 + 4m$  at  $t = -1$ . Let  $2 + 4m > 0$ , then  $m > -\frac{1}{2}$ . It is in contradiction with  $m < -1$ . Therefore  $m > -\frac{1}{2}$  should be rejected. (2) If  $-1 \leq m \leq 1$ , then  $f(t)_{\min} = -m^2 + 2m + 1$  at  $t = m$ . Let  $-m^2 + 2m + 1 > 0$ , that is  $m^2 - 2m - 1 < 0$ , then  $1 - \sqrt{2} < m \leq 1$ . (3) If  $m > 1$ , then  $f(t)_{\min} = 2 > 0$  at  $t = 1$ . After all,  $m > 1 - \sqrt{2}$ .

4.49 ★★ Let the angles  $A, B, C$  of  $\triangle ABC$  form an arithmetic progression,  $a, b, c$  are the side lengths corresponding to angles  $A, B, C$ , and  $c - a$  is equal to the altitude  $h$  on the side  $AC$ . Find the value of  $\sin \frac{C-A}{2}$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $h = c - a = \frac{h}{\sin A} - \frac{h}{\sin C}$ . The equation is equivalent to  $\sin C - \sin A = \sin A \sin C$ . Thus  $2 \sin \frac{C-A}{2} \cos \frac{C+A}{2} = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(C-A) - \cos(C+A)] \cdots (*)$ . Since  $A + C = 2B$  and  $A + B + C = 180^\circ$ , then  $A + C = 120^\circ$ . Substituting it into  $(*)$ , we have  $\sin \frac{C-A}{2} = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(C-A) + \frac{1}{2}] \Rightarrow \sin \frac{C-A}{2} = -\frac{1}{2}[-\cos(C-A) + 1 - \frac{3}{2}] \Rightarrow \sin \frac{C-A}{2} = -\frac{1-\cos(C-A)}{2} + \frac{3}{4} \Rightarrow (\sin \frac{C-A}{2})^2 + \sin \frac{C-A}{2} - \frac{3}{4} = 0$ . Hence,  $\sin \frac{C-A}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$  or  $\sin \frac{C-A}{2} = -\frac{3}{2}$  (rejected). Therefore,  $\sin \frac{C-A}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$ .

4.50 ★ Given the function  $f(x) = a \sin x + b \cos x$ . (1) If  $f(\frac{\pi}{4}) = \sqrt{2}$  and the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $\sqrt{10}$ , find the value of  $a, b$ . (2) If  $f(\frac{\pi}{3}) = 1$  and the minimum value of  $f(x)$  is  $k$ , find the range of  $k$ .

Solution: (1) It is easy to figure out that  $a \sin \frac{\pi}{4} + b \cos \frac{\pi}{4} = \sqrt{2}$ . Thus  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}(a+b) = \sqrt{2} \Rightarrow a+b=2$ . On the other hand,  $f(x) = a \sin x + b \cos x = \sqrt{a^2+b^2} \sin(x+\theta)$ . Since the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $\sqrt{10}$  when  $\sin(x+\theta)=1$ , then  $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}=\sqrt{10}$ , that is  $a^2+b^2=10$ . Since

$$\begin{cases} a+b=2 \\ a^2+b^2=10 \end{cases}$$

we have

$$\begin{cases} a = -1 \\ b = 3 \end{cases}$$

or

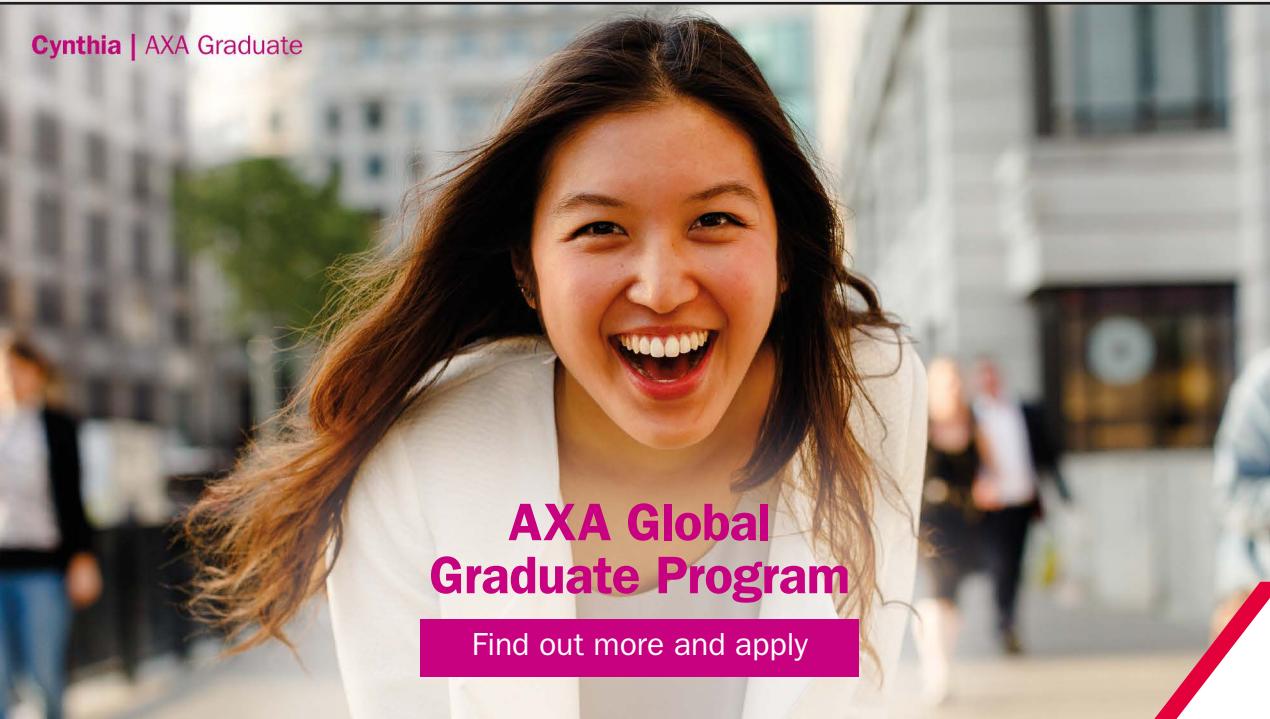
$$\begin{cases} a = 3 \\ b = -1 \end{cases}$$

(2) From the given condition, we have  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}a + \frac{1}{2}b = 1$ , that is  $b = 2 - \sqrt{3}a$ . On the other hand,  $f(x) = a \sin x + b \cos x = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \sin(x + \theta)$ . The condition  $\sin(x + \theta) = -1$  can lead to the minimum value of  $f(x)$ . Hence  $-\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = k$ , ( $k < 0$ ). For the equation system

$$\begin{cases} b = 2 - \sqrt{3}a \\ a^2 + b^2 = k^2 \end{cases}$$

Eliminating  $b$ , we obtain  $4a^2 - 4\sqrt{3}a + 4 - k^2 = 0$ . Since  $a \in R$ , then  $\Delta = 48 - 64 + 16k^2 \geq 0 \Rightarrow k^2 \geq 1$ . Since  $k < 0$ , we have  $k \leq -1$ .

4.51 ★ Evaluate the equation  $\sqrt{1+x^2} + \frac{\sqrt{1+x^2}}{x} = 2\sqrt{2}$  by applying the trigonometric functions.



Cynthia | AXA Graduate

**AXA Global  
Graduate Program**

Find out more and apply

redefining / standards


Solution: Let  $x = \tan \theta, \theta \in (-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}), \theta \neq 0$ . The equation is equivalent to  $\frac{1}{\cos \theta} + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} = 2\sqrt{2} \Rightarrow \sin \theta + \cos \theta = 2\sqrt{2} \sin \theta \cos \theta \Rightarrow \sqrt{2} \sin(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \sqrt{2} \sin 2\theta \Rightarrow \sin(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}) = \sin 2\theta$ . Hence  $2\theta = 2k\pi + \theta + \frac{\pi}{4}$  or  $2\theta = (2k+1)\pi - \theta - \frac{\pi}{4}, (k \in \mathbb{Z})$ . Thus  $\theta = 2k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$  or  $\theta = \frac{2k\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{4}, (k \in \mathbb{Z})$ . Since  $\theta \in (-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , then  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$  or  $\theta = -\frac{5\pi}{12}$ . Therefore  $x = 1$  or  $x = -2 - \sqrt{3}$ .

4.52 ★★ If  $\sin(A+B) = \tan \frac{A+B}{2}$  in  $\triangle ABC$ , and the three side lengths  $a, b, c$  form an arithmetic sequence, evaluate the radius of its circumcircle and the radius of its incircle.

Solution: Since  $\sin(A+B) = \tan \frac{A+B}{2} \Rightarrow 2 \sin \frac{A+B}{2} \cos \frac{A+B}{2} = \frac{\sin \frac{A+B}{2}}{\cos \frac{A+B}{2}} \Rightarrow 2 \cos^2 \frac{A+B}{2} = 1 \Rightarrow \cos(A+B) = 0 \Rightarrow A+B = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we have  $b = c \cos A, a = c \sin A$ . Since  $a, b, c$  form an arithmetic sequence, that is  $2b = a+c$ , thus  $2c \cos A = c \sin A + c$ , hence  $2 \cos A = \sin A + 1 \cdots (\text{i})$ . On the other hand  $\sin^2 A + \cos^2 A = 1 \cdots (\text{ii})$ . According to (i) and (ii), we have  $\sin A = \frac{3}{5}, \cos A = \frac{4}{5}$ . Assume the radius of incircle is  $r$  and the radius of circumcircle is  $R$ . Since  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle, then  $r = \frac{a+b-c}{2} = \frac{c \sin A + c \cos A - c}{2}$ . Applying the since theorem  $\frac{c}{\sin 90^\circ} = 2R$ , we have  $R = \frac{c}{2}$ . Therefore,  $\frac{r}{R} = \frac{c \sin A + c \cos A - c}{c} = \sin A + \cos A - 1 = \frac{2}{5}$ .

4.53 ★★ Let  $a, b, c$  are real numbers, find the sufficient and necessary condition for that  $a \sin x + b \cos x + c > 0$  always holds for any real number  $x$ .

Solution: (1) When  $a, b$  are not zero at the same time, we have  $a \sin x + b \cos x + c > 0 \Leftrightarrow \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \sin(x + \phi) + c > 0 \Leftrightarrow \sin(x + \phi) > -\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ . The sufficient and necessary condition for that the formula always holds is  $-\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} < -1$ . That is  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} < c$ .

(2) When  $a, b$  are both zero at the same time, then  $c > 0$ .

As a conclusion, for any real number  $x$ , the sufficient and necessary condition for that  $a \sin x + b \cos x + c > 0$  always holds is  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} < c$ .

4.54 ★★ Let the function  $f(x) = \frac{3}{2} \sin \omega x + \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} \cos \omega x + 1, (\omega > 0)$ , and its period is  $\pi$ . If  $\alpha, \beta$  are the two roots of the equation  $f(x) = 0$ , and  $\alpha \neq k\pi + \beta, (k \in \mathbb{Z})$ , compute  $\tan(\alpha + \beta)$ .

Since the period  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \pi$ , then  $\omega = 2$ . Since  $\alpha, \beta$  are the two roots of the equation  $f(x) = 0$ , we have

$$\begin{cases} 3 \sin(2\alpha + \frac{\pi}{3}) + 1 = 0, \\ 3 \sin(2\beta + \frac{\pi}{3}) + 1 = 0. \end{cases}$$

Simplifying the equation system, we have  $\sin(2\alpha + \frac{\pi}{3}) - \sin(2\beta + \frac{\pi}{3}) = 0$ . That is  $2 \cos(\alpha + \beta + \frac{\pi}{3}) \sin(\alpha - \beta) = 0$ . Since  $\alpha - \beta \neq k\pi$ , ( $k \in Z$ ), then  $\sin(\alpha - \beta) \neq 0$ . Thus  $\cos(\alpha + \beta + \frac{\pi}{3}) = 0$ . Hence  $\alpha + \beta + \frac{\pi}{3} = k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$  ( $k \in Z$ )  $\Rightarrow \alpha + \beta = k\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}$  ( $k \in Z$ ).

Therefore,  $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ .

**4.55 ★★** Given  $\sin \theta = \sqrt{|\sin t|}$ ,  $\cos \theta = \sqrt{|\cos t|}$ , and  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Find the value of  $t$  such that  $\theta$  is in the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ .

Solution: Since  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4} \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq \tan \theta \leq 1$ . Since  $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = \frac{\sqrt{|\sin t|}}{\sqrt{|\cos t|}} = \sqrt{|\tan t|}$ , then  $0 \leq \tan \theta \leq 1 \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq \sqrt{|\tan t|} \leq 1 \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq |\tan t| \leq 1 \Leftrightarrow -1 \leq \tan t \leq 1$ . Since  $y = \tan t$  is increasing on the interval  $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  and the period  $T = \pi$ , then the solution of inequality  $-1 \leq \tan t \leq 1$  is  $k\pi - \frac{\pi}{4} \leq t \leq k\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$  ( $k \in Z$ ).

I joined MITAS because  
I wanted **real responsibility**

The Graduate Programme  
for Engineers and Geoscientists  
[www.discovermitas.com](http://www.discovermitas.com)



Real work  
International opportunities  
Three work placements



**Month 16**

I was a construction supervisor in the North Sea advising and helping foremen solve problems



4.56 ★★★ The side lengths  $a, b, c$  correspond to the angles  $A, B, C$  in  $\triangle ABC$ . If  $a = (\sqrt{3} - 1)c$ , and  $\frac{\cot B}{\cot C} = \frac{c}{2a - c}$ , value  $A, B, C$ .

Solution: Applying the given equation and the since theorem, we have  $\frac{\cos B \sin C}{\sin B \cos C} = \frac{\sin C}{2 \sin A - \sin C} \Rightarrow (2 \sin A - \sin C) \cos B = \sin B \cos C \Rightarrow 2 \sin A \cos B = \sin(B + C)$ .

On the other hand,  $\sin(B + C) = \sin A$ , then  $\cos B = \frac{1}{2}, B = \frac{\pi}{3}, A + C = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  ①.

From the given condition  $\frac{a}{c} = \sqrt{3} - 1 \Rightarrow \frac{\sin A}{\sin C} + 1 = \sqrt{3} \Rightarrow \frac{2 \sin \frac{A+C}{2} \cos \frac{A-C}{2}}{\sin C} = \sqrt{3} \Rightarrow \frac{2 \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cos \frac{A-C}{2}}{\sin C} = \sqrt{3} \Rightarrow \cos \frac{A-C}{2} = \sin C = \cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - C)$ . Since  $A, B, C$  are three interior angles of a triangle, thus  $\frac{C-A}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2} - C$ . That is  $3C - A = \pi$  ②. According to ① and ②, we have  $C = \frac{5}{12}\pi, A = \frac{\pi}{4}, B = \frac{\pi}{3}$ .

4.57 ★★ If the positive numbers  $a, b, c$  form an arithmetic sequence, and  $a + b = c$ ,  $\arctan \frac{1}{a} + \arctan \frac{1}{b} + \arctan \frac{1}{c} = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Find the values of  $a, b, c$ .

Solution: Since  $a, b, c$  form an arithmetic sequence, then  $a + c = 2b$ . On the other hand  $a + b = c$ , solving the above two equations, we have  $a = \frac{b}{2}, c = \frac{3}{2}b$ . Let  $\arctan \frac{1}{a} = \alpha, \arctan \frac{1}{b} = \beta, \arctan \frac{1}{c} = \gamma$ . Since  $a, b, c$  are positive numbers, then  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  are acute angles. Hence  $\tan \alpha = \frac{1}{a}, \tan \beta = \frac{1}{b}, \tan \gamma = \frac{1}{c}$ . Since  $\arctan \frac{1}{a} + \arctan \frac{1}{b} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arctan \frac{1}{c} \Rightarrow \tan(\alpha + \beta) = \tan(\frac{\pi}{2} - \gamma) \Rightarrow \frac{\tan \alpha + \tan \beta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta} = \cot \gamma \Rightarrow \frac{\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b}}{1 - \frac{1}{a} \frac{1}{b}} = c \Rightarrow a + b = abc - c \Rightarrow \frac{b}{2} + b = \frac{b}{2} \cdot b \cdot \frac{3}{2}b - \frac{3}{2}b \Rightarrow b^3 - 4b = 0 \Rightarrow b = 2, b = 0$  (rejected),  $b = -2$  (rejected). Therefore,  $a = 1, b = 2, c = 3$ .

4.58 ★★★ If  $x \in [-1, 1]$ , show  $\arcsin x + \arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

Proof: The function  $\arcsin x$  and  $\arccos x$  are defined for  $x \in [-1, 1]$ . Applying the induction formula and the definition of inverse cosine function, we obtain  $\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos x) = \cos(\arccos x) = x$ . Since  $0 \leq \arccos x \leq \pi$ , thus  $-\pi \leq -\arccos x \leq 0$ , then  $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , that is  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos x \in [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Applying the definition of inverse sine function, we have  $\arcsin x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos x$ . After all,  $\arcsin x + \arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

4.59 ★★★ Given  $\sin x + \cos x = \sqrt{2} \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4})$ ,  $x \in [-\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Find the maximum and minimum values of the function  $y = (\sin x + 1)(\cos x + 1)$ .

Solution: Let  $\sin x + \cos x = u$ , then  $\sin x \cos x = \frac{u^2 - 1}{2}$ , and  $u = \sqrt{2} \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{4})$ .

When  $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ ,  $u_{\max} = \sqrt{2}$ . When  $x = -\frac{\pi}{6}$ ,  $u$  reaches the minimum value. Since

$$\sin(-\frac{\pi}{6}) \cos \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{u^2 - 1}{2} \Rightarrow -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} = \frac{u^2 - 1}{2} \Rightarrow u^2 = \frac{2 - \sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$u_{\min} = \sqrt{\frac{2 - \sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{2}, \text{ then } u \in [\frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{2}, \sqrt{2}]$$

Since  $y = (\sin x + 1)(\cos x + 1) = \sin x + \cos x + \sin x \cos x + 1 = \frac{1}{2}(u+1)^2$ , and  $y$  is increasing on the interval  $[\frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{2}, \sqrt{2}]$ ,

$$\text{therefore, } y_{\min} = \frac{2 + \sqrt{3}}{4}, \quad y_{\max} = \frac{3 + 2\sqrt{2}}{2}$$

**93%**  
OF MIM STUDENTS ARE  
WORKING IN THEIR SECTOR 3 MONTHS  
FOLLOWING GRADUATION

## MASTER IN MANAGEMENT

- STUDY IN THE CENTER OF MADRID AND TAKE ADVANTAGE OF THE UNIQUE OPPORTUNITIES THAT THE CAPITAL OF SPAIN OFFERS
- PROPEL YOUR EDUCATION BY EARNING A DOUBLE DEGREE THAT BEST SUITS YOUR PROFESSIONAL GOALS
- STUDY A SEMESTER ABROAD AND BECOME A GLOBAL CITIZEN WITH THE BEYOND BORDERS EXPERIENCE

Length: 10 MONTHS  
Av. Experience: 1 YEAR  
Language: ENGLISH / SPANISH  
Format: FULL-TIME  
Intakes: SEPT / FEB

5 SPECIALIZATIONS PERSONALIZE YOUR PROGRAM	#10 WORLDWIDE MASTER IN MANAGEMENT FINANCIAL TIMES	55 NATIONALITIES IN CLASS
---	--	------------------------------

[www.ie.edu/master-management](http://www.ie.edu/master-management) | [mim.admissions@ie.edu](mailto:mim.admissions@ie.edu) | [Follow us on IE MIM Experience](#)

4.60 ★★ Given  $\frac{\sin \theta}{x} = \frac{\cos \theta}{y}$ , and  $\frac{\sin^2 \theta}{y^2} + \frac{\cos^2 \theta}{x^2} = \frac{6}{x^2 + y^2}$ . Find the value of  $\theta$ .

Solution: Since  $\tan \theta = \frac{x}{y}$ , we have  $\sin^2 \theta = \frac{1}{\csc^2 \theta} = \frac{1}{1 + \cot^2 \theta} = \frac{\tan^2 \theta}{\tan^2 \theta + 1} = \frac{x^2}{x^2 + y^2}$ , and  $\cos^2 \theta = \frac{1}{\sec^2 \theta} = \frac{1}{1 + \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$ . Substituting  $\sin^2 \theta$  and  $\cos^2 \theta$  into the given second equation, we have  $\frac{x^2}{(x^2 + y^2)y^2} + \frac{y^2}{(x^2 + y^2)x^2} = \frac{6}{x^2 + y^2} \Rightarrow \frac{x^2}{y^2} + \frac{y^2}{x^2} = 6 \Rightarrow (\frac{x^2}{y^2})^2 - 6(\frac{x^2}{y^2}) + 1 = 0$ . Thus  $\frac{x^2}{y^2} = 3 \pm 2\sqrt{2} = (\sqrt{2} \pm 1)^2$ . Hence  $\tan \theta = \pm(\sqrt{2} + 1)$  or  $\tan \theta = \pm(\sqrt{2} - 1)$ . Applying  $\tan \theta = \pm(\sqrt{2} + 1)$ , we have  $\theta = n\pi \pm \frac{3\pi}{8}$ , ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Applying  $\tan \theta = \pm(\sqrt{2} - 1)$ , we have  $\theta = n\pi \pm \frac{\pi}{8}$ , ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ).

4.61 ★★★ Given in  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\frac{\sin A}{\sin B} = \frac{m}{n}$ ,  $\frac{\cos A}{\cos B} = -\frac{p}{q}$ . Show  $\cos C = \frac{mp - nq}{np - mq}$ .

Solution : From the given condition, we have  $\frac{\sin(B+C)}{\sin B} = \frac{m}{n} \Rightarrow \frac{\sin B \cos C + \cos B \sin C}{\sin B} = \frac{m}{n} \Rightarrow \cos C + \cot B \sin C = \frac{m}{n} \Rightarrow \cot B \sin C = \frac{m}{n} - \cos C \quad ①$ . Since  $\frac{\cos(B+C)}{\cos B} = -\frac{p}{q} \Rightarrow \frac{\cos B \cos C - \sin B \sin C}{\cos B} = -\frac{p}{q} \Rightarrow \tan B \sin C = \frac{p}{q} + \cos C \quad ②$ . Applying  $① \times ②$ , we obtain  $\sin^2 C = (\frac{m}{n} - \cos C)(\frac{p}{q} + \cos C) \Rightarrow 1 = \frac{mp}{nq} + \cos C(\frac{m}{n} - \frac{p}{q})$ . Therefore  $\cos C = \frac{mp - nq}{np - mq}$ .

4.62 ★★★ Given  $\cos \theta + \cos \phi = a$ ,  $\sin \theta + \sin \phi = b$ . Compute  $\cos(\theta + \phi)$  and  $\sin 2\theta + \sin 2\phi$ .

Solution: Since  $\frac{\sin \theta + \sin \phi}{\cos \theta + \cos \phi} = \frac{b}{a}$ , on the other hand,  $\frac{\sin \theta + \sin \phi}{\cos \theta + \cos \phi} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{\theta+\phi}{2} \cos \frac{\theta-\phi}{2}}{2 \cos \frac{\theta+\phi}{2} \cos \frac{\theta-\phi}{2}} = \tan \frac{\theta+\phi}{2}$ , then  $\tan \frac{\theta+\phi}{2} = \frac{b}{a}$ . Assume  $\tan \frac{\theta+\phi}{2} = t$ , then  $\cos(\theta + \phi) = \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}$ ,  $\sin(\theta + \phi) = \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} = \frac{2ab}{a^2 + b^2}$  (Applying trigonometric function formulas). Since  $2(\cos \theta + \cos \phi)(\sin \theta + \sin \phi) = 2ab \Rightarrow \sin 2\theta + \sin 2\phi + 2 \sin(\theta + \phi) = 2ab$ , we have  $\sin 2\theta + \sin 2\phi = 2ab - \frac{4ab}{a^2 + b^2} = 2ab(1 - \frac{2}{a^2 + b^2})$ .

4.63 ★★★ If  $3 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}} - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{x} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$ , evaluate the value of  $x$ .

Solution: Let  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}} = \alpha$ , then  $\tan \alpha = \frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}}$ ,  $\tan 3\alpha = \frac{3 \tan \alpha - \tan^3 \alpha}{1 - 3 \tan^2 \alpha} = \frac{\frac{3}{2+\sqrt{3}} - \frac{1}{(2+\sqrt{3})^3}}{1 - \frac{3}{(2+\sqrt{3})^2}} = \frac{3(2+\sqrt{3})^2 - 1}{(2+\sqrt{3})^3 - 3(2+\sqrt{3})} = \frac{20+12\sqrt{3}}{20+12\sqrt{3}} = 1$ . Hence,  $3\alpha = \tan^{-1} 1$ .

Therefore, the equation  $3 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}} - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{x} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$  is equivalent to the equation  $\tan^{-1} 1 - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ . Since  $\tan(\tan^{-1} 1 - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}) = \tan(\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{x}) \Rightarrow \frac{1 - \frac{1}{3}}{1 + \frac{1}{3}} = \frac{1}{x}$ . After all,  $x = 2$ .

4.64 ★★★ Let  $\sin \alpha = p \sin \beta, \cos \alpha = q \cos \beta, \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha = r(\sin \beta + \cos \beta)$ , show  $(p-r)^2(1-q^2) + (q-r)^2(1-p^2) = 0$ .

Solution: From the given conditions, we have  $p^2 \sin^2 \beta + q^2 \cos^2 \beta = \sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha = \sin^2 \beta + \cos^2 \beta$ . Dividing both sides of the equation by  $\cos^2 \beta$ , we have  $p^2 \tan^2 \beta + q^2 = \tan^2 \beta + 1$ , that is,  $\tan^2 \beta = \frac{q^2 - 1}{1 - p^2}$  ①. Since  $p \sin \beta + q \cos \beta = r(\sin \beta + \cos \beta) \Rightarrow (p-r) \sin \beta = (r-q) \cos \beta$ , then  $\tan \beta = \frac{r-q}{p-r}$  ②. Applying ① and ②, we have  $\frac{q^2 - 1}{1 - p^2} = \frac{(r-q)^2}{(p-r)^2}$ . Simplifying the formula, we obtain  $(p-r)^2(1-q^2) + (q-r)^2(1-p^2) = 0$ .

4.65 ★★★ Let  $a, b, c$  are the side lengths of triangle  $ABC$  corresponding to angles  $A, B, C$ ,  $(\sin B + \sin C + \sin A)(\sin B + \sin C - \sin A) = 3 \sin B \sin C$ .  $b, c$  are the two roots of equation  $x^2 - 3x + 4 \cos A = 0$ , and  $b > c$ . The radius of circumcircle of  $\triangle ABC$  is 1. Find the value of  $\angle A, a, b, c$ .

Solution: From the given conditions, we have  $b+c=3, bc=4 \cos A$ . Applying the sine law,  $b=2R \sin B=2 \sin B, c=2R \sin C=2 \sin C$ . Adding the two equations together, we obtain  $\sin B + \sin C = \frac{b+c}{2} = \frac{3}{2}$  ①. Multiplying the two equations, we obtain  $\sin B \sin C = \frac{bc}{4} = \cos A$  ②. Simplifying the equation  $(\sin B + \sin C + \sin A)(\sin B + \sin C - \sin A) = 3 \sin B \sin C$ , we get  $(\sin B + \sin C)^2 - \sin A^2 = 3 \sin B \sin C$  ③. Submit ① and ② into ③, then  $\frac{9}{4} - \sin^2 A = 3 \cos A \Rightarrow 4 \cos^2 A - 12 \cos A + 5 = 0 \Rightarrow \cos A = \frac{1}{2}$  or  $\cos A = \frac{5}{2}$  (rejected). Hence  $\angle A = 60^\circ$ . According to the equations system

$$\begin{cases} b+c=3 \\ bc=2 \end{cases}$$

and  $b > c$ , we have  $b=2, c=1, a=2R \sin A=\sqrt{3}$ .

4.66 ★★★ Show  $\tan x + \frac{1}{2} \tan \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} \tan \frac{x}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} \tan \frac{x}{2^n} = \frac{1}{2^n} \cot \frac{x}{2^n} - 2 \cot 2x$ .

Proof: Since  $\cot x - \tan x = \frac{1 - \tan^2 x}{\tan x} = 2 \frac{1 - \tan^2 x}{2 \tan x} = 2 \frac{1}{\tan 2x} = 2 \cot 2x$ , then  $\tan x = \cot x - 2 \cot 2x$ . Similarly  $\frac{1}{2} \tan \frac{x}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \cot \frac{x}{2} - \cot x$ ,  $\frac{1}{2^2} \tan \frac{x}{2^2} = \frac{1}{2^2} \cot \frac{x}{2^2} - \frac{1}{2} \cot \frac{x}{2}$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\frac{1}{2^n} \tan \frac{x}{2^n} = \frac{1}{2^n} \cot \frac{x}{2^n} - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \cot \frac{x}{2^{n-1}}$ . Adding the above equations, we have  $\tan x + \frac{1}{2} \tan \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} \tan \frac{x}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} \tan \frac{x}{2^n} = \frac{1}{2^n} \cot \frac{x}{2^n} - 2 \cot 2x$ .

4.67 ★★★★ If  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ , show  $\arcsin x - \arcsin \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

Proof: Let  $\arcsin x = \alpha$ ,  $\arcsin \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \beta$ . Since  $\sin \alpha = x$ ,  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ , then  $0 \leq \alpha \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Hence  $\cos \alpha = \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \alpha} = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ . Since  $0 \leq x^2 \leq 1 \Rightarrow -1 \leq -x^2 \leq 0 \Rightarrow 0 \leq 1 - x^2 \leq 1 \Rightarrow 0 \leq \sqrt{1 - x^2} \leq 1 \Rightarrow -1 \leq -\sqrt{1 - x^2} \leq 0 \Rightarrow -1 \leq x - \sqrt{1 - x^2} \leq 1$ . That is  $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \leq \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}} \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ . Since  $\sin \beta = \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}}$ , then  $-\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \beta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Since  $\sin(\alpha - \frac{\pi}{4}) = \sin \alpha \cos \frac{\pi}{4} - \cos \alpha \sin \frac{\pi}{4} = x \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \sqrt{1 - x^2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \sin \beta$ . Since  $0 \leq \alpha \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $-\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \alpha - \frac{\pi}{4} \leq \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Hence  $\alpha - \frac{\pi}{4} = \beta$ , that is  $\alpha - \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

Therefore,  $\arcsin x - \arcsin \frac{x - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

4.68 ★★★ Solve the equation system

$$\begin{cases} \arcsin x \arcsin y = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \cdots ① \\ \arccos x \arccos y = \frac{\pi^2}{24} \cdots ② \end{cases}$$

Solution: Applying  $\arccos x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin x$ ,  $\arccos y = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin y$  to rewrite the given equation ② as the formula  $(\frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin x)(\frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin y) = \frac{\pi^2}{24}$ . Let  $\alpha = \arcsin x$ ,  $\beta = \arcsin y$ , then the given equation system is equivalent to

$$\begin{cases} \alpha\beta = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \\ \alpha\beta - (\alpha + \beta)\frac{\pi}{2} = -\frac{5\pi^2}{24} \end{cases}$$

That is,

$$\begin{cases} \alpha\beta = \frac{\pi^2}{12} \\ \alpha + \beta = \frac{7\pi}{12} \end{cases}$$

Assume  $\alpha, \beta$  are the roots of equation  $12z^2 - 7\pi z + \pi^2 = 0$ , then  $\alpha = \frac{\pi}{3}, \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ , or  $\alpha = \frac{\pi}{4}, \beta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Those are  $\arcsin x = \frac{\pi}{3}, \arcsin y = \frac{\pi}{4}$ , or  $\arcsin x = \frac{\pi}{4}, \arcsin y = \frac{\pi}{3}$ .

The solutions are  $x_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, y_1 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$  or  $x_2 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, y_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ . We can verify that  $x_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, y_1 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$  and  $x_2 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, y_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  are both the roots of the system.

**4.69 ★★★** Let  $A, B, C$  are the three angles of  $\triangle ABC$  corresponding to the side lengths  $a, b, c$ , and they form a geometric sequence, and  $b^2 - a^2 = ac$ . Find the value of  $\angle B$ .

Solution: Since  $A, B, C$  form a geometric sequence, we assume  $A = \frac{1}{q}B, C = qB$ .

"I studied English for 16 years but...  
...I finally learned to speak it in just six lessons"

Jane, Chinese architect

ENGLISH OUT THERE

Click to hear me talking before and after my unique course download

Since  $A + B + C = \pi$ , then  $\frac{1}{q}B + B + qB = \pi$ , that is  $B = \frac{q\pi}{q^2 + q + 1}$ . Since  $b^2 - a^2 = ac$ , according to the cosine law  $b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$ , we have  $ac = c^2 - 2ac \cos B$ . Since  $c \neq 0$ , thus  $a = c - 2a \cos B$ . Applying the sine law, we have  $\sin A = \sin C - 2 \sin A \cos B \Rightarrow \sin A = \sin C - [\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B)] \Rightarrow \sin A = \sin C - \sin C - \sin(A - B) \Rightarrow \sin A = \sin(B - A) \Rightarrow A = B - A \Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2}B$ . Hence,  $\frac{1}{2}B = \frac{1}{q}B$ . After all,  $q = 2$ ,  $B = \frac{2\pi}{2^2 + 2 + 1} = \frac{2\pi}{7}$ .

4.70 ★★★ If  $0 \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , show  $\cot \frac{x}{2^n} - \cot x \geq n$ , ( $n \in N$ ).

Proof: (1) When  $n = 1$ ,  $\cot \frac{x}{2} - \cot x = \frac{1 + \cos x}{\sin x} - \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} = \frac{1}{\sin x}$ . Since  $0 < x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $0 < \sin x \leq 1$ , then  $\frac{1}{\sin x} \geq 1$ , that is  $\cot \frac{x}{2} - \cot x \geq 1$ . The equation holds when  $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

(2) Assume the inequation holds when  $n = k$ , ( $k \in N$ ), that is  $\cot \frac{x}{2^k} - \cot x \geq k$ , then  $\cot \frac{x}{2^{k+1}} - \cot x = \frac{1 + \cos \frac{x}{2^k}}{\sin \frac{x}{2^k}} - \cot x = \frac{1}{\sin \frac{x}{2^k}} + \cot \frac{x}{2^k} - \cot x$  when  $n = k + 1$ . Since  $\frac{1}{\sin \frac{x}{2^k}} > 1$ , ( $0 < x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ),  $k \in N$ , then  $\cot \frac{x}{2^{k+1}} - \cot x > k + 1$ . Therefore, for all  $n \in N$ ,  $\cot \frac{x}{2^n} - \cot x \geq n$  holds.

4.71 ★★★ Find the sum of the formula  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+1 \cdot 2} + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+2 \cdot 3} + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+3 \cdot 4} + \dots$

Solution: The nth term is  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+n \cdot (n+1)} = \tan^{-1} \frac{(n+1)-n}{1+n \cdot (n+1)} = \tan^{-1}(n+1) - \tan^{-1} n$ . Substituting  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , into the above equation and adding these equations, we have  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+1 \cdot 2} + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+2 \cdot 3} + \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1+3 \cdot 4} + \dots = (\tan^{-1} 2 - \tan^{-1} 1) + (\tan^{-1} 3 - \tan^{-1} 2) + (\tan^{-1} 4 - \tan^{-1} 3) + \dots = -\tan^{-1} 1 + \tan^{-1} \infty = -\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

4.72 ★★★ Let  $A + B + C = \pi$ , and  $\sin(A + \frac{C}{2}) = n \sin \frac{C}{2}$ . Show  $\tan \frac{A}{2} \tan \frac{B}{2} = \frac{n-1}{n+1}$ .

Proof:  $\sin(A + \frac{C}{2}) = \sin(A + \frac{180^\circ - A - B}{2}) = \sin(90^\circ - \frac{B-A}{2}) = \cos \frac{B-A}{2} \dots \textcircled{1}$ . Since  $\sin(A + \frac{C}{2}) = n \sin \frac{C}{2}$ , then  $\sin \frac{C}{2} = \cos \frac{A+B}{2}$ . Hence  $\sin(A + \frac{C}{2}) = n \cos \frac{A+B}{2} \dots \textcircled{2}$ .

Applying ① and ②, we have  $\cos \frac{B-A}{2} = n \cos \frac{A+B}{2}$ , that is  $\cos \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{B}{2} + \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} = n(\cos \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{B}{2} - \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2}) \Rightarrow (n+1) \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} = (n-1) \cos \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{B}{2}$ . Therefore  $\tan \frac{A}{2} \tan \frac{B}{2} = \frac{n-1}{n+1}$ .

**4.73 ★★★★** If  $\tan \alpha, \tan \beta$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + px + q = 0$ , express  $\sin^2(\alpha + \beta) + p \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) + q \cos^2(\alpha + \beta)$  by  $p$  and  $q$ .

Solution: According to the relation between roots and coefficients, we have  $\tan \alpha + \tan \beta = -p$ , that is  $p = -(\tan \alpha + \tan \beta), q = \tan \alpha \tan \beta$ . Hence the quantity is equal to  $\sin^2(\alpha + \beta) - (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) + \tan \alpha \tan \beta \cos^2(\alpha + \beta) = \sin^2(\alpha + \beta) - (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) + \tan \alpha \tan \beta [1 - \sin^2(\alpha + \beta)] = \sin^2(\alpha + \beta)(1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta) - (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) + \tan \alpha \tan \beta = \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) \left\{ \frac{\sin(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos(\alpha + \beta)} (1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta) - (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) \right\} + \tan \alpha \tan \beta = \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos(\alpha + \beta) \left\{ \frac{\tan \alpha + \tan \beta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta} (1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta) - (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) \right\} + \tan \alpha \tan \beta = \tan \alpha \tan \beta = q$ .

**4.74 ★★** If  $(1 - \tan \theta)(1 + \sin 2\theta) = 1 + \tan \theta$ , evaluate the value of  $\theta$ .

Solution: The given equation is equivalent to  $(1 - \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta})(\sin \theta + \cos \theta)^2 = 1 + \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} \Rightarrow (\cos \theta - \sin \theta)(\cos \theta + \sin \theta)^2 = \cos \theta + \sin \theta \Rightarrow (\cos \theta + \sin \theta)[(\cos \theta - \sin \theta)(\cos \theta + \sin \theta) - 1] = 0$ . If  $\cos \theta + \sin \theta = 0$ , then  $\tan \theta = -1$ , thus  $\theta = n\pi + \frac{3\pi}{4}$  ( $n \in Z$ ). If  $(\cos \theta - \sin \theta)(\cos \theta + \sin \theta) - 1 = 0$ , then  $\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta = 1$ , thus  $\cos 2\theta = 1$ , hence  $2\theta = 2n\pi$ , that is  $\theta = n\pi$  ( $n \in Z$ ). Therefore,  $\theta = n\pi + \frac{3\pi}{4}$  or  $\theta = n\pi$  ( $n \in Z$ ).

**4.75 ★★** Let  $A, B, C$  are the interior angles of triangle  $ABC$ , and  $\cot \frac{A}{2}, \cot \frac{B}{2}, \cot \frac{C}{2}$  form an arithmetic sequence. Show  $\cot \frac{A}{2} \cot \frac{C}{2} = 3$ .

Proof: From the given conditions, we have  $\cot \frac{A}{2} + \cot \frac{C}{2} = 2 \cot \frac{B}{2} \Rightarrow \frac{\cos \frac{A}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2}} + \frac{\cos \frac{C}{2}}{\sin \frac{C}{2}} = 2 \frac{\cos \frac{B}{2}}{\sin \frac{B}{2}} = 2 \frac{\sin \frac{A+C}{2}}{\cos \frac{A+C}{2}} \Rightarrow \frac{\sin \frac{A+C}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{A+C}{2}}{\cos \frac{A+C}{2}}$ . Since  $A, B, C$  are the interior angles of triangle  $ABC$ , then  $\sin \frac{A+C}{2}, \cos \frac{A+C}{2}, \sin \frac{A}{2}, \sin \frac{C}{2}$  are all nonzero. Hence  $\cos \frac{A+C}{2} = 2 \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} \Rightarrow \cos \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{C}{2} - \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} = 2 \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} \Rightarrow \cos \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{C}{2} = 3 \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}$ . Therefore,  $\cot \frac{A}{2} \cot \frac{C}{2} = 3$ .

4.76 ★★★★ If  $\alpha \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ ,  $\beta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , and  $\alpha + \beta = \theta$  is a constant. Find the minimum value of  $\csc \alpha + \csc \beta$ .

Solution:  $\csc \alpha + \csc \beta = \frac{1}{\sin \alpha} + \frac{1}{\sin \beta} = \frac{\sin \alpha + \sin \beta}{\sin \alpha \sin \beta} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}}{\sin \alpha \sin \beta} = \frac{4 \sin \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}}{2 \sin \alpha \sin \beta}$   
 $= \frac{4 \sin \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}}{\cos(\alpha - \beta) - \cos(\alpha + \beta)} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}}{\frac{1+\cos(\alpha-\beta)}{2} - \frac{1+\cos(\alpha+\beta)}{2}} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}}{\cos^2 \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} - \cos^2 \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}} = \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$   
 $[\frac{1}{\cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} - \cos \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}} + \frac{1}{\cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} + \cos \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}}]$ . Since  $\alpha + \beta = \theta$  is a constant, then the above quantity is equal to  $\sin \frac{\theta}{2} [\frac{1}{\cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} - \cos \frac{\theta}{2}} + \frac{1}{\cos \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} + \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}]$ . This function reaches the minimum value when  $\cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} = 1$ , i.e.  $\alpha = \beta$ . The minimum value of  $\csc \alpha + \csc \beta$  is  $\sin \frac{\theta}{2} [\frac{1}{1 - \cos \frac{\theta}{2}} + \frac{1}{1 + \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}] = \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \frac{2}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{2}{\sin \frac{\theta}{2}}$ . As a conclusion,  
 $(\csc \alpha + \csc \beta)_{min} = \frac{2}{\sin \frac{\theta}{2}} \quad (0 < \theta < \pi)$ .

Excellent Economics and Business programmes at:


/
university of  
groningen



**“The perfect start  
of a successful,  
international career.”**

**CLICK HERE**

to discover why both socially  
and academically the University  
of Groningen is one of the best  
places for a student to be

[www.rug.nl/feb/education](http://www.rug.nl/feb/education)



4.77 ★★★★ Let  $c$  be the hypotenuse length of  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ , the area is  $S$ . Find the values of  $a, b, \angle A, \angle B$ .

Solution: From the given conditions, we have  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ ,  $S = \frac{1}{2}ab$ . Hence  $a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = c^2 + 4S$ , that is  $a+b = \sqrt{c^2+4S} \cdots ①$ . Similarly we have  $a-b = \sqrt{c^2-4S} \cdots ②$ . According to ① and ②,  $a = \frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} + \sqrt{c^2-4S})$ ,  $b = \frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} - \sqrt{c^2-4S})$ . We also can obtain  $\tan A = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} + \sqrt{c^2-4S})}{\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} - \sqrt{c^2-4S})} = \frac{(\sqrt{c^2+4S} + \sqrt{c^2-4S})^2}{c^2+4S-c^2+4S} = \frac{c^2+4S+2\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}+c^2-4S}{8S} = \frac{4S}{c^2+4S-2\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}+c^2-4S}$ . Similarly  $\tan B = \frac{b}{a} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} - \sqrt{c^2-4S})}{\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{c^2+4S} + \sqrt{c^2-4S})} = \frac{c^2+4S-2\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}+c^2-4S}{c^2+4S-c^2+4S} = \frac{2c^2-2\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}}{8S} = \frac{c^2-\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}}{4S} \Rightarrow B = \arctan \frac{c^2-\sqrt{c^4-16S^2}}{4S}$ .

4.78 ★★ If  $\tan \alpha, \tan \beta$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 2(\log_3 12 + \log_4 12)x - \log_3 12 \log_4 12 = 0$ , show  $\sin(\alpha + \beta) + 2 \sin \alpha \sin \beta = 0$ .

Proof: The Vieta's formulas lead to  $\tan \alpha + \tan \beta = 2(\log_3 12 + \log_4 12)$ ,  $\tan \alpha \tan \beta = -\log_3 12 \log_4 12$ . Then  $\frac{\sin \alpha}{\cos \alpha} + \frac{\sin \beta}{\cos \beta} = \frac{\sin(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos \alpha \cos \beta} = 2(\log_3 4 + \log_4 3 + 2) \cdots ①$ ,  $\frac{\sin \alpha \sin \beta}{\cos \alpha \cos \beta} = -(\log_3 4 + 1)(\log_4 3 + 1) = -(\log_3 4 + \log_4 3 + 2) \cdots ②$ . divided ① by ②, then  $\frac{\sin(\alpha + \beta)}{\sin \alpha \sin \beta} = -2 \Rightarrow \sin(\alpha + \beta) + 2 \sin \alpha \sin \beta = 0$ .

4.79 ★★★★ Let  $\frac{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2}}{\cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})} + \frac{\cos \phi \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}{\cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})} = 1$ , show  $\cos \theta + \cos \phi = 1$ .

Proof:  $\frac{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2}}{\cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})} + \frac{\cos \phi \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}{\cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})} = 1 \Rightarrow \frac{\cos(\theta + \frac{\phi}{2}) + \cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})}{2 \cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})} + \frac{\cos(\phi + \frac{\theta}{2}) + \cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})}{2 \cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})} = 1 \Rightarrow \frac{\cos(\theta + \frac{\phi}{2}) + \cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})}{2 \cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\cos(\phi + \frac{\theta}{2}) + \cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})}{2 \cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{\cos(\theta + \frac{\phi}{2})}{\cos(\theta - \frac{\phi}{2})} = -\frac{\cos(\phi + \frac{\theta}{2})}{\cos(\phi - \frac{\theta}{2})} \Rightarrow \frac{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2} - \sin \theta \sin \frac{\phi}{2}}{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2} + \sin \theta \sin \frac{\phi}{2}} = -\frac{\cos \phi \cos \frac{\theta}{2} - \sin \phi \sin \frac{\theta}{2}}{\cos \phi \cos \frac{\theta}{2} + \sin \phi \sin \frac{\theta}{2}}$ . Cancellate the denominator to rewrite the equation as  $\frac{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2}}{\sin \theta \sin \frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{\sin \phi \sin \frac{\theta}{2}}{\cos \phi \cos \frac{\theta}{2}} \Rightarrow \frac{\cos \theta \cos \frac{\phi}{2}}{2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} \sin \frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{\phi}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}{\cos \phi} \Rightarrow \cos \theta \cos \phi = 4 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = (1 - \cos \theta)(1 - \cos \phi) \Rightarrow \cos \theta \cos \phi = 1 - \cos \theta - \cos \phi + \cos \theta \cos \phi$ . Hence  $\cos \theta + \cos \phi = 1$ .

4.80 ★★★★ Given  $\sin\{2\cos^{-1}(\cot 2\tan^{-1} x)\} = 0$ , evaluate the value of  $x$ .

Solution: Let  $\tan^{-1} x = \theta$ , then  $\tan \theta = x$ ,  $\cot 2\theta = \frac{1}{\tan 2\theta} = \frac{1 - \tan^2 \theta}{2 \tan \theta} = \frac{1 - x^2}{2x}$ . Thus the given equation yields that  $\sin\{2\cos^{-1}\frac{1-x^2}{2x}\} = 0$ . Hence  $2\cos^{-1}\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = n\pi$ , ( $n \in N$ ). That is  $\cos^{-1}\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = \frac{n\pi}{2}$ . Dividing the equation by the cosine function, we have  $\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = \cos\frac{n\pi}{2}$ , ( $n \in N$ ). Since  $n$  is an arbitrary real number, then  $\cos\frac{n\pi}{2} = 0$ , or 1, or -1. If  $\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = 0$ , we have  $x = \pm 1$ . If  $\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = 1$ , then  $x = -1 \pm \sqrt{2}$ .

If  $\frac{1-x^2}{2x} = -1$ , then  $x = 1 \pm \sqrt{2}$ . As a conclusion, the solutions are  $x = \pm 1$ , or  $x = -1 \pm \sqrt{2}$ , or  $x = 1 \pm \sqrt{2}$ .

4.81 ★★★ Given  $\tan^{-1} x + \frac{1}{2} \sec^{-1} 5x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ , find the value of  $x$ .

Solution: Let  $\tan^{-1} x = \theta$ ,  $\frac{1}{2} \sec^{-1} 5x = \phi$ . Then  $x = \tan \theta$ ,  $5x = \sec 2\phi$ . Since  $\theta + \phi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ , we have  $2\phi = \frac{\pi}{2} - 2\theta$ . Hence  $5x = \sec(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2\theta) = \csc 2\theta = \frac{1}{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta} = \frac{\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta}{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta} = \frac{1}{2}(\tan \theta + \frac{1}{\tan \theta})$ . That is  $10x = x + \frac{1}{x} \Rightarrow 9x^2 = 1 \Rightarrow x = \pm \frac{1}{3}$ .

4.82 ★★★ If  $a, b, c$  are the side lengths of triangle  $ABC$ , show  $\frac{a \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{b \sin(C-A)}{c^2 - a^2} = \frac{c \sin(A-B)}{a^2 - b^2}$ .

Proof: Let  $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C} = k$ . We obtain that  $\frac{a \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{k \sin A \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{k \sin(B+C) \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{k[(\sin B \cos C)^2 - (\cos B \sin C)^2]}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{k[\sin^2 B(1 - \sin^2 C) - (1 - \sin^2 B) \sin^2 C]}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{k(\sin^2 B - \sin^2 C)}{b^2 - c^2}$ . Since  $\frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c} = \frac{1}{k}$ , applying the geometric theorem, we have  $\frac{\sin^2 B - \sin^2 C}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{1}{k^2}$ , then  $\frac{a \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{1}{k}$ . Similarly,  $\frac{b \sin(C-A)}{c^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{k}$ ,  $\frac{c \sin(A-B)}{a^2 - b^2} = \frac{1}{k}$ . Therefore  $\frac{a \sin(B-C)}{b^2 - c^2} = \frac{b \sin(C-A)}{c^2 - a^2} = \frac{c \sin(A-B)}{a^2 - b^2}$ .

4.83 ★★★ For a triangle  $ABC$ , if  $\tan A \tan B > 1$ , show the triangle is an acute triangle.

Proof 1: Since  $\tan A \tan B > 1 \Rightarrow \tan A \tan B - 1 > 0 \Rightarrow \frac{\sin A \sin B - \cos A \cos B}{\cos A \cos B} > 0 \Rightarrow -\frac{\cos(A + B)}{\cos A \cos B} > 0 \Rightarrow \frac{\cos C}{\cos A \cos B} > 0$ . Hence  $\cos A \cos B \cos C > 0$ . Therefore  $\cos A > 0$ . Otherwise, if  $\cos A < 0$  which means  $A$  is an obtuse angle, applying  $\cos A \cos B \cos C > 0$ , we have  $\cos B \cos C < 0$  which means one of  $B$  and  $C$  is an obtuse angle. Hence  $A + B + C > 180^\circ$ . The conclusion is contradicting to  $A + B + C = 180^\circ$ . Therefore  $\cos A > 0$ . Similarly, we obtain  $\cos B > 0, \cos C > 0$ . As a conclusion,  $\triangle ABC$  is an acute triangle.

Proof 2: Since  $\tan A \tan B > 1$ , then  $\tan A$  and  $\tan B$  are the same sign. If  $\tan A$  and  $\tan B$  are both negative, we obtain  $A$  and  $B$  are both obtuse angles which is contradictory with the given condition. If  $\tan A$  and  $\tan B$  are both positive, we obtain  $A$  and  $B$  are both acute angles. Since  $0 > 1 - \tan A \tan B = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{\tan(A + B)} = -\frac{\tan A + \tan B}{\tan C}$ . On the other hand, since  $\tan A + \tan B > 0$ , then  $\tan C > 0$ , hence  $C$  is also an acute angle. Consequently,  $\triangle ABC$  is an acute triangle.

American online  
**LIGS University**  
 is currently enrolling in the  
 Interactive Online **BBA, MBA, MSc,**  
**DBA and PhD** programs:

- ▶ **enroll by September 30th, 2014** and
- ▶ **save up to 16%** on the tuition!
- ▶ pay in 10 installments / 2 years
- ▶ Interactive Online education
- ▶ visit [www.ligsuniversity.com](http://www.ligsuniversity.com) to find out more!

Note: LIGS University is not accredited by any nationally recognized accrediting agency listed by the US Secretary of Education.  
[More info here.](#)



4.84 ★ Given  $|A| < 1$ ,  $\sin \alpha = A \sin(\alpha + \beta)$ . Show  $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{\sin \beta}{\cos \beta - A}$ .

Solution:  $\sin \alpha = A \sin(\alpha + \beta) \Rightarrow \sin[(\alpha + \beta) - \beta] = A \sin(\alpha + \beta) \Rightarrow \sin(\alpha + \beta) \cos \beta - \cos(\alpha + \beta) \sin \beta = A \sin(\alpha + \beta) \Rightarrow \sin(\alpha + \beta)(\cos \beta - A) = \cos(\alpha + \beta) \sin \beta \Rightarrow \tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{\sin \beta}{\cos \beta - A}$ .

4.85 ★★ Given  $0 < x < \pi$ , find the minimum value of function  $f(x) = \sin x + \frac{4}{\sin x}$ .

Solution: Since  $0 < \sin x \leq 1$  for  $0 < x < \pi$ , then the minimum value of  $f(x)$  is equal to the minimum value of  $f(x)$  for  $0 < x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Assume  $0 < x_2 < x_1 \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) = (\sin x_1 + \frac{4}{\sin x_1}) - (\sin x_2 + \frac{4}{\sin x_2}) = \frac{-(\sin x_1 - \sin x_2)(4 - \sin x_1 \sin x_2)}{\sin x_1 \sin x_2}$ . Since  $0 < \sin x_2 < \sin x_1 \leq 1$ ,  $4 - \sin x_1 \sin x_2 > 0$ , we have  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) < 0$ , that is  $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$ . Therefore  $f(x)$  is decreasing on the interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . The minimum value of  $f(x)$  is 5 at  $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Consequently, the minimum value of  $f(x)$  is 5 for  $0 < x < \pi$ .

4.86 ★★★ If  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are two acute angles that satisfy the equation  $\sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \beta = \sin(\alpha + \beta)$ . Show  $\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

Proof:  $\sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \beta = \sin(\alpha + \beta) \Rightarrow \sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \beta = \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta \Rightarrow \sin \alpha(\sin \alpha - \cos \beta) = \sin \beta(\cos \alpha - \sin \beta)$ . Since  $0 < \alpha, \beta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we have  $\sin \alpha > 0, \sin \beta > 0$ . Hence  $\sin \alpha - \cos \beta$  and  $\cos \alpha - \sin \beta$  are the same signs, or they are both zero at the same time.

(1) If

$$\begin{cases} \sin \alpha - \cos \beta > 0 \\ \cos \alpha - \sin \beta > 0 \end{cases}$$

then

$$\begin{cases} \sin \alpha > \cos \beta > 0 \\ \cos \alpha > \sin \beta > 0 \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow \sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha > \sin^2 \beta + \cos^2 \beta$ , which means  $1 > 1$ . It does not hold.

(2) If

$$\begin{cases} \sin \alpha - \cos \beta < 0 \\ \cos \alpha - \sin \beta < 0 \end{cases}$$

then

$$\begin{cases} \cos \beta > \sin \alpha > 0 \\ \sin \beta > \cos \alpha > 0 \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow \sin^2 \beta + \cos^2 \beta > \sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha$ , which means  $1 > 1$ . It does not hold. The above two cases are both false. Therefore we have

$$\begin{cases} \cos \beta - \sin \alpha = 0 \cdots \textcircled{1} \\ \sin \beta - \cos \alpha = 0 \cdots \textcircled{2} \end{cases}$$

Checking  $\textcircled{1}^2 + \textcircled{2}^2$ , we obtain  $\sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta = 1$  which implies that  $\sin(\alpha + \beta) = 1$ . Since  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are acute angles, then  $\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

4.87 ★★★ Given  $a, b, c$  in the interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , and  $a = \cos a, b = \sin(\cos b), c = \cos(\sin c)$ , compare their values.

Solution: Their order is  $b < a < c$ .

Otherwise, assume  $b \geq a$ . Since cosine function is decreasing on the interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , then  $0 < \cos b \leq \cos a = a < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Applying the relation that is  $\sin x < x$  when  $x \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , we have  $0 < \sin(\cos b) < \cos b \leq \cos a = a$  which means  $b < a$ . It contradicts to the assumption. Therefore  $b < a$ . Next, assume  $c \leq a$ . Since cosine function is decreasing in the interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , thus  $0 < \sin c < c \leq a < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , hence  $\cos(\sin c) > \cos c \geq \cos a = a$  which means  $c > a$ . It contradicts to the assumption. Therefore  $c > a$ . As a conclusion,  $b < a < c$ .

4.88 ★★★ Given the three side lengths  $a, b, c$  corresponding to angles  $A, B, C$  of an obtuse triangle  $ABC$ ,  $\sin C = \frac{k}{\sqrt{2}}$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and equation  $x^2 - 2kx + 3k^2 - 7k + 3 = 0$  has real roots. The formula  $(c - b) \sin^2 A + b \sin^2 B = c \sin^2 C$  holds. Find the values of  $A, B, C$ .

Solution: Since the equation has real roots, then  $\Delta = 4k^2 - 4(3k^2 - 7k + 3) \geq 0$ , that is  $2k^2 - 7k + 3 \leq 0 \Rightarrow \frac{1}{2} \leq k \leq 3$ . Since  $k$  is an integer, then  $k = 1$  or  $2$  or  $3$ . Since  $k = \sqrt{2} \sin C$ , and  $0 < \sin C < 1$  in the obtuse triangle  $ABC$ , we have

$k = 1$ ,  $\sin C = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ ,  $\angle C = 45^\circ$  or  $\angle C = 135^\circ$ . Since  $(c - b) \sin^2 A + b \sin^2 B = c \sin^2 C$ , we apply the sine law  $a = 2R \sin A, b = 2R \sin B, c = 2R \sin C$  to obtain that  $(c - b)a^2 + b^2 - c^2 = 0$ . By solving the equation  $(b - c)(b^2 + c^2 - a^2 + bc) = 0$ , we have  $b = c$  or  $b^2 + c^2 - a^2 + bc = 0$ . When  $b = c$ ,  $B = 45^\circ$  or  $B = 135^\circ$ .  $\angle B = \angle C = 45^\circ$  and  $\angle B = \angle C = 135^\circ$  do not hold, since they conflict with the given condition that  $\triangle ABC$  is an obtuse triangle and  $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ$ . When  $b^2 + c^2 - a^2 + bc = 0$ , we can apply the cosine law to obtain that  $\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc} = \frac{-bc}{2bc} = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore,  $\angle A = 120^\circ, \angle B = 15^\circ, \angle C = 45^\circ$ .

4.89 ★★★★ If  $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n$  are positive numbers which are all less than 1, show  $\sum_{k=1}^n \arctan a_k = \frac{n\pi}{4} - \sum_{k=1}^n \arctan \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k}$ .

Proof: Let  $\alpha = \arctan a_k, \beta = \arctan \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k}, (k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n)$ . Since  $0 < a_k < 1$ ,

then  $0 < \alpha < \frac{\pi}{4}, 0 < \beta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $0 < \alpha + \beta < \pi$ . Hence  $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{a_k + \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k}}{1 - \frac{a_k(1-a_k)}{1+a_k}} =$

$\frac{a_k^2 + 1}{1 + a_k^2} = 1 \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Therefore  $\arctan a_k + \arctan \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k} = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Substituting separately  $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  into the equation and adding these equations, we

have  $\sum_{k=1}^n (\arctan a_k + \arctan \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k}) = \frac{n\pi}{4}$ . It can be shown that  $\sum_{k=1}^n \arctan a_k =$

$$\frac{n\pi}{4} - \sum_{k=1}^n \arctan \frac{1-a_k}{1+a_k}.$$

4.90 ★★★★ Given complex number  $z = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2} \sin \frac{A+B}{2} + i \cos \frac{A-B}{2}$ , where  $A, B, C$  are the interior angles of  $\triangle ABC$ , and  $|z| = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{4}$ . (1) Compute  $\tan A \tan B$ . (2) If  $|AB| = 6$ , calculate the area of  $\triangle ABC$  when  $\angle C$  reaches its maximum value.

# DON'T EAT YELLOW SNOW

What will your advice be?

Some advice just states the obvious. But to give the kind of advice that's going to make a real difference to your clients you've got to listen critically, dig beneath the surface, challenge assumptions and be credible and confident enough to make suggestions right from day one. At Grant Thornton you've got to be ready to kick start a career right at the heart of business.

Sound like you? Here's our advice: visit [GrantThornton.ca/careers/students](http://GrantThornton.ca/careers/students)

Scan here to learn more about a career with Grant Thornton.

**Grant Thornton**  
An instinct for growth™

© Grant Thornton LLP. A Canadian Member of Grant Thornton International Ltd

Solution: (1) By the given condition, we have  $|z|^2 = [\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2} \sin \frac{A+B}{2}]^2 + [\cos \frac{A-B}{2}]^2 = [\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{4}]^2 \Rightarrow \frac{5}{4} \frac{1-\cos(A+B)}{2} + \frac{1+\cos(A-B)}{2} = \frac{9}{8} \Rightarrow 4\cos(A-B) = 5\cos(A+B) \Rightarrow 9\sin A \sin B = \cos A \cos B$ . Hence  $\tan A \tan B = \frac{1}{9}$ .

$$(2) \tan C = -\tan(A+B) = -\frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B} = -\frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \frac{1}{9}} = -\frac{9}{8}(\tan A +$$

$\tan B) \leq -\frac{9}{4}\sqrt{\tan A \tan B} = -\frac{3}{4}$ , and  $\tan C$  gets the maximum value if and only if  $\tan A = \tan B = \frac{1}{3}$ . It means  $\triangle ABC$  is an isosceles triangle when  $\angle C$  reaches its maximum value. The value of altitude  $h$  on the side  $AB$  is  $h = \frac{|AB|}{2} \tan A = 1$ .

Therefore  $S_{\triangle ABC} = \frac{1}{2}|AB|h = 3$ .

4.91 ★★★ Given  $a, b, c$  are three side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $a+b=10$ ,  $(a+b+c)(a+b-c)=3ab$ , compute the maximal area and the minimal perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Solution: From the given conditions and the cosine theorem, we have

$$\begin{cases} (a+b+c)(a+b-c) = 3ab \\ c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} (a+b)^2 - c^2 = 3ab \\ a^2 + b^2 - c^2 = 2ab \cos C \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} a^2 + b^2 - c^2 = ab \\ a^2 + b^2 - c^2 = 2ab \cos C \end{cases}$$

Thus  $\cos C = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow C = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Let the area is  $S$ . Since  $b = 10 - a$ , we have

$$S = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C = \frac{1}{2}a(10-a)\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(a-5)^2 + \frac{25\sqrt{3}}{4}$$

$S_{\max} = \frac{25\sqrt{3}}{4}$  when  $a = b = 5$ . Let the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is  $p$ , then  $p = a + b + c = 10 + \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C} = 10 + \sqrt{a^2 + (10-a)^2 - 2a(10-a)\frac{1}{2}} = 10 + \sqrt{3(a-5)^2 + 25}$ . When  $a = b = 5$ ,  $p_{\min} = 15$ .

4.92 ★★★★ Show  $\frac{1}{\sin 2\alpha} + \frac{1}{\sin 4\alpha} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sin 2^n\alpha} = \cot \alpha - \cot 2^n\alpha$ .

Proof:  $\frac{1}{\sin 2\alpha} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{\sin \alpha \sin 2\alpha} = \frac{\sin(2\alpha - \alpha)}{\sin \alpha \sin 2\alpha} = \frac{\sin 2\alpha \cos \alpha - \cos 2\alpha \sin \alpha}{\sin \alpha \sin 2\alpha} = \cot \alpha - \cot 2\alpha$ .  
 $\frac{1}{\sin 4\alpha} = \frac{\sin 2\alpha}{\sin 2\alpha \sin 4\alpha} = \frac{\sin(4\alpha - 2\alpha)}{\sin 2\alpha \sin 4\alpha} = \frac{\sin 4\alpha \cos 2\alpha - \cos 4\alpha \sin 2\alpha}{\sin 2\alpha \sin 4\alpha} = \cot 2\alpha - \cot 2^2\alpha$ . Applying the recurrence relation, we have  $\frac{1}{\sin 8\alpha} = \cot 2^2\alpha - \cot 2^3\alpha, \dots, \frac{1}{\sin 2^n\alpha} = \cot 2^{n-1}\alpha - \cot 2^n\alpha$ . Adding all above equations, we obtain  $\frac{1}{\sin 2\alpha} + \frac{1}{\sin 4\alpha} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sin 2^n\alpha} = \cot \alpha - \cot 2^n\alpha$ .

4.93 ★★★ Let  $y \cos \alpha - x \sin \alpha = a \cos 2\alpha, y \sin \alpha + x \cos \alpha = 2a \sin 2\alpha$ , show  $(x+y)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (x-y)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 2a^{\frac{2}{3}}$ .

Proof: From the two given conditions, we obtain  $x = \begin{vmatrix} \cos \alpha & a \cos 2\alpha \\ \sin \alpha & 2a \sin 2\alpha \end{vmatrix} = 2a \sin 2\alpha \cos \alpha - \begin{vmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{vmatrix}$   
 $a \sin \alpha \cos 2\alpha = 2a^2 \sin \alpha \cos^2 \alpha - a \sin \alpha (\cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha) = a(3 \sin \alpha \cos^2 \alpha + \sin^3 \alpha)$ .  
 $y = \begin{vmatrix} a \cos 2\alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ 2a \sin 2\alpha & \cos \alpha \end{vmatrix} = a \cos \alpha \cos 2\alpha + 2a \sin 2\alpha \sin \alpha = a[\cos \alpha (\cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha) + 4 \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha] = a(\cos^3 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha + 4 \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha) = a(\cos^3 \alpha + 3 \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha)$ . Thus  $x + y = a(\sin^3 \alpha + 3 \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha + 3 \sin \alpha \cos^2 \alpha + \cos^3 \alpha) = a(\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha)^3$ .  
 $x - y = a(\sin^3 \alpha - 3 \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha + 3 \sin \alpha \cos^2 \alpha - \cos^3 \alpha) = a(\sin \alpha - \cos \alpha)^3$ . Hence  $(x+y)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (x-y)^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}[(\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha)^2 + (\sin \alpha - \cos \alpha)^2] = a^{\frac{2}{3}}[2(\sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha)] = 2a^{\frac{2}{3}}$ .

4.94 ★★★★★ Let the incircle radius of triangle  $ABC$  is  $r$ , the circumcircle radius of triangle  $ABC$  is  $R$ , show  $r \leq \frac{1}{2}R$ .

Proof: Let  $a, b, c$  are the side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $p = \frac{1}{2}(a+b+c)$ , the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is  $S$ .

Then  $\frac{r}{R} = \frac{S}{p} \div \frac{abc}{4S} = \frac{4S^2}{pabc} = \frac{4p(p-a)(p-b)(p-c)}{pabc} = 4\sqrt{\frac{(p-a)(p-b)}{ab}}\sqrt{\frac{(p-b)(p-c)}{bc}}$   
 $\sqrt{\frac{(p-c)(p-a)}{ca}} = 4\sqrt{\frac{c^2 - a^2 + 2ab - b^2}{4ab}}\sqrt{\frac{a^2 - b^2 + 2bc - c^2}{4bc}}\sqrt{\frac{b^2 - a^2 + 2ac - c^2}{4ca}} =$   
 $4\sqrt{\frac{2ab(1 - \cos C)}{4ab}}\sqrt{\frac{2bc(1 - \cos A)}{4bc}}\sqrt{\frac{2ac(1 - \cos B)}{4ca}} = 4\sqrt{\frac{(1 - \cos C)}{2}}\sqrt{\frac{(1 - \cos A)}{2}}$   
 $\sqrt{\frac{(1 - \cos B)}{2}} = 4 \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}$ .

And  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} = \sin\left(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}\right) + \left(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}\right) \sin\left(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}\right) - \left(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}\right) = [\sin(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \cos(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) + \cos(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \sin(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4})][\sin(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \cos(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) - \cos(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \sin(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4})] = \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \cos^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) - \cos^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) = \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) \cos^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) - [1 - \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4})] \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) = \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) [\cos^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) + \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4})] - \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4}) = \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{B}{4}) - \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{B}{4})$ .  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2}$  reaches its maximum value when  $A = B$ . Following the same logic, we can prove that  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} = \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} + \frac{C}{4}) - \sin^2(\frac{A}{4} - \frac{C}{4})$ .  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}$  reaches its maximum value when  $A = C$ .  $\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} = \sin^2(\frac{B}{4} + \frac{C}{4}) - \sin^2(\frac{B}{4} - \frac{C}{4})$ .  $\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}$  reaches its maximum value when  $B = C$ . Hence  $\sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}$  reaches its maximum value when  $A = B = C = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Therefore  $\frac{r}{R} = 4 \sin \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2} \leq 4 \sin^3 \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$ . As a summary,  $r \leq \frac{1}{2}R$ .

**4.95 ★★★★★** Solve the equation  $\cos^2 \theta - \cos^2 \phi = 2 \cos^3 \theta (\cos \theta - \cos \phi) - 2 \sin^3 \theta (\sin \theta - \sin \phi)$ .

Solution:  $\cos^2 \theta - \cos^2 \phi = 2 \cos^3 \theta (\cos \theta - \cos \phi) - 2 \sin^3 \theta (\sin \theta - \sin \phi) \Rightarrow \cos^2 \theta - \cos^2 \phi = \frac{\cos 3\theta + 3 \cos \theta}{2} (\cos \theta - \cos \phi) - \frac{3 \sin \theta - \sin 3\theta}{2} (\sin \theta - \sin \phi) \Rightarrow 2(\cos^2 \theta - \cos^2 \phi) = \cos 3\theta \cos \theta + \sin 3\theta \sin \theta - \cos 3\theta \cos \phi - \sin 3\theta \sin \phi + 3 \cos^2 \theta - 3 \sin^2 \theta - 3 \cos \theta \cos \phi + 3 \sin \theta \sin \phi \Rightarrow \cos 2\theta - \cos(3\theta - \phi) - 3 \cos(\theta + \phi) = 3 \sin^2 \theta - \cos^2 \theta - 2 \cos^2 \phi \Rightarrow \cos 2\theta - \cos(3\theta - \phi) - 3 \cos(\theta + \phi) = 3 - 4 \cos^2 \theta - 2 \cos^2 \phi = 3 - 2(1 + \cos 2\theta) - (1 + \cos 2\phi) = -2 \cos 2\theta - \cos 2\phi \Rightarrow 3 \cos 2\theta - 3 \cos(\theta + \phi) - \cos(3\theta - \phi) + \cos 2\phi = 0 \Rightarrow -6 \sin \frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} \sin \frac{\theta - \phi}{2} + 2 \sin \frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} \sin \frac{3(\theta - \phi)}{2} = 0 \Rightarrow \sin \frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} (\sin \frac{3(\theta - \phi)}{2} - 3 \sin \frac{\theta - \phi}{2}) = 0 \Rightarrow \sin \frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} (-4 \sin^3 \frac{\theta - \phi}{2}) = 0$ . Thus  $\sin \frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} = 0$  or  $\sin \frac{\theta - \phi}{2} = 0$ . Therefore, we have  $\frac{3\theta + \phi}{2} = n\pi$  ( $n \in N$ ) or  $\frac{\theta - \phi}{2} = n\pi$  ( $n \in N$ ). As a conclusion,  $\theta = n\pi, \phi = -n\pi$  ( $n \in N$ ).

**4.96 ★★★★★** The interior angles  $A, B, C$  satisfy  $\sin A \cos B - \sin B = \sin C - \sin A \cos C$ . If the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 12, find the maximal area.

Solution: The given equation can be written as  $\sin A(\cos B + \cos C) = \sin B + \sin C$  where  $\cos B + \cos C \neq 0$ . Otherwise, if  $\cos B + \cos C = 0$ , we have  $\cos B = \cos(\pi - C)$ . Since  $0 < B < \pi, 0 < \pi - C < \pi$ , then  $B = \pi - C$ , that is  $B + C = \pi$ . It contradicts to the condition  $A + B + C = \pi$ . Hence  $\cos B + \cos C \neq 0$ . Therefore  $\sin A = \frac{\sin B + \sin C}{\cos B + \cos C} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{B+C}{2} \cos \frac{B-C}{2}}{2 \cos \frac{B+C}{2} \cos \frac{B-C}{2}} = \tan \frac{B+C}{2}$ . Since  $\frac{B+C}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{A}{2}$ , then  $\tan \frac{B+C}{2} = \tan(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{A}{2}) = \cot \frac{A}{2}$ . Then  $\sin A = \cot \frac{A}{2} \Rightarrow 2 \sin \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2}}$ .

Since  $0 < \frac{A}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , then  $\cos \frac{A}{2} \neq 0$ . Hence  $\sin^2 \frac{A}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \sin \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ . Therefore  $A = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . After all,  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle. Let  $a, b, c$  are the side lengths corresponding to the angles  $A, B, C$ , and  $a$  is the hypotenuse. We have  $b + c + \sqrt{b^2 + c^2} = 12$ . Since  $b > 0, c > 0$ , then  $b + c \geq 2\sqrt{bc}, \sqrt{b^2 + c^2} \geq \sqrt{2bc}$ . Hence  $2\sqrt{bc} + \sqrt{2}\sqrt{bc} \leq 12$ . That is  $\sqrt{bc} \leq \frac{12}{2 + \sqrt{2}} = 6(2 - \sqrt{2})$ .  $S_{\triangle ABC} = \frac{1}{2}bc \leq \frac{1}{2}36(2 - \sqrt{2})^2 = 36(3 - 2\sqrt{2})$ . When  $b = c$ , we have the maximal area  $(S_{\triangle ABC})_{max} = 36(3 - 2\sqrt{2})$ .

**4.97 ★★★★★** Given  $a \sin x + b \cos x = 0, A \sin 2x + B \cos 2x = C$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are not zero at the same time, and  $0 \leq x \leq 180^\circ$ , show  $2abA + (b^2 - a^2)B + (a^2 + b^2)C = 0$ .

Solution: (1) When  $a = 0, b \neq 0$ , we have  $b \cos x = 0$ , then  $\cos x = 0, 0 \leq x \leq 180^\circ$ . Hence  $x = 90^\circ$ . That is  $A \sin 180^\circ + B \cos 180^\circ = C$ . Solving the equation, we have  $-B = C$ . That is  $2abA + (b^2 - a^2)B + (a^2 + b^2)C = b^2(B + C) = 0$ .

(2) When  $b = 0, a \neq 0$ , we have  $a \sin x = 0$ , then  $\sin x = 0, 0 \leq x \leq 180^\circ$ . Hence  $x = 0^\circ$  or  $x = 180^\circ$ . That is  $A \sin 0 + B \cos 0 = C$  or  $A \sin 360^\circ + B \cos 360^\circ = C$ . Solving the equation, we have  $B = C$ . That is  $2abA + (b^2 - a^2)B + (a^2 + b^2)C = a^2(C - B) = 0$ .

(3) When  $a \neq 0, b \neq 0$ , the equation system is

$$\begin{cases} a \sin x + b \cos x = 0, & \textcircled{1} \\ A \sin 2x + B \cos 2x = C. & \textcircled{2} \end{cases}$$

..... Alcatel-Lucent 

[www.alcatel-lucent.com/careers](http://www.alcatel-lucent.com/careers)

What if you could build your future and create the future?

One generation's transformation is the next's status quo. In the near future, people may soon think it's strange that devices ever had to be "plugged in." To obtain that status, there needs to be "The Shift".

Since  $\cos x \neq 0$ , equation ① results in  $\tan x = -\frac{b}{a}$ . We have  $\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x = 2 \tan x \cos^2 x = \frac{2 \tan x}{1 + \tan^2 x} = \frac{2(-\frac{b}{a})}{1 + (-\frac{b}{a})^2} = -\frac{2ab}{a^2 + b^2}$  ③ and  $\cos 2x = 2 \cos^2 x - 1 = \frac{2}{1 + \tan^2 x} - 1 = \frac{2}{1 + (-\frac{b}{a})^2} - 1 = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}$  ④. Substituting ③ and ④ into ②, we have  $A(-\frac{2ab}{a^2 + b^2}) + B(\frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}) = C \Rightarrow -\frac{2abA}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{(a^2 - b^2)B}{a^2 + b^2} = C \Rightarrow -2abA + (a^2 - b^2)B = (a^2 + b^2)C \Rightarrow 2abA + (b^2 - a^2)B + (a^2 + b^2)C = 0$ .

**4.98 ★★★★** Let  $a, b, c$  be the side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$  corresponding to the angles  $A, B, C$ , show  $(\cot \frac{A}{4} - \csc \frac{A}{2}) : (\cot \frac{B}{2} + \cot \frac{C}{2}) = (b + c - a) : 2a$ .

Proof: We have  $\frac{b+c-a}{2a} = \frac{\sin B + \sin C - \sin A}{2 \sin A} = \frac{2 \sin \frac{B+C}{2} \cos \frac{B-C}{2} - 2 \sin \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{A}{2}}{4 \sin \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{A}{2}}$   
 $= \frac{\cos \frac{B-C}{2} - \cos \frac{B+C}{2}}{2 \sin \frac{A}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2}}$  ①. Since  $\cot \frac{A}{4} - \csc \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{4}}{\sin \frac{A}{4}} - \frac{1}{\sin \frac{A}{2}} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{4}}{\sin \frac{A}{4}} - \frac{1}{2 \sin \frac{A}{4} \cos \frac{A}{4}} = \frac{2 \cos^2 \frac{A}{4} - 1}{2 \sin \frac{A}{4} \cos \frac{A}{4}} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2}}$  and  $\cot \frac{B}{2} + \cot \frac{C}{2} = \frac{\cos \frac{B}{2}}{\sin \frac{B}{2}} + \frac{\cos \frac{C}{2}}{\sin \frac{C}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{B+C}{2}}{\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{2}}{\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}}$ . Then  $\frac{\cot \frac{A}{4} - \csc \frac{A}{2}}{\cot \frac{B}{2} + \cot \frac{C}{2}} = \frac{\cos \frac{A}{2} \sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2} \cos \frac{B}{2} \cos \frac{C}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{B}{2} \sin \frac{C}{2}}{\sin \frac{A}{2}}$  ②.  
From ① and ②, we have that  $(\cot \frac{A}{4} - \csc \frac{A}{2}) : (\cot \frac{B}{2} + \cot \frac{C}{2}) = (b + c - a) : 2a$ .

**4.99 ★★★★★** If the equation  $a \sin x + b \cos x + c = 0$  has two distinct solutions  $\alpha, \beta$  which are in the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$ , show that  $\tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \frac{a}{b}$  when  $b \neq 0$ .

Proof: The equation implies that  $a \sin x + b \cos x = -c$ . Then  $\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \sin x + \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \cos x = -\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ . Let  $\cos \varphi = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}, \sin \varphi = \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ . Then  $\sin(x + \varphi) = -\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ . Since  $\alpha, \beta$  are two distinct solutions which are between 0 and  $2\pi$ , then  $\sin(\alpha + \varphi) = -\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$  ①,  $\sin(\beta + \varphi) = -\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$  ②. Checking ① - ②, we have  $\sin(\alpha + \varphi) - \sin(\beta + \varphi) = 0$ . That is  $2 \cos(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + \varphi) \sin \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} = 0$ . Since  $\alpha \neq \beta$  and  $\alpha, \beta \in [0, \pi]$ , then  $\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} \neq 0$ . Hence  $\cos(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + \varphi) = 0$ . That is  $\cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cos \varphi - \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \sin \varphi = 0 \Rightarrow \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} - \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = 0$ . Since  $b \neq 0$ , then  $\cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \neq 0$ . Dividing the equation by  $\cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$  and multiplying it by  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , we have  $a - b \tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = 0$ . Therefore,  $\tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \frac{a}{b}$ .

4.100 ★★★★★ Show  $\frac{a^3}{2} \csc^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{a}{b}\right) + \frac{b^3}{2} \sec^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}\right) = (a+b)(a^2+b^2)$ .

Proof: Let  $\tan^{-1} \frac{a}{b} = \theta$ , then  $\tan \theta = \frac{a}{b}$ ,  $\csc^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1}{\sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{2}{1 - \cos \theta} = \frac{2}{1 - \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}} =$

$$\frac{2\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}-b} = \frac{2\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}-b} \frac{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}+b}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}+b} = \frac{2(a^2+b^2)+2b\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{a^2}. \text{ We have the}$$

$$\text{equation } \frac{a^3}{2} \csc^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{a}{b}\right) = \frac{a^3}{2} \csc^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = a(a^2+b^2) + ab\sqrt{a^2+b^2}.$$

Let  $\tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a} = \phi$ , then  $\tan \phi = \frac{b}{a}$ ,  $\sec^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = \frac{1}{\cos^2 \frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{2}{1 + \cos \phi} = \frac{2}{1 + \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}} =$

$$\frac{2\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}+a} = \frac{2\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}+a} \frac{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}-a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}-a} = \frac{2(a^2+b^2)-2a\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{b^2}. \text{ We have the}$$

$$\text{equation } \frac{b^3}{2} \sec^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}\right) = \frac{b^3}{2} \sec^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = b(a^2+b^2) - ab\sqrt{a^2+b^2}.$$

Consequently,  $\frac{a^3}{2} \csc^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{a}{b}\right) + \frac{b^3}{2} \sec^2\left(\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}\right) = a(a^2+b^2) + ab\sqrt{a^2+b^2} + b(a^2+b^2) - ab\sqrt{a^2+b^2} = (a+b)(a^2+b^2)$ .

4.101 ★★★★★ The side lengths  $a, b, c$  of  $\triangle ABC$  form a harmonic series, show that  $\cos \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{\sin C \sin A}{\cos C + \cos A}}$ .



**Maastricht University** *Leading in Learning!*

**Join the best at  
the Maastricht University  
School of Business and  
Economics!**

**Visit us and find out why we are the best!  
Master's Open Day: 22 February 2014**

**Top master's programmes**

- 33<sup>rd</sup> place Financial Times worldwide ranking: MSc International Business
- 1<sup>st</sup> place: MSc International Business
- 1<sup>st</sup> place: MSc Financial Economics
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Management of Learning
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Economics
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Econometrics and Operations Research
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Global Supply Chain Management and Change

Sources: Keuzegids Master ranking 2013; Elsevier 'Beste Studies' ranking 2012; Financial Times Global Masters in Management ranking 2012

Maastricht University is the best specialist university in the Netherlands (Elsevier)

[www.mastersopenday.nl](http://www.mastersopenday.nl)



Proof: From the given condition that side lengths  $a, b, c$  form a harmonic series, then  $\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{c} = \frac{2}{b}$ . Hence  $b = \frac{2ac}{a+c}$ . Let the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is  $S$ , and the half of its perimeter is

$$\begin{aligned} p. \text{ We have } \cos \frac{B}{2} &= \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos B}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{a^2+c^2-b^2+2ac}{4ac}} = \sqrt{\frac{(a+c+b)(a+c-b)}{4ac}} = \\ \sqrt{\frac{p(p-b)}{ac}} &= \sqrt{\frac{S^2}{ac(p-a)(p-c)}} = \sqrt{\frac{bc \sin A ab \sin C}{4ac(p-a)(p-c)}} = \sqrt{\frac{2ab^2 c \sin A \sin C}{b(a+c)[b^2-(c-a)^2]}} = \\ \sqrt{\frac{2abc \sin A \sin C}{ab^2+b^2c+ac^2+a^2c-c^3-a^3}} &= \sqrt{\frac{2abc \sin A \sin C}{a(b^2+c^2-a^2)+c(a^2+b^2-c^2)}} = \sqrt{\frac{\sin A \sin C}{\frac{b^2+c^2-a^2}{2bc}+\frac{a^2+b^2-c^2}{2ab}}} = \\ \sqrt{\frac{\sin A \sin C}{\cos A + \cos C}}. \end{aligned}$$

4.102 ★★★★★ If  $y = \sin^{10} x + 10 \sin^2 x \cos^2 x + \cos^{10} x$ ,  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Find the maximum value and minimum value of  $y$ .

Solution1: Applying the double angle formula and half angle formula, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \sin^{10} x + 10 \sin^2 x \cos^2 x + \cos^{10} x = (\sin^2 x)^5 + \frac{5}{2}(2 \sin x \cos x)^2 + (\cos^2 x)^5 = \\ &= \left(\frac{1-\cos 2x}{2}\right)^5 + \frac{5}{2} \sin 2x + \left(\frac{1+\cos 2x}{2}\right)^5 = \frac{1}{32}[(1-\cos 2x)^5 + (1+\cos 2x)^5] + \frac{5}{2} \sin^2 2x = \\ &= \frac{2+20 \cos^2 2x + 10 \cos^4 2x}{32} + \frac{5}{2}(1-\cos^2 2x) = \frac{1+10 \cos^2 2x + 5 \cos^4 2x + 40(1-\cos^2 2x)}{16} = \\ &= \frac{5 \cos^4 2x - 30 \cos^2 2x + 41}{16} = \frac{5}{16}(\cos^4 2x - 6 \cos^2 2x + \frac{41}{5}) = \frac{5}{16}(\cos^2 2x - 3)^2 - \frac{1}{4}. \end{aligned}$$

When  $\cos^2 2x = 0$  (i.e.  $x = \pm \frac{\pi}{4}$ ),  $y$  has the maximum value  $y_{max} = \frac{5}{16} \times 9 - \frac{1}{4} = 2\frac{9}{16}$ .

When  $\cos^2 2x = 1$  (i.e.  $x = 0$ ),  $y$  has the minimum value  $y_{min} = \frac{5}{16} \times 4 - \frac{1}{4} = 1$ .

Solution2: We can check the derivative of  $y$ ,  $\frac{dy}{dx} = 10 \sin^9 x \cos x + 10(2 \sin x \cos^3 x - 2 \sin^3 x \cos x) - 10 \cos^9 x \sin x = 10 \sin x \cos x [\sin^8 x + 2(\cos^2 x - \sin^2 x) - \cos^8 x] = 5 \sin 2x [(\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x)(\sin^4 x - \cos^4 x) + 2 \cos 2x] = 5 \sin 2x [(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 2x)(\sin^2 x - \cos^2 x) + 2 \cos 2x] = 5 \sin 2x [(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 2x)(-\cos 2x) + 2 \cos 2x] = 5 \sin 2x \cos 2x (1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 2x)$ . Let  $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ , we obtain the stationary point:

(1)  $x_1 = 0$  when  $\sin 2x = 0$ . We find that the sign of  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  changes from negative to positive, then  $y_{min}(0) = 1$  is a local minimum.

(2)  $x_{2,3} = \pm \frac{\pi}{4}$  when  $\cos 2x = 0$ . We find that the sign of  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  changes from positive to negative, then  $y_{max}(\pm \frac{\pi}{4}) = 2\frac{9}{16}$  are local maxima.

(3) If  $1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 2x = 0$ , then  $\sin^2 2x = -2$ . The equation has no solution.

4.103 ★★★★★ If  $n$  is an arbitrary natural number, show that  $\sin \alpha + \sin 2\alpha + \sin 3\alpha + \cdots + \sin n\alpha = \frac{\sin \frac{n\alpha}{2} \sin \frac{(n+1)\alpha}{2}}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

Proof: prove the conclusion by the method of mathematical induction.

(1) When  $n = 1$ , the left side of the equation is  $\sin \alpha$ , the right side of the equation is  $\frac{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} \sin \alpha}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}}$  which equals  $\sin \alpha$ . The left side equals the right side. The equation holds.

(2) Assume the equation holds when  $n = k$ . Then  $\sin \alpha + \sin 2\alpha + \sin 3\alpha + \cdots + \sin k\alpha = \frac{\sin \frac{k\alpha}{2} \sin \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2}}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}}$ . We add  $\sin(k+1)\alpha$  to both sides, then  $\sin \alpha + \sin 2\alpha + \cdots + \sin k\alpha + \sin(k+1)\alpha = \frac{\sin \frac{k\alpha}{2} \sin \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2} + \sin \frac{\alpha}{2} \sin(k+1)\alpha}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2} [\sin \frac{k\alpha}{2} + 2 \sin \frac{\alpha}{2} \cos \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2}]}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2} [\sin \frac{k\alpha}{2} + \sin \frac{(k+2)\alpha}{2} - \sin \frac{k\alpha}{2}]}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}} = \frac{\sin \frac{(k+1)\alpha}{2} \sin \frac{[(k+1)+1]\alpha}{2}}{\sin \frac{\alpha}{2}}$ . Hence the equation holds when  $n = k + 1$ .

According to (1) and (2), the equation holds for all natural numbers  $n$ .

4.104 ★★★★★ If the maximum value of  $F(x) = |\cos^2 x + 2 \sin x \cos x - \sin^2 x + Ax + B|$ , denoted  $M$ , is considered with parameters  $A$  and  $B$  for  $0 \leq x \leq \frac{3}{2}\pi$ , find the values of  $A$  and  $B$  such that  $M$  has the minimum value.

Solution:  $F(x) = |\cos 2x + \sin 2x + Ax + B| = |\sqrt{2} \sin(2x + \frac{\pi}{4}) + Ax + B|$ .

Let  $f_1(x) = \sqrt{2} \sin(2x + \frac{\pi}{4})$ ,  $(0 \leq x \leq \frac{3}{2}\pi)$ . Then  $f_1(x)$  has the maximum value  $\sqrt{2}$  at

$x = \frac{\pi}{8}$  or  $x = \frac{9\pi}{8}$ .  $f_1(x)$  has the minimum value  $-\sqrt{2}$  at  $x = \frac{5\pi}{8}$ .

Let  $f_2(x) = Ax + B$  which is a monotone function. If  $A$  and  $B$  are not both zero, then the sign of  $f_2(x)$  can not change twice. Hence when  $x = \frac{\pi}{8}$ ,  $x = \frac{5\pi}{8}$ , or  $x = \frac{9\pi}{8}$ , there is at least point of  $f_2(x)$  which sign is same as the sign of  $f_1(x)$ , and their sum is large than  $\sqrt{2}$ . Otherwise, for a pair of  $A$  and  $B$  with at least one of them nonzero, the maximum value of  $F(x)$  is less than  $\sqrt{2}$ . Then

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} F(\frac{\pi}{8}) = |\sqrt{2} + \frac{\pi A}{8} + B| < \sqrt{2} \\ F(\frac{5\pi}{8}) = |-\sqrt{2} + \frac{5\pi A}{8} + B| < \sqrt{2} \\ F(\frac{9\pi}{8}) = |\sqrt{2} + \frac{9\pi A}{8} + B| < \sqrt{2} \end{array} \right.$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\pi A}{8} + B < 0, \quad ① \\ \frac{5\pi A}{8} + B > 0, \quad ② \\ \frac{9\pi A}{8} + B < 0, \quad ③ \end{array} \right.$$

According to ① and ②, we have  $A > 0$ . According to ② and ③, we have  $A < 0$ . It is a contradiction. Therefore,  $M$  has the minimum value  $\sqrt{2}$  occurring at  $A = B = 0$ .

# 5 SEQUENCES

5.1 Given  $a_{n+1} = \frac{2a_n}{a_n + 2}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ . (1) Show sequence  $\{\frac{1}{a_n}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence.  
 (2) Find the explicit formula for  $a_n$ .

Solution: (1)  $a_{n+1} = \frac{2a_n}{a_n + 2} \Rightarrow \frac{2}{a_{n+1}} = \frac{a_n + 2}{a_n} = 1 + \frac{2}{a_n} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} - \frac{1}{a_n} = \frac{1}{2}$ . Hence sequence  $\{\frac{1}{a_n}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence and its common difference is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .  
 (2) From the conclusion of (1), we have that  $\frac{1}{a_2} - \frac{1}{a_1} = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{a_3} - \frac{1}{a_2} = \frac{1}{2}$ , ...,  $\frac{1}{a_n} - \frac{1}{a_{n-1}} = \frac{1}{2}$ . We sum up these equations to obtain  $\frac{1}{a_n} - \frac{1}{a_1} = \frac{1}{2}(n - 1)$ . Since  $a_1 = 2$ , then  $a_n = \frac{2}{n}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.2 Let  $a_n$  be the number of the integer roots of the equation  $f(x) = x^2 + x + \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $x \in [n, n+1]$ , where  $n \in N^*$ . (1) Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ . (2) Let  $b_n = \frac{1}{a_n a_{n+1}}$ , compute the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$  which is denoted by  $S$ .

**Empowering People. Improving Business.**

BI Norwegian Business School is one of Europe's largest business schools welcoming more than 20,000 students. Our programmes provide a stimulating and multi-cultural learning environment with an international outlook ultimately providing students with professional skills to meet the increasing needs of businesses.

BI offers four different two-year, full-time Master of Science (MSc) programmes that are taught entirely in English and have been designed to provide professional skills to meet the increasing need of businesses. The MSc programmes provide a stimulating and multi-cultural learning environment to give you the best platform to launch into your career.

- MSc in Business
- MSc in Financial Economics
- MSc in Strategic Marketing Management
- MSc in Leadership and Organisational Psychology

[www.bi.edu/master](http://www.bi.edu/master)

**BI NORWEGIAN BUSINESS SCHOOL**

EFMD **EQUIS** ACCREDITED



Solution: (1) Since  $f(x)$  is increasing on  $[n, n+1]$ , then the range is  $[f(n), f(n+1)]$ . Hence  $a_n = f(n+1) - f(n) = [(n+1)^2 + (n+1) + \frac{1}{2}] - (n^2 + n + \frac{1}{2}) = 2n+2$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).  
(2)  $b_n = \frac{1}{a_n a_{n+1}} = \frac{1}{(2n+2)[2(n+1)+2]} = \frac{1}{4} \frac{1}{(n+1)(n+2)} = \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n+2} \right)$ .  
Hence,  $S = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} \right) + \cdots + \left( \frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n+2} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{n+2} \right) = \frac{n}{8n+16}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.3 Let sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfy  $a_1 = a_2 = 1$  and  $a_n + a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} = n^2$  for  $n \geq 3$ , compute  $a_{1996}$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $a_1 = a_2 = 1$  and  $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 = 9$ . Hence  $a_3 = 7$ . Since  $a_n + a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} = n^2$  and  $a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + a_{n-3} = (n-1)^2$ , adding them to obtain  $a_n - a_{n-3} = 2n-1$ , which implies that  $a_{n-3} - a_{n-6} = 2(n-3)-1, \dots$ . Thus  $a_{1996} - a_{1993} = 2 \times 1996 - 1, a_{1993} - a_{1990} = 2 \times 1993 - 1, \dots, a_4 - a_1 = 2 \times 4 - 1$ . Adding the above equations to obtain  $a_{1996} - a_1 = \frac{2(1996+4) \times 665}{2} - 665 = 2000 \times 665 - 665 = 1329335$ . Therefore,  $a_{1996} = 1329335 + 1 = 1329336$ .

5.4 If sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfies  $a_1 = 3$ , and  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). Find the general term  $a_n$  of the sequence.

Solution: Adding 1 to both sides of the equation  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1$  to obtain  $a_{n+1} + 1 = 2(a_n + 1)$ . We apply the recurrent relation to obtain  $a_n + 1 = 2(a_{n-1} + 1), a_{n-1} + 1 = 2(a_{n-2} + 1), \dots, a_2 + 1 = 2(a_1 + 1)$ . Multiplying the above equations and applying  $a_1 = 3$  to generate  $a_n = 2^{n+1} - 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.5 Let the function  $f(x) = \log_2 x - \log_x 2$  ( $0 < x < 1$ ), and the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfies  $f(2^{a_n}) = 2n$ . Find  $a_n$ .

Solution: Since  $f(x) = \log_2 x - \log_x 2 = \log_2 x - \frac{1}{\log_2 x}$ , then  $f(2^{a_n}) = \log_2 2^{a_n} - \frac{1}{\log_2 2^{a_n}} = a_n - \frac{1}{a_n} = 2n$ . It leads to  $a_n^2 - 2na_n - 1 = 0$ . Hence  $a_n = n \pm \sqrt{n^2 + 1}$ . Since  $0 < x < 1$ , then  $0 < 2^{a_n} < 1$  which means  $a_n < 0$ . Therefore  $a_n = n - \sqrt{n^2 + 1}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.6 Given the general term of sequence  $\{a_n\}$  as  $a_n = 2n^2 - n$ , do there exist nonzero constants  $p, q$  such that the sequence  $\left\{ \frac{a_n}{pn+q} \right\}$  is an arithmetic sequence?

Solution: Assume that there exist nonzero constants  $p, q$  such that the sequence  $\left\{ \frac{a_n}{pn+q} \right\}$  is an arithmetic sequence. Then  $\frac{a_1}{p+q}, \frac{a_2}{2p+q}, \frac{a_3}{3p+q}$  form an arithmetic sequence. From  $a_1 = 1, a_2 = 6, a_3 = 15$ , we have  $(\frac{6}{2p+q}) \times 2 = \frac{1}{p+q} + \frac{15}{3p+q}$ .

Then  $pq + 2q^2 = 0$ . Since  $q \neq 0$ , then  $p = -2q$ , then  $\frac{a_n}{pn+q} = \frac{2n^2-n}{-2qn+q} = -\frac{n}{q}$  when  $p = -2q$ . We show that  $\{\frac{a_n}{pn+q}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence and the common difference is  $-\frac{1}{q}$ .

5.7 Given the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_{n+1} = a_n + 3n$  ( $n \in N^*$ ), find  $a_{10}$ .

Solution:  $a_{n+1} = a_n + 3n \Rightarrow a_{n+1} - a_n = 3n$ . Then  $a_n - a_{n-1} = 3(n-1)$ ,  $a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = 3(n-2)$ ,  $a_{n-2} - a_{n-3} = 3(n-3)$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $a_3 - a_2 = 3 \times 2$ ,  $a_2 - a_1 = 3 \times 1$ . Adding the above equations to obtain  $a_n - a_1 = 3[1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (n-1)] = 3 \times \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ . Hence  $a_n = a_1 + \frac{3n(n-1)}{2} = \frac{3}{2}n^2 - \frac{3}{2}n + 1$ . Therefore,  $a_{10} = 150 - 15 + 1 = 136$ .

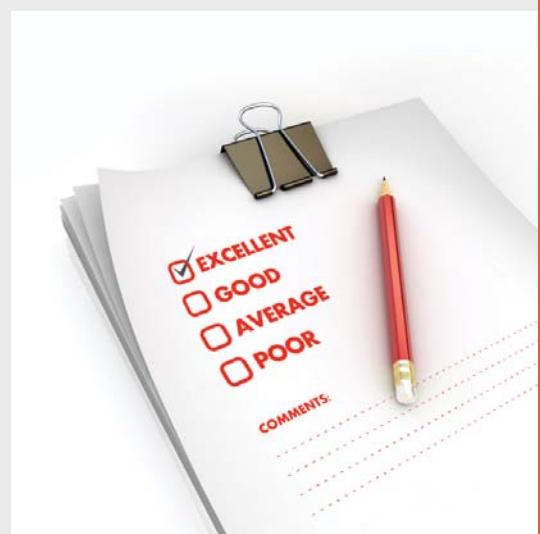
5.8 Given two arithmetic sequences  $\{a_m\} : 1, 5, 9, \dots$  and  $\{b_n\} : 3, 10, 17, \dots$ . Consider their first 200th terms and find out the number of the terms with same values.

Solution: Since  $a_m = 4m - 3$ , ( $m = 1, 2, \dots$ ),  $b_n = 7n + 3$ , ( $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ),  $a_m < b_n$ , then  $n = \frac{4m-6}{7}$  ( $m, n \in N^*$ ) when  $4m - 3 = 7n + 3$ . Thus  $m_1 = 5$ ,  $m_2 = 12, \dots$ . Assume  $m_k = 7k - 2 \leq 200$ , ( $k \in N^*$ ). Hence  $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, 28$ . Hence, there are 28 terms with same values.

## Need help with your dissertation?

Get in-depth feedback & advice from experts in your topic area. Find out what you can do to improve the quality of your dissertation!

**Get Help Now**



Go to [www.helpmyassignment.co.uk](http://www.helpmyassignment.co.uk) for more info



**Helpmyassignment**

5.9 Assume the four roots of the equation  $x^2 - x + a = 0$  and the equation  $x^2 - x + b = 0$  form an arithmetic sequence with the first term  $\frac{1}{4}$ . If  $a < b$ , determine the values of  $a, b$ .

Solution: Let the four roots of the two equations are  $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4} + d, \frac{1}{4} + 2d, \frac{1}{4} + 3d$ . Applying the relation between roots and coefficients, we have  $\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} + 3d = \frac{1}{4} + d + \frac{1}{4} + 2d = 1$ .

Then  $d = \frac{1}{6}$ . Thus the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - x + a = 0$  are  $\frac{1}{4}$  and  $\frac{3}{4}$ . Hence  $a = \frac{3}{16}$ . And the two roots of  $x^2 - x + b = 0$  are  $\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{5}{12}$  and  $\frac{1}{4} + 2 \times \frac{1}{6} = \frac{7}{12}$ .

Hence,  $b = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{7}{12} = \frac{35}{144}$ .

5.10 ★ Let  $f(x) = (\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{2})^2$  ( $x \geq 0$ ) and for  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $n \geq 2$ ,  $a_n > 0$ ,  $S_n = f(S_{n-1})$ . Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution: According to  $f(x) = (\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{2})^2$  and  $S_n = f(S_{n-1})$ , we have  $S_n = (\sqrt{S_{n-1}} + \sqrt{2})^2$ . It means  $\sqrt{S_n} - \sqrt{S_{n-1}} = \sqrt{2}$ . Thus  $\sqrt{S_n} - \sqrt{S_{n-1}} = \sqrt{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{S_{n-1}} - \sqrt{S_{n-2}} = \sqrt{2}, \dots, \sqrt{S_3} - \sqrt{S_2} = \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{S_2} - \sqrt{S_1} = \sqrt{2}$ . Adding the above equations to obtain  $\sqrt{S_n} - \sqrt{S_1} = (n-1)\sqrt{2}$ . Since  $S_1 = a_1 = 2$ , then  $\sqrt{S_n} = \sqrt{2} + (n-1)\sqrt{2} = n\sqrt{2}$ . Hence  $S_n = 2n^2$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).  $a_n = S_n - S_{n-1} = 2n^2 - 2(n-1)^2 = 4n - 2$  when  $n \geq 2$ . And  $a_1 = 2$  when  $n = 1$ . Therefore,  $a_n = 4n - 2$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.11 ★ Let each term of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is nonzero, show that  $\frac{1}{a_1 a_2} + \frac{1}{a_2 a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n a_{n+1}} = \frac{n}{a_1 a_{n+1}}$ .

Solution: Let the common difference of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $d$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{a_n} - \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} &= \frac{a_{n+1} - a_n}{a_n a_{n+1}} = \frac{d}{a_n a_{n+1}} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{a_n a_{n+1}} = \frac{1}{d} \left( \frac{1}{a_n} - \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} \right). \text{ Thus } \frac{1}{a_1 a_2} + \frac{1}{a_2 a_3} + \dots + \\ \frac{1}{a_n a_{n+1}} &= \frac{1}{d} \left( \frac{1}{a_1} - \frac{1}{a_2} + \frac{1}{a_2} - \frac{1}{a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n} - \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} \right) = \frac{1}{d} \left( \frac{1}{a_1} - \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} \right) = \frac{1}{d} \left( \frac{a_{n+1} - a_1}{a_1 a_{n+1}} \right) = \\ \frac{1}{d} \frac{nd}{a_1 a_{n+1}} &= \frac{n}{a_1 a_{n+1}}. \end{aligned}$$

5.12 ★ Compute the sum of the sequence.

(1) Given  $\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{3}{4}, 4\frac{7}{8}, 6\frac{15}{16}, \dots$ , compute the  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$ .

(2)  $S = a^n + a^{n-1}b + a^{n-2}b^2 + \dots + a^{n-r}b^r + \dots + ab^{n-1} + b^n$ , where  $a \neq 0, b \neq 0, n \in N^*$ , evaluate  $S$ .

(3) Given  $1, 1+2, 1+2+2^2, \dots, 1+2+2^2+\dots+2^{n-1}$ , compute the  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$  of the sequence.

Solution: (1) Let  $M = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{7}{8} + \frac{15}{16} + \cdots + \frac{2^n - 1}{2^n} = (1 - \frac{1}{2}) + (1 - \frac{1}{4}) + (1 - \frac{1}{8}) + \cdots + (1 - \frac{1}{2^n}) = n - (\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n}) = n - \frac{\frac{1}{2}[1 - (\frac{1}{2})^n]}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = n - (1 - \frac{1}{2^n}) = \frac{1}{2^n} + n - 1 \quad (n \in N^*)$ .

Let  $N = 2 + 4 + 6 + \cdots + 2(n-1) = (n-1)2 + \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2}2 = n^2 - n \quad (n \in N^*)$ .

Thus  $S_n = M + N = \frac{1}{2^n} + n - 1 + n^2 - n = \frac{1}{2^n} + n^2 - 1 \quad (n \in N^*)$ .

(2) Multiplying the equation by  $a$  or by  $b$  to obtain

$$\begin{cases} aS = a^{n+1} + a^n b + a^{n-1} b^2 + \cdots + a^{n-r+1} b^r + \cdots + a^2 b^{n-1} + ab^n, \\ bS = a^n b + a^{n-1} b^2 + a^{n-2} b^3 + \cdots + a^{n-r} b^{r+1} + \cdots + ab^n + b^{n+1}. \end{cases}$$

The first equation minus the second equation, we have  $(a - b)S = a^{n+1} - b^{n+1}$ . Hence,

$$S = \begin{cases} \frac{a^{n+1} - b^{n+1}}{a - b}, & a \neq b \\ (n+1)a^n, & a = b \end{cases}$$

(3) Since  $a_n = (1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{n-1})(2 - 1) = 2^n - 1$ , then  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n (2^k - 1) = \sum_{k=1}^n 2^k - \sum_{k=1}^n 1 = \frac{2(1 - 2^n)}{1 - 2} - n = 2^{n+1} - n - 2 \quad (n \in N^*)$ .

5.13 ★★ Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ , and sequence  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $b_1 = 0$ , with the relationships  $a_n = \frac{1}{3}(2a_{n-1} + b_{n-1})$  and  $b_n = \frac{1}{3}(a_{n-1} + 2b_{n-1})$  for  $n \geq 2$ . Find  $a_n$ ,  $b_n$ .

Solution:  $a_n + b_n = \frac{1}{3}(2a_{n-1} + b_{n-1}) + \frac{1}{3}(a_{n-1} + 2b_{n-1}) = a_{n-1} + b_{n-1} = a_{n-2} + b_{n-2} = \cdots = a_1 + b_1 = 1 \quad \textcircled{1}$ .

And  $a_n - b_n = \frac{1}{3}(2a_{n-1} + b_{n-1}) - \frac{1}{3}(a_{n-1} + 2b_{n-1}) = \frac{1}{3}(a_{n-1} - b_{n-1}) = (\frac{1}{3})^2(a_{n-2} + b_{n-2}) = \cdots = (\frac{1}{3})^{n-1}(a_1 - b_1) = (\frac{1}{3})^{n-1} \quad \textcircled{2}$ .

According to  $\textcircled{1}$  and  $\textcircled{2}$ , we have  $a_n = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \frac{1}{3^{n-1}})$ ,  $b_n = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{1}{3^{n-1}})$ .

5.14 If the  $n$ th partial sum of the arithmetic sequence is 30 and the  $2n$ th partial sum is 100, compute the  $3n$ th partial sum.

Solution 1: Let the first term be  $a_1$  and the common difference be  $d$ . From the given conditions, we have

$$\begin{cases} na_1 + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}d = 30, \\ 2na_1 + \frac{2n(2n-1)}{2}d = 100. \end{cases}$$

Solving this equation system to obtain  $d = \frac{40}{n^2}$ ,  $a_1 = \frac{10}{n} + \frac{20}{n^2}$ . Thus  $S_{3n} = 3na_1 + \frac{3n(3n-1)}{2}d = 3n\frac{10(n+2)}{n^2} + \frac{3n(3n-1)}{2}\frac{40}{n^2} = 210$ .

**Solution 2:** According to the properties of an arithmetic sequence,  $S_n$ ,  $S_{2n} - S_n$ ,  $S_{3n} - S_{2n}$  form an arithmetic sequence. Hence  $2(S_{2n} - S_n) = S_n + (S_{3n} - S_{2n})$ . Therefore  $S_{3n} = 3(S_{2n} - S_n) = 3(100 - 30) = 210$ .

**Solution 3:** The formula of the  $n$ th partial sum of an arithmetic sequence implies that  $S_n$  is a quadratic function. We have

$$\begin{cases} An^2 + Bn = 30, \\ A(2n)^2 + B2n = 100, \end{cases}$$

where  $A, B$  are constants. Solving the equation system to obtain  $A = \frac{20}{n^2}$ ,  $B = \frac{10}{n}$ .

Therefore,  $S_{3n} = A(3n)^2 + B3n = \frac{20}{n^2}(3n)^2 + \frac{10}{n}3n = 210$ .

**5.15 ★★** The vertex coordinates of the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  is  $(\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{4})$ , and  $f(3) = 2$ . For an arbitrary real number  $x$ , the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  satisfy  $f(x)g(x) + a_nx + b_n = x^{n+1}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ), where  $g(x)$  is defined on the set of real numbers  $\mathbb{R}$ . Find the general terms of the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ .

**Brain power**

By 2020, wind could provide one-tenth of our planet's electricity needs. Already today, SKF's innovative know-how is crucial to running a large proportion of the world's wind turbines.

Up to 25 % of the generating costs relate to maintenance. These can be reduced dramatically thanks to our systems for on-line condition monitoring and automatic lubrication. We help make it more economical to create cleaner, cheaper energy out of thin air.

By sharing our experience, expertise, and creativity, industries can boost performance beyond expectations. Therefore we need the best employees who can meet this challenge!

The Power of Knowledge Engineering

Plug into The Power of Knowledge Engineering.  
Visit us at [www.skf.com/knowledge](http://www.skf.com/knowledge)

**SKF**

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $f(x) = a(x - \frac{3}{2})^2 - \frac{1}{4}$  ( $a \neq 0$ ). Since  $f(3) = 2$ , then  $a(3 - \frac{3}{2})^2 - \frac{1}{4} = 2$ . Solving the equation to obtain  $a = 1$ . Hence

$f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 2$ ,  $x \in R$ ,  $f(1) = 0$ ,  $f(2) = 0$ .

Applying  $f(1)g(1) + a_n + b_n = 1$  to obtain  $a_n + b_n = 1$  ①. On the other hand,  $f(2)g(2) + 2a_n + b_n = 2^{n+1}$ , then  $2a_n + b_n = 2^{n+1}$  ②. According to ① and ②, we have  $a_n = 2^{n+1} - 1$ ,  $b_n = 2 - 2^{n+1}$ ,  $n \in N^*$ .

5.16 ★★ Given the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$ , let  $b_n = (\frac{1}{2})^{a_n}$ , and  $b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = \frac{21}{8}$ ,  $b_1 b_2 b_3 = \frac{1}{8}$ . Find the general term of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $b_1 b_2 b_3 = (\frac{1}{2})^{a_1} (\frac{1}{2})^{a_2} (\frac{1}{2})^{a_3} = (\frac{1}{2})^{a_1 + a_2 + a_3} = \frac{1}{8} = (\frac{1}{2})^3$ . Hence  $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 = 3$ . Since  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence, we assume  $a_1 = a_2 - d$  and  $a_3 = a_2 + d$ , where  $d$  is the common difference. Thus  $a_2 - d + a_2 + a_2 + d = 3$ , then  $a_2 = 1$ .  $b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = (\frac{1}{2})^{a_1} + (\frac{1}{2})^{a_2} + (\frac{1}{2})^{a_3} = (\frac{1}{2})^{1-d} + \frac{1}{2} + (\frac{1}{2})^{1+d} = \frac{21}{8}$ . Solving the equation, we have  $2^d + 2^{-d} = \frac{17}{4}$ . That means  $d = 2$  or  $d = -2$ .

When  $d = 2$ ,  $a_1 = 1 - d = -1$ ,  $a_n = -1 + 2(n - 1) = 2n - 3$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

When  $d = -2$ ,  $a_1 = 1 - d = 3$ ,  $a_n = 3 - 2(n - 1) = -2n + 5$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.17 ★ Given  $\{a_n\}$  as a sequence with positive terms,  $S_n$  denotes the  $n$ th partial sum, and  $2\sqrt{S_n} = a_n + 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). Find the general term of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution: Since  $2\sqrt{S_n} = a_n + 1$ , then  $2\sqrt{a_1} = a_1 + 1$  for  $n = 1$ . It means that  $(\sqrt{a_1} - 1)^2 = 0$ . Thus  $a_1 = 1$ . We have  $4S_n = (a_n + 1)^2$ ,  $4S_{n-1} = (a_{n-1} + 1)^2$  for  $n \geq 2$ . Subtracting the second equation from the first equation to obtain  $4a_n = (a_n + 1)^2 - (a_{n-1} + 1)^2 \Rightarrow (a_n - 1)^2 - (a_{n-1} + 1)^2 = 0 \Rightarrow (a_n + a_{n-1})(a_n - a_{n-1} - 2) = 0$ . Since  $a_n + a_{n-1} > 0$ , then  $a_n - a_{n-1} - 2 = 0$  which means  $a_n - a_{n-1} = 2$ . Hence  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence with the first term 1 and the common difference 2,  $a_n = 1 + (n - 1) \times 2 = 2n - 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.18 ★ Let the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{a_n\}$  be  $S_n$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_{n+1} = \frac{n+2}{n} S_n$  ( $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ ). Show that (1) the sequence  $\{\frac{S_n}{n}\}$  is a geometric sequence; (2)  $S_{n+1} = 4a_n$ .

Proof: (1) Since  $a_{n+1} = \frac{n+2}{n} S_n$  and  $a_{n+1} = S_{n+1} - S_n$  ( $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ ), then  $(n+2)S_n = n(S_{n+1} - S_n) \Rightarrow nS_{n+1} = 2(n+1)S_n \Rightarrow \frac{S_{n+1}}{n+1} = 2\frac{S_n}{n}$ . Therefore the sequence  $\{\frac{S_n}{n}\}$  is a geometric sequence.

(2) We apply (1) to obtain  $\frac{S_{n+1}}{n+1} = 4 \frac{S_{n-1}}{n-1}$ , ( $n \geq 2$ ). Hence  $S_{n+1} = 4(n+1) \frac{S_{n-1}}{n-1} = 4a_n$ , ( $n \geq 2$ ). Since  $a_2 = 3S_1 = 3$ , then  $S_2 = a_1 + a_2 = 4 = 4a_1$ . Therefore  $S_{n+1} = 4a_n$  holds for an arbitrary positive integer  $n \geq 1$ .

**5.19 ★** Let the common difference of arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and the common ratio of geometric sequence  $\{b_n\}$  be both  $d$  (where  $d \neq 1$  and  $d \neq 0$ ),  $a_1 = b_1$ ,  $a_4 = b_4$ ,  $a_{10} = b_{10}$ . (1) Find the values of  $a_1$  and  $d$ . (2) Is  $b_{16}$  a term of  $\{a_n\}$ ? If it is a term of  $\{a_n\}$ , which term is it? If it is not a term of  $\{a_n\}$ , explain the reason.

Solution: (1) Since  $a_n = a_1 + (n-1)d$ ,  $b_n = b_1 d^{n-1} = a_1 d^{n-1}$ , and  $a_4 = b_4$ ,  $a_{10} = b_{10}$ , we have

$$\begin{cases} a_1 + 3d = a_1 d^3 \\ a_1 + 9d = a_1 d^9 \end{cases}$$

⇒

$$\begin{cases} 3d = a_1(d^3 - 1) \\ 9d = a_1(d^9 - 1) \end{cases}$$

Dividing the first equation by the second equation leads to  $d^6 + d^3 - 2 = 0$  which means that  $d^3 = 1$  or  $d^3 = -2$ . Since  $d \neq 1$ , then  $d^3 = -2$ . Hence  $d = -\sqrt[3]{2}$ . Substituting it into the equation, we have  $a_1 = \sqrt[3]{2}$ . Therefore  $a_1 = \sqrt[3]{2}$ ,  $d = -\sqrt[3]{2}$ .

(2) We apply (1) to obtain that the general terms of  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  are  $a_n = (2-n)\sqrt[3]{2}$ ,  $b_n = \sqrt[3]{2}(-\sqrt[3]{2})^{n-1} = -(-\sqrt[3]{2})^n$ . Hence  $b_{16} = -32\sqrt[3]{2}$ . Since  $(2-n)\sqrt[3]{2} = -32\sqrt[3]{2}$ , then  $n = 34$ . Therefore,  $b_{16}$  is the 34th term of  $\{a_n\}$ .

**5.20 ★** Given the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(1) Show the sequence  $\{a_n + 1\}$  is a geometric sequence. (2) Find the general term  $a_n$  and the  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$ .

(1) Proof: We apply  $a_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)$  to obtain  $S_n = a_{n+1} - (n+1)$  and  $S_{n-1} = a_n - n$ . Then  $a_n = S_n - S_{n-1} = [a_{n+1} - (n+1)] - (a_n - n)$ . Thus  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1 \Leftrightarrow a_{n+1} + 1 = 2(a_n + 1) \Leftrightarrow \frac{a_{n+1} + 1}{a_n + 1} = 2$ . Therefore  $\{a_n + 1\}$  is a geometric sequence with common ratio 2.

(2) Solution: Since  $a_1 + 1 = 2$ , then  $a_n + 1 = 2 \cdot 2^{n-1} = 2^n$  which is  $a_n = 2^n - 1$ .  $S_n = (2-1) + (2^2-1) + \cdots + (2^n-1) = (2+2^2+\cdots+2^n) - n = \frac{2(1-2^n)}{1-2} - n = 2^{n+1} - n - 2$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.21 ★★ Let  $P_1(x_1, y_1), P_2(x_2, y_2), \dots, P_n(x_n, y_n)$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) be the points on quadratic curve  $C$ , and  $a_1 = |OP_1|^2, a_2 = |OP_2|^2, \dots, a_n = |OP_n|^2$  form an arithmetic sequence with common difference  $d$  ( $d \neq 0$ ), and  $S_n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n$ .

(1) If the curve  $C$  is  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  ( $a = 10, b = 5$ ), the point  $P_1(10, 0)$ , and  $S_3 = 255$ . Determine the point  $P_3$ .

(2) If the curve  $C$  is  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  ( $a > b > 0$ ), the point  $P_1(a, 0)$ , Find the minimum value of  $S_n$  as  $d$  varies.

Solution: (1) Applying the point  $P_1(10, 0)$ , we have  $a_1 = |OP_1|^2 = 10^2 = 100$ ,  $S_3 = a_1 + \frac{a_1 + a_3}{2} + a_3 = \frac{3}{2}(a_1 + a_3) = 255$ . Then  $a_3 = |OP_3|^2 = 70$ . Thus  $x_3^2 + y_3^2 = 70$  ①,  $\frac{x_3^2}{100} + \frac{y_3^2}{25} = 1$  ②. Applying ① and ② to obtain  $x_3 = \pm 2\sqrt{15}$ ,  $y_3 = \pm\sqrt{10}$ . Therefore the coordinates of the point  $P_3$  are  $(2\sqrt{15}, \sqrt{10}), (2\sqrt{15}, -\sqrt{10}), (-2\sqrt{15}, \sqrt{10}), (-2\sqrt{15}, -\sqrt{10})$ .

(2) Since  $a_1 = |OP_1|^2 = a^2$ , then  $d < 0$  and  $a_n = |OP_n|^2 = a^2 + (n-1)d \geq b^2$ . That means  $\frac{b^2 - a^2}{n-1} \leq d < 0$ . Since  $n \geq 3$ , then  $S_n = na^2 + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}d$  is increasing in  $[\frac{b^2 - a^2}{n-1}, 0]$ . Therefore  $(S_n)_{min} = na^2 + \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \frac{b^2 - a^2}{n-1} = \frac{n(a^2 + b^2)}{2}$ .

5.22 Let an arithmetic sequence has twelve terms where  $S_{even} : S_{odd} = 32 : 27$  and the sum of sequence is 354. Find the common difference  $d$ .

Solution1: From the given condition, we have  $S_{even} - S_{odd} = \frac{1}{2}nd = 6d$ . Since  $S_{even} : S_{odd} = 32 : 27$ , let  $S_{even} = 32t, S_{odd} = 27t$ , then  $32t + 27t = 354$ . Thus  $t = 6$ . Hence  $S_{even} = 32 \times 6 = 192, S_{odd} = 27 \times 6 = 162$ . Therefore  $S_{even} - S_{odd} = 30 = 6d$ , then  $d = 5$ .

Solution2:  $\frac{S_{even}}{S_{odd}} = \frac{32}{27} \Rightarrow \frac{S_{even}}{S_{even} + S_{odd}} = \frac{32}{32 + 27} \Rightarrow S_{even} = \frac{32}{59} \times 354 = 192, S_{odd} = 354 - 192 = 162$ . Since  $S_{even} - S_{odd} = \frac{1}{2}nd = 6d$ , then  $6d = 192 - 162 = 30$ . Therefore  $d = 5$ .

5.23 ★ Let  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $na_{n+1} = (n+1)a_n + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ ). Compute the the  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$ .

Solution:  $na_{n+1} = (n+1)a_n + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ )  $\Rightarrow n(a_{n+1} + 1) = (n+1)(a_n + 1)$  ( $n \geq 2$ ).

Let  $b_n = a_n + 1$ , then  $b_{n+1} = \frac{n+1}{n}b_n$ . Thus  $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 2 \times 2, b_3 = 3 \times 2, b_4 = 4 \times 2, \dots, b_n = n \times 2$ . Therefore  $S_n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n = b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n - n = 2(1+2+\dots+n) - n = n^2$  ( $n \geq 2$ ).

5.24 ★★ Given the quadratic function  $f(x) = n(n+1)x^2 - (2n+1)x + 1$ , and  $n$  is chosen as all natural numbers, compute the sum of lengths of all line segments on the x-axis intercepted by the graph.

Solution:  $n(n+1)x^2 - (2n+1)x + 1 = 0$  when  $f(x) = 0$ . Thus  $(nx-1)[(n+1)x-1] = 0$ . Then  $x_1 = \frac{1}{n}$ ,  $x_2 = \frac{1}{n+1}$ . Let the parabola intersects x-axis at the point  $A_n$  and the point  $B_n$ , then the sum of lengths of the intercepted line segments  $S_n = |A_1B_1| + |A_2B_2| + \dots + |A_nB_n| = (1 - \frac{1}{2}) + (\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}) + \dots + (\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1}) = 1 - \frac{1}{n+1}$ .  
 $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (1 - \frac{1}{n+1}) = 1$ .

5.25 ★★ (1) Given an arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  that satisfies  $a_1 = -60$ ,  $a_{17} = -12$ . Let  $b_n = |a_n|$ . Evaluate the 30th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$ .

(2) If the general term of the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $a_n = 10 - 3n$ , compute  $|a_1| + |a_2| + \dots + |a_n|$ .

Solution: (1) Let the common difference of the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $d$ . Since  $a_1 = -60$ ,  $a_{17} = -12$ , then  $-60 + 16d = -12$ . Thus  $d = 3$ . Hence  $a_n = -60 + (n-1)3$ . It means  $a_n = 3n - 63$ .  $3n - 63 = 0$  if  $a_n = 0$ . Then  $n = 21$ .  $a_{21} = 0$ ,  $a_{22} = 3$ .

Method 1:  $S_{21} = \frac{-60+0}{2} \times 20 = -600$ .  $S_{30} - S_{21} = (30-21+1) \times 3 + \frac{(30-21+1)(30-21)}{2} \times 3 = 165$ . Therefore the 30th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$  is  $S_{30} = |S_{21}| + |S_{30} - S_{21}| = 765$ .

Method 2: Since  $a_n = 3n - 63$ ,  $S_{30} = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{30} - 2(a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{20}) = \frac{-60+27}{2} \times 30 - 2 \frac{-60-3}{2} \times 20 = 765$ .

(2) Since  $a_n = 10 - 3n$ , then  $a_1 > 0, a_2 > 0, a_3 > 0, a_4, a_5, \dots, a_n < 0$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned} |a_1| + |a_2| + \dots + |a_n| &= \begin{cases} a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n, & (n \leq 3) \\ a_1 + a_2 + a_3 - a_4 - \dots - a_n, & (n \geq 4) \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \frac{a_1 + a_n}{2}n, & (n \leq 3) \\ 2(a_1 + a_2 + a_3) - (a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n), & (n \geq 4) \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \frac{-3n^2 + 17n}{2}, & (n \leq 3) \\ 24 - \frac{-3n^2 + 17n}{2}, & (n \geq 4) \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \frac{-3n^2 + 17n}{2}, & (n \leq 3) \\ \frac{3n^2 - 17n + 48}{2}, & (n \geq 4) \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

5.26 ★ Given  $f(x)$  is a linear function, and  $f(8) = 15$ .  $f(2), f(5), f(4)$  form a geometric sequence. Denote  $S_n = f(1) + f(2) + \cdots + f(n)$ . Compute  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{S_n}{n^2}\right)$ .

Solution: Let  $f(x) = kx + b$ . From the given condition, we have

$$\begin{cases} 8k + b = 15 \\ (5k + b)^2 = (2k + b)(4k + b) \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} k = 4 \\ b = -17 \end{cases}$$

Then  $f(x) = 4x - 17$ . Consist the sequence  $-13, -9, -5, \dots, (4n - 17)$  when  $x = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .  $S_n = \frac{(-13 + 4n - 17)n}{2} = 2n^2 - 15n$ .  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{S_n}{n^2}\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2n^2 - 15n}{n^2} = 2 - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{15}{n} = 2$ .

5.27 ★ Let all terms of the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  are positive. Show  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{a_2} + \sqrt{a_3}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{a_{n-1}} + \sqrt{a_n}} = \frac{n-1}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_n}}$ .

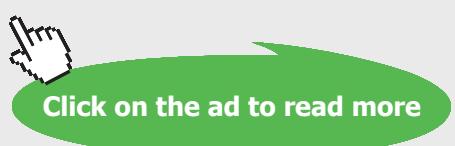
## TURN TO THE EXPERTS FOR SUBSCRIPTION CONSULTANCY

Subscrybe is one of the leading companies in Europe when it comes to innovation and business development within subscription businesses.

We innovate new subscription business models or improve existing ones. We do business reviews of existing subscription businesses and we develop acquisition and retention strategies.

Learn more at [linkedin.com/company/subscrybe/](https://www.linkedin.com/company/subscrybe/) or contact Managing Director Morten Suhr Hansen at [mha@subscrybe.dk](mailto:mha@subscrybe.dk)

**SUBSCR✓BE** - to the future



Proof: Let  $M = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{a_2} + \sqrt{a_3}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{a_{n-1}} + \sqrt{a_n}}$ , the common difference is  $d$ . We have  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a_{n-1}} + \sqrt{a_n}} = \frac{\sqrt{a_{n-1}} - \sqrt{a_n}}{a_{n-1} - a_n} = -\frac{1}{d}(\sqrt{a_{n-1}} - \sqrt{a_n}) \Rightarrow M = -\frac{1}{d}(\sqrt{a_1} - \sqrt{a_2} + \sqrt{a_2} - \sqrt{a_3} + \cdots + \sqrt{a_{n-1}} - \sqrt{a_n}) = -\frac{1}{d}(\sqrt{a_1} - \sqrt{a_n}) = -\frac{1}{d} \frac{a_1 - a_n}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_n}} = -\frac{1}{d} \frac{a_1 - [a_1 + (n-1)d]}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_n}} = -\frac{1}{d} \frac{-(n-1)d}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_n}} = \frac{n-1}{\sqrt{a_1} + \sqrt{a_n}}.$

5.28 ★ Solve the  $n$ th partial sum of the sequence  $1, 3a, 5a^2, 7a^3, \dots, (2n-1)a^{n-1}$ .

Solution: When  $a = 1$ , the sequence is  $1, 3, 5, 7, \dots, (2n-1)$ .  $S_n = \frac{[1 + (2n-1)]n}{2} = n^2$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

When  $a \neq 1$ ,  $S_n = 1 + 3a + 5a^2 + 7a^3 + \cdots + (2n-1)a^{n-1}$  ①. Multiplying the equation ① by  $a$  to obtain  $aS_n = a + 3a^2 + 5a^3 + 7a^4 + \cdots + (2n-1)a^n$  ②. Using ① - ②, we have  $(1-a)S_n = 1 + 2a + 2a^2 + 2a^3 + \cdots + 2a^{n-1} - (2n-1)a^n = 1 - (2n-1)a^n + 2(a + a^2 + a^3 + \cdots + a^{n-1}) = 1 - (2n-1)a^n + 2 \frac{a(1-a^{n-1})}{1-a} = 1 - (2n-1)a^n + \frac{2(a-a^n)}{1-a}$ . While  $1-a \neq 0$ , then  $S_n = \frac{1 - (2n-1)a^n}{1-a} + \frac{2(a-a^n)}{(1-a)^2}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.29 ★★ Let the  $n$ th partial sum of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $S_n = 2n^2$ ,  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence, and  $a_1 = b_1$ ,  $b_2(a_2 - a_1) = b_1$ . (1) Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ . (2) Let  $c_n = \frac{a_n}{b_n}$ , evaluate the  $n$ th partial sum  $T_n$  of the sequence  $\{c_n\}$ .

Solution: (1)  $S_1 = a_1 = 2$  when  $n = 1$ .  $a_n = S_n - S_{n-1} = 2n^2 - 2(n-1)^2 = 4n - 2$  when  $n \geq 2$ .  $4n - 2 = 2 = a_1$  when  $n = 1$ . Hence the general term of  $\{a_n\}$  is  $a_n = 4n - 2 = 2 + 4(n-1)$ . Therefore  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence with the first term 2 and the common difference 4.

Let common ratio of  $\{b_n\}$  is  $q$ . Since  $b_2(a_2 - a_1) = b_1$  and  $b_2 = b_1q$ , then  $b_1qd = b_1$ . Thus  $q = \frac{1}{d} = \frac{1}{4}$ . Otherwise,  $b_1 = a_1$ , then  $b_n = b_1q^{n-1} = \frac{2}{4^{n-1}}$ .

(2)  $c_n = \frac{a_n}{b_n} = (2n-1)4^{n-1}$ .  $T_n = c_1 + c_2 + \cdots + c_n = 1 + 3 \times 4 + 5 \times 4^2 + \cdots + (2n-1)4^{n-1}$  ①. Multiplying the equation ① by 4 to obtain  $4T_n = 1 \times 4 + 3 \times 4^2 + 5 \times 4^3 + \cdots + (2n-1)4^n$  ②. Using ① - ②, we have  $3T_n = -1 - 2 \times (4 + 4^2 + \cdots + 4^{n-1}) + (2n-1)4^n = -1 - 2 \frac{4(1-4^{n-1})}{1-4} + (2n-1)4^n = \frac{5}{3} + \frac{1}{3}(6n-5)4^n = \frac{1}{3}[(6n-5)4^n + 5]$ . Therefore  $T_n = \frac{1}{9}[(6n-5)4^n + 5]$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.30 ★ The sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence,  $a_1 = 8$ ,  $b_n = \log_2 a_n$ . If the first 7th partial sum  $S_7$  of  $\{b_n\}$  is the maximum value, and  $S_7 \neq S_8$ . Find the range of the common ratio  $q$  of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution:  $b_{n+1} - b_n = \log_2 a_{n+1} - \log_2 a_n = \log_2 \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = \log_2 q$ . Then  $\{b_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence, and its first term is  $b_1 = \log_2 a_1 = 3$ , its common difference is  $\log_2 q$ . From the given condition, we have

$$\begin{cases} b_7 \geq 0 \\ b_8 < 0 \end{cases}$$

Then

$$\begin{cases} 3 + 6 \log_2 q \geq 0 \\ 3 + 7 \log_2 q < 0 \end{cases}$$

Thus  $-\frac{1}{2} \leq \log_2 q < -\frac{3}{7}$ . Hence  $q \in [\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, 2^{-\frac{3}{7}})$ .

**5.31 ★★** For a positive number, its decimal part, integer part and itself form a geometric sequence. Find this number.

Solution: Let this number is  $x$ , its integer part is  $[x]$ , its decimal part is  $x - [x]$ . From the given condition, we have  $x(x - [x]) = [x]^2$  which means  $x^2 - [x]x - [x]^2 = 0$  where  $[x] > 0$ ,  $0 < x - [x] < 1$ . Solve the equation, then  $x = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}[x]$ . Since  $0 < x - [x] < 1$ , then  $0 < \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}[x] - [x] < 1$ . Thus  $0 < \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{2}[x] < 1$ . Hence  $0 < [x] < \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} < 2$ . Therefore  $[x] = 1 \Rightarrow x = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

**5.32 ★★** The sequence  $\{a_n\}$  has  $k$  terms ( $k$  is a fixed number). Its  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n = 2n^2 + n$  ( $n \leq k, n \in N^*$ ). If we remove one term (neither the first term nor the last term) from the  $k$  terms, the average value of the remaining  $(k - 1)$  terms is 79.

(1) Find the general term for  $\{a_n\}$ . (2) Determine  $k$  and which term is removed.

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $S_1 = a_1 = 3$ ,  $a_n = S_n - S_{n-1} = (2n^2 + n) - [2(n-1)^2 + (n-1)] = 4n - 1$ , ( $n \geq 2$ ). Since  $a_1$  satisfies the above formula, then  $a_n = 4n - 1$ , ( $n \leq k, n \in N^*$ ).

(2) Let the removed term be the  $t$ th term, then  $1 < t < k$ . From the given condition, we have  $S_k - a_t = 79(k - 1)$ . Thus  $2k^2 + k - (4t - 1) = 79k - 79 \Rightarrow 4t = 2k^2 - 78k + 80 \Rightarrow 4 < 2k^2 - 78k + 80 < 4k \Rightarrow 38 < k < 40$ . Since  $k \in N^*$ , then  $k = 39$ .

Hence  $t = \frac{k^2 - 39k + 40}{2} = 20$ . Therefore the removed term is the 20th term.

**5.33 ★★** Given  $f(x) = x^2 - (2n + 1)x + n^2 + 5n - 7$ .

(1) If the y-ordinate of the vertex of the graph of  $f(x)$  form a sequence  $\{a_n\}$ , show  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence.

(2) If the distance from the vertex of the graph of  $f(x)$  to x-axis form a sequence  $\{b_n\}$ , evaluate the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$ .

Solution: (1)  $f(x) = x^2 - (2n+1)x + n^2 + 5n - 7 = [x - (n+1)]^2 + 3n - 8$ , then  $a_n = 3n - 8$ . Since  $a_{n+1} - a_n = [3(n+1) - 8] - (3n - 8) = 3$ , then  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence which common difference is 3.

(2) Applying (1), we have  $b_n = |3n - 8|$ . When  $1 \leq n \leq 2$ , then  $b_n = 8 - 3n$ ,  $b_1 = 5$ ,  $S_n = \frac{(5+8-3n)n}{2} = \frac{13n-3n^2}{2}$ . When  $n \geq 3$ , then  $b_n = 3n - 8$ ,  $S_n = 5 + 2 + 1 + 4 + 7 + \dots + (3n - 8) = 7 + \frac{(1+3n-8)(n-2)}{2} = \frac{3n^2-13n+28}{2}$ .

Thus

$$S_n = \begin{cases} \frac{13n-3n^2}{2}, & (1 \leq n \leq 2) \\ \frac{3n^2-13n+28}{2}, & (n \geq 3) \end{cases}$$

**5.34 ★★★** If we insert a number  $a$  between two positive numbers, the three numbers form an arithmetic sequence. If we insert two numbers  $b$  and  $c$ , the four numbers form a geometric sequence. Show (1)  $2a > b + c$  (2)  $(a+1)^2 \geq (b+1)(c+1)$ .

Proof: (1) Let the two positive numbers be  $m$  and  $n$  ( $m, n > 0$ ). Then  $m+n = 2a$  ①,  $mc = b^2$  ②,  $nb = c^2$  ③. Applying ① to obtain  $a > 0$ . Applying ② and ③ to obtain  $b, c > 0$ . Thus  $\frac{b^2}{c} + \frac{c^2}{b} = m + n = 2a$ . Then  $2abc = b^3 + c^3 = (b+c)(b^2 + c^2 - bc) \geq (b+c)(2bc - bc) = (b+c)bc$ . Hence  $2a > b + c$ .

What do you want to do?

No matter what you want out of your future career, an employer with a broad range of operations in a load of countries will always be the ticket. Working within the Volvo Group means more than 100,000 friends and colleagues in more than 185 countries all over the world. We offer graduates great career opportunities – check out the Career section at our web site [www.volvogroup.com](http://www.volvogroup.com). We look forward to getting to know you!

**VOLVO**

AB Volvo (publ)  
[www.volvogroup.com](http://www.volvogroup.com)

VOLVO TRUCKS | RENAULT TRUCKS | MACK TRUCKS | VOLVO BUSES | VOLVO CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT | VOLVO PENTA | VOLVO AERO | VOLVO IT  
VOLVO FINANCIAL SERVICES | VOLVO 3P | VOLVO POWERTRAIN | VOLVO PARTS | VOLVO TECHNOLOGY | VOLVO LOGISTICS | BUSINESS AREA ASIA

(2) Applying (1) to obtain  $a = \frac{m+n}{2} \geq \sqrt{mn} = \sqrt{bc}$ . Thus  $a^2 \geq bc$ . Applying (1) again, we have  $2a > b+c$ . Thus

$$\begin{cases} a^2 \geq bc \\ 2a \geq b+c \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^2 + 2a \geq bc + b + c \Rightarrow (a+1)^2 \geq bc + b + c + 1 = (b+1)(c+1).$$

5.35 ★ For an arbitrary real number  $x$ ,  $[x]$  denotes the integer part of  $x$ . It means  $[x]$  is the biggest integer number which satisfies  $[x] \leq x$ .

(1) evaluate  $[\log_2 1] + [\log_2 2] + \cdots + [\log_2 1024]$ .

(2) Deduce the formula of  $[\log_2 1] + [\log_2 2] + \cdots + [\log_2(2^n - 1)]$ .

Solution: (1)  $[\log_2 1] = 0$ ,  $[\log_2 2] = [\log_2 3] = 1$ ,  $[\log_2 4] = [\log_2 5] = [\log_2 6] = [\log_2 7] = 2, \dots, [\log_2 512] = [\log_2 513] = \cdots = [\log_2 1023] = 9$ ,  $[\log_2 1024] = 10$ . Thus  $[\log_2 1] + [\log_2 2] + \cdots + [\log_2 1024] = 2 + 2 \times 2^2 + 3 \times 2^3 + \cdots + 9 \times 2^9 + 10 = 8204$ .

(2) Let  $[\log_2 1] + [\log_2 2] + \cdots + [\log_2(2^n - 1)] = S_n$ . Applying (1) to obtain  $S_n = 2 + 2 \times 2^2 + 3 \times 2^3 + \cdots + (n-1) \times 2^{n-1}$ ,  $2S_n = 2^2 + 2 \times 2^3 + 3 \times 2^4 + \cdots + (n-1) \times 2^n$ . The second equation minus the first equation, we have  $S_n = (n-1) \times 2^n - (2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^{n-1}) = (n-1)2^n - (2^n - 1) = n2^n - 2^{n+1} + 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.36 ★★ How many terms are same in the first 100th terms of the arithmetic sequence 5, 8, 11,  $\dots$  and the arithmetic sequence 3, 7, 11,  $\dots$ ? Evaluate the sum of these same terms.

Solution: The general term of the arithmetic sequence 5, 8, 11,  $\dots$  is  $a_n = 3n + 2$ , the general term of the geometric sequence 3, 7, 11,  $\dots$  is  $b_n = 4m - 1$ , ( $m, n \in N^*$ ).

Let  $3n + 2 = 4m - 1$ , then  $n = \frac{4}{3}m - 1$ . Let  $m = 3k$ , ( $k \in N^*$ ), then  $n = 4k - 1$ . Hence the general term of the same terms of the two sequences is  $c_k = 12k - 1$ . Let  $5 \leq 12k - 1 \leq 302$ , then  $\frac{1}{2} \leq k \leq 25\frac{1}{4}$ . Thus  $k = 1, 2, \dots, 25$ . Therefore there are 25 terms which are same in the first 100th terms of the two sequences.

Thus  $\{c_k\}$  is an arithmetic sequence whose first term is  $c_1 = 11$  and common difference is  $d = c_2 - c_1 = 12$ . Hence  $S_{25} = \frac{[11 + 11 + (25 - 1) \times 12] \times 25}{2} = 3875$ .

5.37 ★★★ (1) Consider a geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ , and it has even number of terms. The sum of all odd terms is 85. The sum of all even terms is 170. Evaluate the common ratio  $q$  and the number of terms  $n$ .

(2) All terms of the geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  are positive, and it has even number of terms. The sum of all terms is four times of the sum of all even terms. The product of the 2th term and 4th term is nine times of the sum of the 3th term and 4th term. Compute  $a_1$ , the common ratio  $q$ , and the term number  $n$  when the  $n$ th partial sum of sequence  $\{\lg a_n\}$  reaches the maximum value.

(3) The  $n$ th partial sum of the geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  whose terms are all positive is 80. The largest term is 54. The 2 $n$ th partial sum is 6560. Find the common ratio  $q$ .

Solution: (1) Since the term number is even, then  $\frac{S_{even}}{S_{odd}} = q = \frac{170}{85} = 2$ ,  $S_{even} = \frac{1 \times [1 - (q^2)^{\frac{n}{2}}]}{1 - q^2} = 85$ . Thus  $2^n = 256 = 2^8 \Rightarrow n = 8$ .

(2)  $S_n = 4S_{even} \Rightarrow S_{even} + S_{odd} = 4S_{even} \Rightarrow S_{odd} = 3S_{even} \Rightarrow \frac{S_{even}}{S_{odd}} = \frac{1}{3} = q$ . From the condition  $a_2a_4 = 9(a_3 + a_4)$ , we have  $a_1^2q^4 = 9(a_1q^2 + a_1q^3)$ . Thus  $a_1^2 - 108a_1 = 0$ . Then  $a_1 = 108$ . Such that the  $n$ th partial sum of sequence  $\{\lg a_n\}$  reaches the maximum value, we have  $\lg a_n = \lg(a_1q^{n-1}) > 0$ , then  $108(\frac{1}{3})^{n-1} > 1$ . Thus  $(\frac{1}{3})^{n-1} > \frac{1}{108}$ .  $n - 1 < \log_{\frac{1}{3}}\frac{1}{108} = \log_{\frac{1}{3}}(\frac{1}{3^3}\frac{1}{4}) = 3 + \log_3 4 \Rightarrow n < 4 + \log_3 4 \leqslant 4 + 1 = 5$ . Therefore the  $n$ th partial sum of sequence  $\{\lg a_n\}$  reaches the maximum value when  $n = 5$ .

(3) From the given condition, we know that the last  $n$ th partial sum of the positive sequence  $\{\lg a_n\}$  is larger than the first  $n$ th partial sum, then  $q > 0$ ,  $a_n = 54$ ,  $a_n = a_1q^{n-1} = 54$  ①,  $S_n = \frac{a_1(1 - q^n)}{1 - q} = 80$  ②,  $q^n = \frac{S_{2n} - S_n}{S_n} = \frac{6560 - 80}{80} = 81$ . Applying ① to obtain  $\frac{a_1}{q} = \frac{54}{81} = \frac{2}{3}$ . Thus  $a_1 = \frac{2}{3}q$ . Substituting it into ②, we have  $\frac{\frac{2}{3}q(1 - 81)}{1 - q} = 80$ . Thus  $q = 3$ .

5.38 ★★★ The function is defined on  $(-1, 1)$ ,  $f(\frac{1}{2}) = -1$  and satisfied that  $f(x) + f(y) = f(\frac{x+y}{1+xy})$  for  $x, y \in (-1, 1)$

(1) If the sequence  $\{f(x_n)\}$  satisfies that  $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $x_{n+1} = \frac{2x_n}{1+x_n^2}$ . Compute  $f(x_n)$ .

(2) Show  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} > -\frac{2n+5}{n+2}$ .

(1) Solution:  $f(x_1) = f(\frac{1}{2}) = -1$ .  $f(x_{n+1}) = f(\frac{2x_n}{1+x_n^2}) = f(\frac{x_n+x_n}{1+x_nx_n}) = f(x_n) + f(x_n) = 2f(x_n) \Rightarrow \frac{f(x_{n+1})}{f(x_n)} = 2$ . Thus  $\{f(x_n)\}$  is a geometric sequence and its first term is  $-1$ , the common ratio is  $2$ . Therefore  $f(x_n) = -2^{n-1}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(2) Proof:  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} = -(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}) = -\frac{1 - \frac{1}{2^n}}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = -(2 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}) = -2 + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} > -2$ . On the other hand,  $-\frac{2n+5}{n+2} = -\frac{2(n+2)+1}{n+2} = -(2 + \frac{1}{n+2}) = -2 - \frac{1}{n+2} < -2$ . Thus  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} > -\frac{2n+5}{n+2}$ .

5.39 ★★★ If the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  satisfy  $b_n = \frac{a_1 + 2a_2 + 3a_3 + \cdots + na_n}{1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n}$ , and  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence. Show  $\{a_n\}$  is also a geometric sequence.

Proof: Since  $(1+2+3+\cdots+n)b_n = a_1+2a_2+3a_3+\cdots+na_n$ , then  $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}b_n = a_1+2a_2+3a_3+\cdots+na_n$  ①. We also have  $\frac{(n-1)n}{2}b_{n-1} = a_1+2a_2+3a_3+\cdots+(n-1)a_{n-1}$  ②. Checking ① - ② to obtain  $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}b_n - \frac{(n-1)n}{2}b_{n-1} = na_n$ , ( $n = 2, 3, \dots$ )  $\Rightarrow a_n = \frac{1}{2}[(n+1)b_n - (n-1)b_{n-1}]$ , ( $n = 2, 3, 4, \dots$ ) (\*). Since  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence, let the common difference be  $d$ . Substituting  $b_n = b_1 + (n-1)d$  into (\*), we obtain  $a_n = \frac{1}{2}\{(n+1)[b_1 + (n-1)d] - (n-1)[b_1 + (n-2)d]\} = b_1 + \frac{3}{2}(n-1)d$ , ( $n = 2, 3, \dots$ ). For  $b_n = \frac{a_1 + 2a_2 + 3a_3 + \cdots + na_n}{1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n}$ , let  $n = 1$ , then  $b_1 = a_1$ . Thus  $a_n = a_1 + \frac{3}{2}(n-1)d$ , ( $n = 2, 3, \dots$ ). Hence  $a_n - a_{n-1} = [a_1 + \frac{3}{2}(n-1)d] - [a_1 + \frac{3}{2}(n-2)d] = \frac{3}{2}d$  (constant). Therefore  $\{a_n\}$  is also a geometric sequence.

3.40 ★★★ Let the first  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$  of sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfy  $S_n = 1 - \frac{2}{3}a_n$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(1) Calculate  $S_n$  and  $a_n$ . (2) If we let  $T_n$  denote the first  $n$ th partial sum of sequence  $\{a_n S_n\}$ , compute  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n$ .

Solution: (1)  $S_n = 1 - \frac{2}{3}a_n \Rightarrow S_n = 1 - \frac{2}{3}(S_n - S_{n-1}) \Rightarrow \frac{5}{3}S_n = 1 + \frac{2}{3}S_{n-1} \Rightarrow \frac{5}{3}(S_n - 1) = \frac{2}{3}(S_{n-1} - 1) \Rightarrow \frac{S_n - 1}{S_{n-1} - 1} = \frac{2}{5}$ . Since  $S_1 = 1 - \frac{2}{3}a_1$ , then  $S_1 = \frac{3}{5}$ ,  $S_1 - 1 = \frac{3}{5} - 1 = -\frac{2}{5}$ . Then  $\{S_n - 1\}$  is a geometric sequence and its first term is  $-\frac{2}{5}$ , the common ratio is  $\frac{2}{5}$ .  $S_n - 1 = (-\frac{2}{5})(\frac{2}{5})^{n-1} = -(\frac{2}{5})^n$ . Therefore  $S_n = 1 - (\frac{2}{5})^n$ ,  $a_n = S_n - S_{n-1} = [1 - (\frac{2}{5})^n] - [1 - (\frac{2}{5})^{n-1}] = (\frac{2}{5})^{n-1} - (\frac{2}{5})^n = (\frac{2}{5})^n(\frac{5}{2} - 1) = \frac{3}{2}(\frac{2}{5})^n$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(2) Since  $a_n = \frac{3}{2}(\frac{2}{5})^n = \frac{3}{2}\frac{2}{5}(\frac{2}{5})^{n-1} = \frac{3}{5}(\frac{2}{5})^{n-1}$ , then  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence and its first term is  $\frac{3}{5}$ , the common ratio is  $\frac{2}{5}$ .  $a_n S_n = \frac{3}{5}(\frac{2}{5})^{n-1}[1 - (\frac{2}{5})^n] = \frac{3}{5}(\frac{2}{5})^{n-1} - \frac{6}{25}[(\frac{2}{5})^2]^{n-1}$ . Thus  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n S_n = \frac{\frac{3}{5}}{1 - \frac{2}{5}} - \frac{\frac{6}{25}}{1 - (\frac{2}{5})^2} = 1 - \frac{2}{7} = \frac{5}{7}$ .

5.41 ★ Let the common ratio of the geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $q > 1$ . The square of the 17th term is equal to the 24th term. Compute the range of the integer number  $n$  which satisfies  $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots + a_n > \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \frac{1}{a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}$ .

Solution:  $a_{17}^2 = a_{24} \Rightarrow (a_1 q^{16})^2 = a_1 q^{23}$ . Since  $q > 1$  and  $a_1 \neq 0$ , then  $a_1 = q^{-9}$ .

Since  $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots + a_n > \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \frac{1}{a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}$ , then  $\frac{a_1(1 - q^n)}{1 - q} > \frac{\frac{1}{a_1}(1 - \frac{1}{q^n})}{1 - \frac{1}{q}}$ ,

which means  $a_1 > \frac{1}{a_1 q^{n-1}}$  ①. Substituting  $a_1 = q^{-9}$  into ①, we have  $q^{-18} > q^{1-n}$ . Since  $q > 1$ , then  $-18 > 1 - n$ . Thus  $n > 19$ . On the other hand, ( $n \in N^*$ ), then  $n \geq 20$ . Hence the range of the integer number  $n$  is  $[20, +\infty)$ .

**5.42 ★★** Given the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and the  $x$ -dependent equations  $a_i x^2 + 2a_{i+1}x + a_{i+2} = 0$ , ( $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ), and  $a_1$  and the common difference  $d$  are both nonzero real numbers. (1) Show these equations have same solutions. (2) If another solution is  $\beta_i$ , then  $\frac{1}{\beta_1 + 1}, \frac{1}{\beta_2 + 1}, \dots, \frac{1}{\beta_n + 1}$  form a geometric sequence.

Proof: (1) Since  $a_i x^2 + 2a_{i+1}x + a_{i+2} = 0$  and  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence which means  $2a_{i+1} = a_i + a_{i+2}$ , then  $a_i x^2 + (a_i + a_{i+2})x + a_{i+2} = 0$ . Then  $(x^2 + x)a_i + (x + 1)a_{i+2} = 0$ . Since  $a_1$  and the common difference  $d$  are both nonzero real numbers, then  $a_i \neq 0$  and  $a_{i+2} \neq 0$ . Thus  $x^2 + x = 0$  and  $x + 1 = 0$ . Hence  $x = -1$ . Therefore these equations have same solutions  $x = -1$ .

(2) Applying the relation of roots and coefficient to obtain  $\beta_i + (-1) = -\frac{2a_{i+1}}{a_i} = -\frac{2(a_i + d)}{a_i} = -2 - \frac{2d}{a_i} \Rightarrow \beta_i = -1 - \frac{2d}{a_i} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{\beta_{i+1} + 1} - \frac{1}{\beta_i + 1} = \frac{1}{-1 - \frac{2d}{a_{i+1}} + 1} - \frac{1}{-1 - \frac{2d}{a_i} + 1} = \frac{a_i - a_{i+1}}{2d} = \frac{-d}{2d} = -\frac{1}{2}$  (constant). Then  $\frac{1}{\beta_1 + 1}, \frac{1}{\beta_2 + 1}, \dots, \frac{1}{\beta_n + 1}$  form a geometric sequence.

**5.43 ★★★** Given  $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 4}$  ( $x \leq -2$ ). (1) Find the inverse function  $f^{-1}(x)$ . (2) Let  $a_1 = 1, a_n = -f^{-1}(a_{n-1})$ , evaluate  $a_n$ . (3) If  $b_1 = \frac{1}{a_1 + a_2}, b_2 = \frac{1}{a_2 + a_3}, \dots, b_n = \frac{1}{a_n + a_{n+1}}$ , compute the first  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$ .

Solution: (1) Since  $y = f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 4}$  ( $x \leq -2$ ), then  $x = -\sqrt{y^2 + 4}$ , which means  $f^{-1}(x) = -\sqrt{x^2 + 4}$ , ( $x \geq 0$ ).

(2) From the given condition and (1), we have  $a_n = \sqrt{a_{n-1}^2 + 4}$ . Squaring both sides of the equation, then  $a_n^2 = a_{n-1}^2 + 4$ , that is  $a_n^2 - a_{n-1}^2 = 4$ . Hence  $a_2^2 - a_1^2 = 4, a_3^2 - a_2^2 = 4, \dots, a_n^2 - a_{n-1}^2 = 4$ . Adding the above equations and applying  $a_1 = 1$  to obtain  $a_n^2 = 4n - 3$ . Thus  $a_n = \sqrt{4n - 3}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

$$(3) S_n = b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n = \frac{1}{a_1 + a_2} + \frac{1}{a_2 + a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n + a_{n+1}} = \frac{a_2 - a_1}{4} + \frac{a_3 - a_2}{4} + \dots + \frac{a_{n+1} - a_n}{4} = \frac{a_{n+1} - a_1}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{4n + 1} - 1}{4}, \quad (n \in N^*).$$

**5.44 ★★★** For the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ , the common difference is  $d$ , the first  $n$ th partial sum is  $A_n$ . For the geometric sequence  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $b_1 = 1$ , the common ratio is  $q$  ( $|q| < 1$ ), the first  $n$ th partial sum is  $B_n$ . Let  $S_n = B_1 + B_2 + \dots + B_n$ .

If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\frac{A_n}{n} - S_n) = 1$ , evaluate  $d$  and  $q$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $A_n = n + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}d$ ,  $B_n = \frac{1(1-q^n)}{1-q}$ ,

$$S_n = \frac{(1-q) + (1-q^2) + \cdots + (1-q^n)}{1-q} = \frac{n - \frac{q(1-q^n)}{1-q}}{1-q} = \frac{(1-q)n - q(1-q^n)}{(1-q)^2}. \quad S-$$

ince  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{A_n}{n} - S_n \right) = 1$ , then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ 1 + \frac{n-1}{2}d - \frac{(1-q)n - q(1-q^n)}{(1-q)^2} \right] = 1 \stackrel{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} q^n = 0}{\Rightarrow}$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{n-1}{2}d - \frac{(1-q)n - q}{(1-q)^2} \right] = 0 \Rightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \left( \frac{d}{2} - \frac{1}{1-q} \right)n - \frac{d}{2} + \frac{q}{(1-q)^2} \right] = 0 \Rightarrow$$

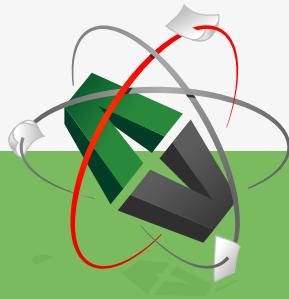
$$\begin{cases} \frac{d}{2} - \frac{1}{1-q} = 0 \\ -\frac{d}{2} + \frac{q}{(1-q)^2} = 0 \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} d = 4 \\ q = \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$$

5.45 ★★ If the product of the first 3th terms of an increasing geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is 512, and subtracting 1,3,9 from these three terms respectively form an arithmetic sequence. Show  $\frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{2}{a_2} + \frac{3}{a_3} + \cdots + \frac{n}{a_n} < 1$ .

This e-book  
is made with  
**SetaPDF**



**PDF components for PHP developers**

**www.setasign.com**



Click on the ad to read more

Proof: Let the first 3th terms of the increasing geometric sequence be  $\frac{a}{q}, a, aq$ . From the given condition, we have  $a^3 = 512$ , then  $a = 8$ . Similarly from the given condition, we have  $(\frac{a}{q} - 1) + (aq - 9) = 2(a - 3)$ , then  $(\frac{8}{q} - 1) + (8q - 9) = 10$ . Solving the equation, we have  $q = \frac{1}{2}$  or  $q = 2$ . Since  $\{a_n\}$  is an increasing sequence, then  $q = 2$ ,  $a_1 = \frac{8}{2} = 4$ ,  $a_n = 4 \times 2^{n-1} = 2^{n+1}$ . Let  $S = \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{2}{a_2} + \frac{3}{a_3} + \cdots + \frac{n}{a_n} = \frac{1}{4} + \frac{2}{8} + \frac{3}{16} + \cdots + \frac{n}{2^{n+1}}$ , ①, then  $\frac{1}{2}S = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{2}{16} + \frac{3}{32} + \cdots + \frac{n}{2^{n+2}}$ , ②.  $(\textcircled{1} - \textcircled{2}) \times 2$  leads to  $S = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} - \frac{n}{2^{n+1}} = 1 - \frac{1}{2^n} - \frac{n}{2^{n+1}} < 1$ .

**5.46 ★★** Let the common difference of arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is nonzero,  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence. If  $a_1 = 3$ ,  $b_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$ ,  $3a_5 = b_3$ . For an arbitrary positive number  $n$ , there are constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  such that  $a_n = \log_\alpha b_n + \beta$  always holds. Evaluate  $\alpha + \beta$ .

Solution: Let the common difference of  $\{a_n\}$  is  $d$ , the common ratio of  $\{b_n\}$  is  $q$ . Since  $a_1 = 3$ ,  $b_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$ ,  $3a_5 = b_3$ , then

$$\begin{cases} 3 + d = q \\ 3(3 + 4d) = q^2 \end{cases}$$

Thus

$$\begin{cases} d = 6 \\ q = 9 \end{cases}$$

Hence  $a_n = 3 + (n - 1)6 = 6n - 3$ ,  $b_n = 9^{n-1}$ . Then  $6n - 3 = \log_\alpha 9^{n-1} + \beta = n \log_\alpha 9 - \log_\alpha 9 + \beta$  always holds for an arbitrary positive number  $n$ . Thus  $\log_\alpha 9 = 6$ ,  $\beta - \log_\alpha 9 = -3 \Rightarrow \alpha^6 = 9 = 3^2$ . Since  $\alpha > 0$ , then  $\alpha = 3^{\frac{2}{6}} = 3^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{3}$ ,  $\beta = -3 + \frac{\log_3 9}{\log_3 \alpha} = -3 + \frac{2}{\frac{1}{3}} = 3$ . Therefore  $\alpha + \beta = \sqrt[3]{3} + 3$ .

**5.47 ★★** The third-order arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is 1,2,8,22,47,⋯, find the value of  $a_{10}$ .

Solution: Since  $\{a_n\}$  is a third-order arithmetic sequence, then let  $a_n = An^3 + Bn^2 + Cn + D$  where  $A, B, C, D$  are undetermined coefficients. From the given condition, we have the following relationships: When  $n = 1$ ,  $A + B + C + D = 1$  ①; When  $n = 2$ ,  $8A + 4B + 2C + D = 2$  ②; When  $n = 3$ ,  $27A + 9B + 3C + D = 8$  ③; When  $n = 4$ ,  $64A + 16B + 4C + D = 22$  ④. According to the ①, ②, ③ and ④, we have  $A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $B = -\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $C = -1$ ,  $D = 2$ . Thus the general term of  $\{a_n\}$  is  $a_n = \frac{1}{2}n^3 - \frac{1}{2}n^2 - n + 2$ . Therefore  $a_{10} = \frac{1}{2} \times 10^3 - \frac{1}{2} \times 10^2 - 10 + 2 = 442$ .

5.48 ★ For the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $f_n(x) = a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_nx^n$ , and  $a_1 = 3$ ,  $f_n(1) = p(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})$ . (1) Evaluate  $p$ . (2) Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ . (3) Find the minimum value of positive integer  $n$  such that  $3f_n(2) \geq 2005f_n(1)$ .

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $f_n(1) = a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n = p(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})$ .

Since  $a_1 = 3$ , then  $\frac{p}{2} = 3$ . Thus  $p = 6$ .

$$(2) \text{ when } n \geq 2, a_n = 6(1 - \frac{1}{2^n}) - 6(1 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}) = 3(\frac{1}{2})^{n-1}, \quad (n \in N^*).$$

(3) Since  $f_n(2) = 2a_1 + 4a_2 + \cdots + 2^na_n = 2 \times 3 + 4 \times \frac{3}{2} + \cdots + 2^n \frac{3}{2^{n-1}} = 6n$  and  $3f_n(2) \geq 2005f_n(1)$ , then  $3 \times 6n \geq 2005 \times 6(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})$ . Then  $3n \geq 2005(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})$ . When  $n \leq 10$ , it does not hold. When  $n > 10$ ,  $\frac{2005}{2^n} < 1$ . Then  $3n > 2004$  which means  $n > 668$ . Since  $n \in N^*$ , then the minimum value of  $n$  is 669.

5.49 ★★★ Given  $a_0 = a_1 = 1$ , and  $a_0a_n + a_1a_{n-1} + \cdots + a_na_0 = 2^na_n$ . Show  $a_n = \frac{1}{n!}$  holds for all  $n \in N^*$ .

Proof: (1) When  $n = 0$  or  $1$ ,  $a_0 = a_1 = \frac{1}{1!} = 1$ .  $p(0)$  and  $p(1)$  hold. (2) Assume when  $n = k$ ,  $p(k)$  holds which means  $a_k = \frac{1}{k!}$ . Applying the recurrence relation, we have  $a_{k+1} + \frac{1}{1!k!} + \frac{1}{2!(k-1)!} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k!1!} + a_{k+1} = 2^{k+1}a_{k+1}$  when  $n = k+1$ . Then  $(2^{k+1} - 2)a_{k+1} = \frac{1}{(k+1)!}(C_{k+1}^1 + C_{k+1}^2 + \cdots + C_{k+1}^k) = \frac{1}{(k+1)!}(2^{k+1} - 2)$ . Thus  $a_{k+1} = \frac{1}{(k+1)!}$ . When  $n = k+1$ ,  $p(k+1)$  also holds. Therefore for all integers  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a_n = \frac{1}{n!}$  holds.

5.50 ★★ Let  $A, B, C$  be the three interior angles of  $\triangle ABC$ .  $\lg A, \lg B, \lg C$  form an arithmetic sequence. Find the range of  $B$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $\lg A + \lg C = 2 \lg B$ , then  $B^2 = AC$ . Thus  $C > B > A$  and  $B < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Hence  $[\pi - (A + C)]^2 = AC \leq (\frac{A+C}{2})^2$ . Since  $\frac{A+C}{2} \leq B < \frac{\pi}{2} \Rightarrow \pi - (A + C) \geq \frac{A+C}{2} \Rightarrow A + C \leq \frac{2\pi}{3} \Rightarrow B \geq \pi - \frac{2\pi}{3} = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Therefore  $\frac{\pi}{3} \leq B < \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

5.51 ★★★ For  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $8a_{n+1}a_n - 16a_{n+1} + 2a_n + 5 = 0$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). And

$$b_n = \frac{1}{a_n - \frac{1}{2}}, \quad (n \in N^*).$$

(1) Find the value of  $b_1, b_2, b_3, b_4$ . (2) Find the general term of  $\{b_n\}$ , and the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{a_n b_n\}$ , denoted as  $\{S_n\}$ .

Solution: (1) Since  $b_n = \frac{1}{a_n - \frac{1}{2}}$ , then  $a_n = \frac{1}{b_n} + \frac{1}{2}$ . Substituting it into the equation  $8a_{n+1}a_n - 16a_{n+1} + 2a_n + 5 = 0$ , we have  $\frac{4}{b_{n+1}b_n} - \frac{6}{b_{n+1}} + \frac{3}{b_n} = 0$ . It means

$$b_{n+1} = 2b_n - \frac{4}{3}. \text{ Since } a_1 = 1, \text{ then } 1 = \frac{1}{b_1} + \frac{1}{2}. \text{ Thus } b_1 = 2. \text{ Hence } b_2 = 2b_1 - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{8}{3}, \\ b_3 = 2b_2 - \frac{4}{3} = 4, b_4 = 2b_3 - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{20}{3}.$$

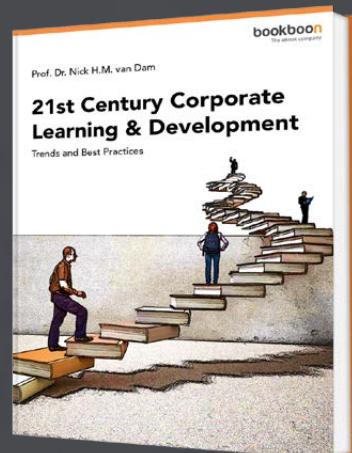
(2) From (1), we have  $b_{n+1} = 2b_n - \frac{4}{3}$ . Then  $b_{n+1} - \frac{4}{3} = 2(b_n - \frac{4}{3})$ . Since  $b_1 - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{2}{3} \neq 0$ , then  $\{b_n - \frac{4}{3}\}$  is a geometric sequence and its first term is  $\frac{2}{3}$ , the common ratio  $q$  is 2.

$$\text{Hence } b_n - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{2}{3}2^{n-1} = \frac{1}{3}2^n. \text{ Thus } b_n = \frac{1}{3}2^n + \frac{4}{3}, \quad (n \in N^*). \text{ Since } b_n = \frac{1}{a_n - \frac{1}{2}}, \\ \text{then } a_n b_n = \frac{1}{2}b_n + 1. \text{ Therefore } S_n = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + \dots + a_n b_n = \frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n) + n = \\ \frac{1}{2}[(b_1 - \frac{4}{3}) + (b_2 - \frac{4}{3}) + \dots + (b_n - \frac{4}{3})] + \frac{5}{3}n = \frac{\frac{2}{3}(1 - 2^n)}{2(1 - 2)} + \frac{5}{3}n = \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 5n - 1), \quad (n \in N^*).$$

## Free eBook on Learning & Development

By the Chief Learning Officer of McKinsey

**Download Now**



Download free eBooks at [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)



**Click on the ad to read more**

5.52 ★★★ If the increasing sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfies  $a_{n+2} = a_{n+1} + a_n$  when  $n \geq 1$ ,  $a_7 = 120$ . Find the value of  $a_8$ .

Solution: Let  $a_1 = x$ ,  $a_2 = y$ ,  $x, y \in N^*$ . From the given condition, we have  $x < y$ , and  $a_3 = x + y$ ,  $a_4 = x + 2y$ ,  $a_5 = 2x + 3y$ ,  $a_6 = 3x + 5y$ ,  $a_7 = 5x + 8y$ ,  $a_8 = 8x + 13y$ . Since  $a_7 = 120$ , then  $5x + 8y = 120$ . We have

$$\begin{cases} x = 8t \\ y = 15 - 5t \end{cases}$$

where  $t$  is a integer number. Since  $y > x > 0$ , then  $15t - 5t > 8t > 0$ . Thus  $0 < t < \frac{15}{13}$ . Then  $t = 1$ . Hence  $x = 8, y = 10$ . Therefore  $a_8 = 8 \times 8 + 13 \times 10 = 194$ .

5.53 ★★ If the  $n$ th partial sum of an arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with positive common difference is  $S_n$ ,  $a_3a_4 = 117$ ,  $a_2 + a_5 = 22$ . (1) Find the general term  $a_n$ . (2) If the arithmetic sequence  $\{b_n\}$  satisfies  $b_n = \frac{S_n}{n+c}$ , evaluate the nonzero constant  $c$ . (3) Calculate the maximum value of  $f(n) = \frac{b_n}{(n+36)b_{n+1}}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Solution: (1) Since  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence, then  $a_3 + a_4 = a_2 + a_5 = 22$ . On the other hand,  $a_3a_4 = 117$ , then  $a_3, a_4$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 22x + 117 = 0$ . Since the common difference  $d > 0$ , then  $a_3 < a_4$ . Solving the equation to obtain  $a_3 = 9, a_4 = 13$ . Then

$$\begin{cases} a_1 + 2d = 9 \\ a_1 + 3d = 13 \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\begin{cases} a_1 = 1 \\ d = 4 \end{cases}$$

Thus  $a_n = 1 + (n-1)4 = 4n - 3$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(2) From (1), we have  $S_n = n \times 1 + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}4 = 2n^2 - n$ . Then  $b_n = \frac{S_n}{n+c} = \frac{2n^2 - n}{n+c}$  ( $n \in N^*$ )  $\Rightarrow b_1 = \frac{1}{1+c}, b_2 = \frac{6}{2+c}, b_3 = \frac{15}{3+c}$ . Since  $\{b_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence, then  $2b_2 = b_1 + b_3$ . Thus  $\frac{12}{2+c} = \frac{1}{1+c} + \frac{15}{3+c} \Rightarrow 2c^2 + c = 0$ . Therefore  $c = -\frac{1}{2}$  or  $c = 0$ . Since  $c$  is nonzero, then  $c = -\frac{1}{2}$ .

(3) From (2), we have  $b_n = \frac{2n^2 - n}{n - \frac{1}{2}} = 2n$ , then  $f(n) = \frac{2n}{2(n+1)(n+36)} = \frac{n}{n^2 + 37n + 36} = \frac{1}{n + \frac{36}{n} + 37} \leq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n\frac{36}{n}} + 37} = \frac{1}{49}$ .  $f(n)_{max} = \frac{1}{49}$  when  $n = 6$ . Thus the maximum value of  $f(n)$  is  $\frac{1}{49}$ .

5.54 ★★★ Given the function  $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 4}}$ , ( $x < -2$ ).

(1) Let  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $\frac{1}{a_{n+1}} = -f^{-1}(a_n)$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Evaluate  $a_n$ .

(2) Let  $S_n = a_1^2 + a_2^2 + \dots + a_n^2$ ,  $b_n = S_{n+1} - S_n$ . Determine whether there exists the minimum value of positive integer  $m$  such that  $b_n < \frac{m}{25}$  holds for  $n \in N^*$ . If yes, find the value of  $m$ . Otherwise, explain the reason.

Solution: (1) Since  $y = f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 4}}$ , ( $x < -2$ ), then  $x = -\sqrt{4 + \frac{1}{y^2}}$ . Thus

$$f^{-1}(x) = -\sqrt{4 + \frac{1}{x^2}}, (x > 0). \text{ Since } \frac{1}{a_{n+1}} = -f^{-1}(a_n) = \sqrt{4 + \frac{1}{a_n^2}} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{a_{n+1}^2} - \frac{1}{a_n^2} = 4.$$

Hence  $\{\frac{1}{a_n^2}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence and  $a_1 = 1$ , the common difference  $d$  is 4. Then

$$\frac{1}{a_n^2} = \frac{1}{a_1^2} + 4(n-1) = 4n-3. \text{ Since } a_n > 0, \text{ then } a_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4n-3}}, (n \in N^*).$$

(2) From the given condition and (1), we have  $b_n = S_{n+1} - S_n = a_{n+1}^2 = \frac{1}{4(n+1)-3} = \frac{1}{4n+1}$ . Since  $b_n < \frac{m}{25}$ , then  $\frac{1}{4n+1} < \frac{m}{25}$ . Thus  $m > \frac{25}{4n+1}$  holds for  $n \in N^*$ .  $\frac{25}{4n+1} \leqslant 5 \Rightarrow m > 5$ . Therefore there exists the minimum value of positive integer  $m = 6$  such that  $b_n < \frac{m}{25}$  holds for  $n \in N^*$ .

5.55 ★★★ The  $n$ th partial sum of a geometric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $S$ , the product is  $p$ , the sum of the reciprocal of every term is  $T$ . Show  $p^2 = (\frac{S}{T})^n$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Proof: (1) When the common ratio  $q = 1$ , then  $S = na_1, T = \frac{n}{a_1}, p = a_1^n, p^2 = a_1^{2n} \Rightarrow (\frac{S}{T})^n = (a_1^2)^n = a_1^{2n}$ . That means  $p^2 = (\frac{S}{T})^n$  holds.

(2) when the common ratio  $q \neq 1$ , then  $S = \frac{a_1(1-q^n)}{1-q}, T = \frac{\frac{1}{a_1}(1-\frac{1}{q^n})}{1-\frac{1}{q}} = \frac{q^n-1}{a_1q^{n-1}(q-1)}, p = a_1^n q^{1+2+\dots+(n-1)} = a_1^n q^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}}, p^2 = a_1^{2n} q^{n(n-1)}$ , then  $(\frac{S}{T})^n = [\frac{a_1(1-q^n)}{1-q} \frac{a_1 q^{n-1}(q-1)}{q^n-1}]^n = a_1^{2n} q^{n(n-1)} = p^2$ . As a conclusion,  $p^2 = (\frac{S}{T})^n$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ) holds.

5.56 ★★★★ There are  $n$  numbers which form a sequence. Their numerators form an arithmetic sequence, the first term is  $a$ , the common difference is  $d$ . The denominators form a geometric sequence, the first term is  $b$ , the common ratio is  $q$ . Show the first  $n$ th sum  $S_n$  satisfies  $S_n = \frac{(a - aq - d)(1 - q^n) + nd(1 - q)}{bq^{n-1}(1 - q)^2}$ .

Proof: From the given condition, we have  $S_n = \frac{a}{b} + \frac{a+d}{bq} + \frac{a+2d}{bq^2} + \cdots + \frac{a+(n-1)d}{bq^{n-1}} = \frac{1}{bq^{n-1}} \{(1+q+q^2+\cdots+q^{n-1})a + [q^{n-2}+2q^{n-3}+3q^{n-4}+\cdots+(n-3)q^2+(n-2)q+(n-1)]d\} \cdots (*)$ . For the above equation, we find that the coefficient for  $a$  is  $\frac{1-q^n}{1-q}$  ①.

The coefficient for  $d$  can be solved by the following method:

Let  $A = q^{n-2} + 2q^{n-3} + 3q^{n-4} + \cdots + (n-3)q^2 + (n-2)q + (n-1)$ . Dividing the both sides by  $q$  to obtain  $\frac{A}{q} = q^{n-3} + 2q^{n-4} + \cdots + (n-3)q + (n-2) + \frac{(n-1)}{q}$ . Subtracting the above two equations, we have  $A - \frac{A}{q} = q^{n-2} + q^{n-3} + q^{n-4} + \cdots + q + 1 - \frac{n-1}{q}$ .

Then  $A(1 - \frac{1}{q}) = \frac{1-q^{n-1}}{1-q} - \frac{n-1}{q} \Rightarrow A = \frac{q}{q-1} \frac{(1-q^{n-1})q - (n-1)(1-q)}{(1-q)q} = \frac{n(1-q) - (1-q^n)}{(1-q)^2}$  ②. Substituting ① and ② into (\*), we have  $S_n = \frac{1}{bq^{n-1}} [\frac{1-q^n}{1-q} a + \frac{n(1-q) - (1-q^n)}{(1-q)^2} d] = \frac{(1-q^n)(1-q)a + [n(1-q) - (1-q^n)]d}{bq^{n-1}(1-q)^2} = \frac{(a - aq - d)(1-q^n) + nd(1-q)}{bq^{n-1}(1-q)^2}$ .



[www.sylvania.com](http://www.sylvania.com)

We do not reinvent the wheel we reinvent light.

Fascinating lighting offers an infinite spectrum of possibilities: Innovative technologies and new markets provide both opportunities and challenges. An environment in which your expertise is in high demand. Enjoy the supportive working atmosphere within our global group and benefit from international career paths. Implement sustainable ideas in close cooperation with other specialists and contribute to influencing our future. Come and join us in reinventing light every day.

Light is OSRAM

**OSRAM** 

5.57 ★★★★ We put  $n^2$  ( $n \geq 4$ ) positive numbers as  $n$  rows and  $n$  columns:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} & \cdots & a_{3n} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & a_{43} & a_{44} & \cdots & a_{4n} \\ & & & & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & a_{n3} & a_{n4} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{array}$$

where the numbers in each row form an arithmetic sequence and the numbers in each column form a geometric sequence which common ratios are all equal. Given  $a_{24} = 1$ ,  $a_{42} = \frac{1}{8}$ ,  $a_{43} = \frac{3}{16}$ . Evaluate  $a_{11} + a_{22} + a_{33} + a_{44} + \cdots + a_{nn}$ .

Solution: Let the common difference of the sequence from the first row is  $d$ , the common ratio of the sequences from columns is  $q$ . then the common difference of the 4th term is  $dq^3$ . Then

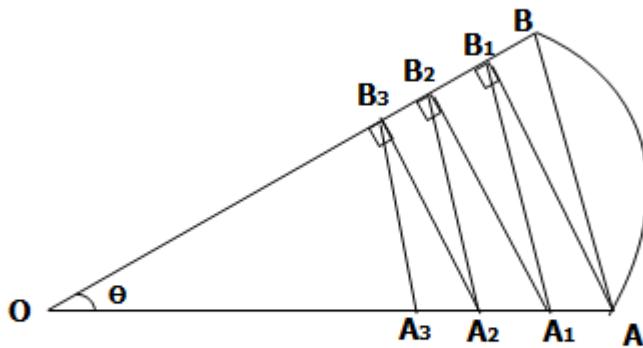
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a_{24} = (a_{11} + 3d)q = 1 \\ a_{42} = (a_{11} + d)q^3 = \frac{1}{8} \\ a_{43} = \frac{1}{8} + dq^3 = \frac{3}{16} \end{array} \right.$$

Solving the equations system, we have  $a_{11} = d = q = \pm \frac{1}{2}$ . Since these  $n^2$  numbers are all positive, then  $a_{11} = d = q = \frac{1}{2}$ . For any  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ,  $a_{kk} = a_{1k}q^{k-1} = [a_{11} + (k-1)d]q^{k-1} = k \frac{1}{2^k}$ ,  $S = a_{11} + a_{22} + a_{33} + \cdots + a_{nn} = \frac{1}{2} + 2 \frac{1}{2^2} + 3 \frac{1}{2^3} + \cdots + n \frac{1}{2^n}$ . Since  $\frac{1}{2}S = \frac{1}{2^2} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2^3} + 3 \cdot \frac{1}{2^4} + \cdots + n \cdot \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}$ . Subtracting these two equations, we have  $\frac{1}{2}S = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^3} + \frac{1}{2^4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^n} - n \frac{1}{2^{n+1}} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} - n \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}$ . Therefore  $S = 2 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} - \frac{n}{2^n}$ , ( $n \geq 4$ ).

5.58 ★★★★ Let  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $\{c_n\}$  satisfy  $b_n = a_n - a_{n+2}$ ,  $c_n = a_n + 2a_{n+1} + 3a_{n+2}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Show that  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence if and only if  $\{c_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence and  $b_n \leq b_{n+1}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Proof: “ $\Rightarrow$ ”: Let the common difference of the arithmetic sequence  $\{a_n\}$  be  $d_1$ , then  $b_{n+1} - b_n = (a_{n+1} - a_{n+3}) - (a_n - a_{n+2}) = (a_{n+1} - a_n) - (a_{n+3} - a_{n+2}) = d_1 - d_1 = 0$ . Thus  $b_n \leq b_{n+1}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). On the other hand,  $c_{n+1} - c_n = (a_{n+1} - a_n) + 2(a_{n+2} - a_{n+1}) + 3(a_{n+3} - a_{n+2}) = d_1 + 2d_1 + 3d_1 = 6d_1$  (constant), then  $\{c_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence.

“ $\Leftarrow$ ”: Let the common difference of the arithmetic sequence  $\{c_n\}$  is  $d_2$ , and  $b_n \leq b_{n+1}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Since  $c_n = a_n + 2a_{n+1} + 3a_{n+2}$  ①, then  $c_{n+2} = a_{n+2} + 2a_{n+3} + 3a_{n+4}$  ②. Using ① – ②, we have  $c_n - c_{n+2} = (a_n - a_{n+2}) + 2(a_{n+1} - a_{n+3}) + 3(a_{n+2} - a_{n+4}) = b_n + 2b_{n+1} + 3b_{n+2}$ . On the other hand,  $c_n - c_{n+2} = (c_n - c_{n+1}) + (c_{n+1} - c_{n+2}) = -2d_2$ , then  $b_n + 2b_{n+1} + 3b_{n+2} = -2d_2$  ③, and  $b_{n+1} + 2b_{n+2} + 3b_{n+3} = -2d_2$  ④. Using ④ – ③, we have  $(b_{n+1} - b_n) + 2(b_{n+2} - b_{n+1}) + 3(b_{n+3} - b_{n+2}) = 0$  ⑤. Since  $b_{n+1} - b_n \geq 0$ ,  $b_{n+2} - b_{n+1} \geq 0$ ,  $b_{n+3} - b_{n+2} \geq 0$ , we have  $b_{n+1} - b_n = 0$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ) by ⑤. Assume  $b_n = d_3$ , then  $a_n - a_{n+2} = d_3$  (constant). Then  $c_n = a_n + 2a_{n+1} + 3a_{n+2} = 4a_n + 2a_{n+1} - 3d_3$ ,  $c_{n+1} = 4a_{n+1} + 2a_{n+2} - 3d_3 = 4a_{n+1} + 2(a_n - d_3) - 3d_3 = 4a_{n+1} + 2a_n - 5d_3$ . Subtracting the above two equations, we have  $c_{n+1} - c_n = 2(a_{n+1} - a_n) - 2d_3$  which means  $a_{n+1} - a_n = \frac{1}{2}(c_{n+1} - c_n) + d_3 = \frac{1}{2}d_2 + d_3$  (constant) ( $n \in N^*$ ). Therefore  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence.



**Figure 1**

5.59 ★★★★ See Figure 1, let the radius of sector  $AOB$  be  $R$ ,  $\angle AOB = \theta$  ( $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ ).  $AB_1$  is perpendicular to  $OB$ ,  $B_1A_1$  is parallel to  $AB$ ,  $A_1B_2$  is perpendicular to  $OB$ ,  $B_2A_2$  is parallel to  $AB$ , and keep going, then we obtain two sequences of points  $\{A_n\}$  and  $\{B_n\}$  on  $OA$  and  $OB$ . Let the areas of  $\triangle ABB_1$ ,  $\triangle A_1B_1B_2$ , ...,  $\triangle A_nB_nB_{n+1}$ , ... be  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_{n+1}, \dots$ . Evaluate the sum  $S$  of all these areas.

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $\angle ABO = \frac{\pi - \theta}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}$ . Considering the line perpendicular to  $AB$  through the point  $O$ , we have  $AB = 2R \cos \angle ABO = 2R \cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}) = 2R \sin \frac{\theta}{2}$ .

In right triangle  $\triangle ABB_1$ ,  $BB_1 = AB \cos \angle ABO = 2R \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}) = 2R \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = (1 - \cos \theta)R$ ,  $AB_1 = 2R \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}) = R \sin \theta$ ,  $OB_1 = R - BB_1 = R \cos \theta$ ,  $OB_2 = R \cos^2 \theta$ ,  $OB_3 = R \cos^3 \theta$ , ... . Thus  $S_{\triangle ABB_1} = \frac{1}{2}BB_1 \cdot AB_1 = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos \theta)R \cdot R \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos \theta)R^2 \sin \theta = S_1$ . Since  $\triangle ABB_1 \sim \triangle A_1B_1B_2 \sim \triangle A_2B_2B_3 \dots \sim \triangle A_nB_nB_{n+1}$ .

On the other hand,  $AB||A_1B_1||A_2B_2$ , we have  $q = \frac{S_2}{S_1} = \dots = \frac{A_1B_1^2}{AB^2} = \frac{OB_1^2}{OB^2} = \frac{R^2 \cos^2 \theta}{R^2} = \cos^2 \theta$ . Hence  $S = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n S_k = \frac{\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos \theta)R^2 \sin \theta}{1 - \cos^2 \theta} = \frac{1}{2}R^2 \frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} = \frac{1}{2}R^2 \cdot \frac{2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}}{2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{1}{2}R^2 \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$ .

**5.60 ★★★★** Given  $a > 0$  and  $a \neq 1$ . The sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence. The first term is  $a$ , the common ratio is also  $a$ . If  $b_n = a_n \lg a_n$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). Does there exist  $a$  such that every term of  $\{b_n\}$  is less than its next term? If yes, find the range of  $a$ . If no, please explain the reason.

Solution: Assume there exists a real number  $a$  such that  $b_n < b_{n+1}$  for all  $n \in N^*$ . From the given condition, we have  $a_n = a \cdot a^{n-1} = a^n$ , then  $b_n = a_n \lg a_n = a^n \lg a^n = n a^n \lg a$ . Thus  $n a^n \lg a < (n+1) a^{n+1} \lg a$  for all  $n \in N^*$ .

(1) When  $a > 1$ , since  $\lg a > 0$ , then  $n < (n+1)a$  for all  $n \in N^*$  which means  $a > \frac{n}{n+1}$  for all  $n \in N^*$ . Thus  $\frac{n}{n+1} < 1 < a$  always holds. Therefore  $b_n < b_{n+1}$  always holds for  $a > 1$  and  $n \in N^*$ .



**Deloitte.**

© Deloitte & Touche LLP and affiliated entities.

Discover the truth at [www.deloitte.ca/careers](http://www.deloitte.ca/careers)

Download free eBooks at [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)



Click on the ad to read more

(2) When  $0 < a < 1$ , since  $\lg a < 0$ , then  $n > (n+1)a$  for all  $n \in N^*$  which means  $a < \frac{n}{n+1}$  for all  $n \in N^*$ . Since  $\frac{n}{n+1} = 1 - \frac{1}{n+1}$  is increasing when  $n$  is increasing.

Thus the minimum value of  $\frac{n}{n+1}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  when  $n = 1$ . That means that  $\frac{n}{n+1} \geq \frac{1}{2}$  always holds. Thus  $a < \frac{n}{n+1}$  always holds when  $0 < a < \frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $b_n < b_{n+1}$  always holds when  $0 < a < \frac{1}{2}$  and  $n \in N^*$ .

According to (1) and (2), the range of  $a$  is  $0 < a < \frac{1}{2}$  or  $a > 1$ .

**5.61 ★★★★** Given a sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_1 = 0$ ,  $a_n = \frac{1}{4}(a_{n-1} + 3)$  ( $n = 2, 3, \dots$ ). Find the general term  $a_n$ .

Solution: From the given condition  $a_n = \frac{1}{4}(a_{n-1} + 3)$ , we have  $a_{n-1} = \frac{1}{4}(a_{n-2} + 3)$ .

Then  $a_n - a_{n-1} = \frac{1}{4}(a_{n-1} - a_{n-2})$ ,  $a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = \frac{1}{4}(a_{n-2} - a_{n-3})$ , ...,  $a_3 - a_2 = \frac{1}{4}(a_2 - a_1)$ .

Multiplying all the above equations together to obtain  $a_n - a_{n-1} = (\frac{1}{4})^{n-2}(a_2 - a_1) = \frac{3}{4}(\frac{1}{4})^{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ). Then  $a_n - a_{n-1} = \frac{3}{4}(\frac{1}{4})^{n-2}$ ,  $a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = \frac{3}{4}(\frac{1}{4})^{n-3}$ , ...,  $a_2 - a_1 = \frac{3}{4}$ .

Adding all the above equations to obtain  $a_n - a_1 = \frac{3}{4}[1 + \frac{1}{4} + \dots + (\frac{1}{4})^{n-3} + (\frac{1}{4})^{n-2}]$ .

Since  $a_1 = 0$ , then  $a_n = \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{4})^{n-1}}{1 - \frac{1}{4}} = 1 - (\frac{1}{4})^{n-1}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

**5.62 ★★★** Consider a sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_1 = a_2 = 1$ ,  $a_3 = 2$ , and  $a_n a_{n+1} a_{n+2} \neq 1$  for arbitrary natural number  $n$ , and  $a_n a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} = a_n + a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} + a_{n+3}$ .

Evaluate  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{100}$ .

Solution: Since  $a_n a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} = a_n + a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} + a_{n+3}$ , then  $a_1 a_2 a_3 a_4 = a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4$ , and we have  $a_1 = a_2 = 1$ ,  $a_3 = 2$ , thus  $a_4 = 4$ . From the given condition, we have  $a_n a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} = a_n + a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} + a_{n+3}$ ,  $a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} a_{n+4} = a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} + a_{n+3} + a_{n+4}$ . Subtracting the second equation from the first equation to obtain  $a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} (a_n - a_{n+4}) = a_n - a_{n+4}$  which means  $(a_n - a_{n+4})(a_{n+1} a_{n+2} a_{n+3} - 1) = 0$ .

Since  $a_n a_{n+1} a_{n+2} \neq 1$ , then  $a_{n+4} = a_n$ . Therefore  $\sum_{i=1}^{100} a_i = \frac{100}{4}(a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4) = 200$ .

**5.63 ★★★★** If two sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  satisfy  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = r$  ( $r > 0$ ),  $b_n = a_n a_{n+1}$ , and  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with common ratio  $q$  ( $q > 0$ ). Let  $c_n = a_{2n-1} + a_{2n}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). (1) Find the general term of  $\{c_n\}$ . (2) If  $d_n = \frac{\lg c_{n+1}}{\lg c_n}$ ,  $r = 2^{19.2} - 1$ ,  $q = \frac{1}{2}$ , find the maximum and minimum terms.

Solution: (1) Since  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with common ratio  $q$ , then  $\frac{b_{n+1}}{b_n} = q$ .

Since  $b_n = a_n a_{n+1}$ , then  $\frac{a_{n+1} a_{n+2}}{a_n a_{n+1}} = q$ . It means  $\frac{a_{n+2}}{a_n} = q$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Thus the sequence  $a_1, a_3, a_5, \dots, a_{2n-1}, \dots$  and the sequence  $a_2, a_4, a_6, \dots, a_{2n}, \dots$  are both geometric sequences with common ratio  $q$ . Then  $a_{2n-1} = a_1 q^{n-1} = q^{n-1}$ ,  $a_{2n} = a_2 q^{n-1} = r \cdot q^{n-1}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Therefore  $c_n = a_{2n-1} + a_{2n} = q^{n-1} + r q^{n-1} = (1+r)q^{n-1}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(2) Since  $c_n = (1+r)q^{n-1} = (1+2^{19.2}-1)(\frac{1}{2})^{n-1} = 2^{20.2-n}$ , then  $d_n = \frac{\lg c_{n+1}}{\lg c_n} = \frac{\lg 2^{20.2-(n+1)}}{\lg 2^{20.2-n}} = 1 + \frac{1}{n-20.2}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

When  $n-20.2 > 0$  which means  $n \geq 21$  ( $n \in N^*$ ), then  $d_n$  is decreasing as  $n$  is increasing. Thus  $1 < d_n \leq d_{21} = 1 + \frac{1}{21-20.2} = 2.25$  ①.

When  $n-20.2 < 0$  which means  $n \leq 20$  ( $n \in N^*$ ), then  $d_n$  is decreasing as  $n$  is increasing. Thus  $1 > d_n \geq d_{20} = 1 + \frac{1}{20-20.2} = -4$  ②.

By applying ① and ②, we have  $d_{20} \leq d_n \leq d_{21}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Therefore the maximum term of  $\{d_n\}$  is  $d_{21} = 2.25$ , and minimum term is  $d_{20} = -4$ .

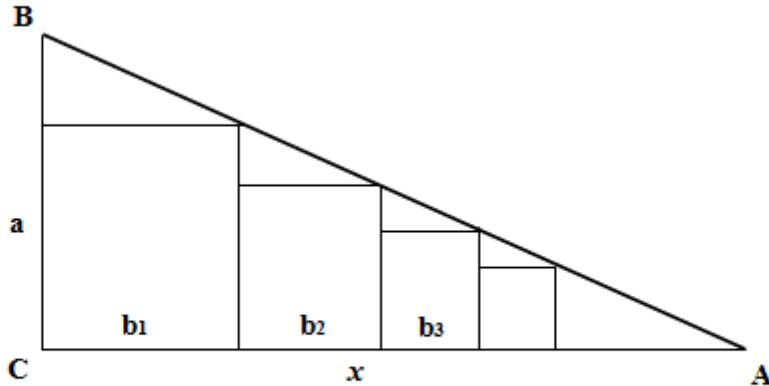
5.64 ★★★ Given  $c_1 = 1$ ,  $c_2 = 1$ ,  $c_{n+2} = c_{n+1} + c_n$ , find the general term  $c_n$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have that the roots of the characteristic equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  are  $\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ . Assume  $c_n = A(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2})^n + B(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2})^n$ .

When  $n=1$ , then  $A\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} + B\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} = 1$ .

When  $n=2$ , then  $A(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2})^2 + B(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2})^2 = 1$ .

By solving the above equations, we have  $A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $B = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ . Thus  $c_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}[(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2})^n - (\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2})^n]$ .



**Figure 2**

5.65 ★★★★ See Figure 2, in  $Rt\triangle ABC$  ( $Rt\triangle$  represents right triangle), there are infinitely many squares  $S_1, S_2, S_3, S_4, \dots$ , and the leg  $BC = a$ . The sum of areas of all these squares is half of the area of  $Rt\triangle ABC$ . Compute the length of the other leg  $AC$ .

Solution: Let the side length of the first square is  $b_1$ , from left to right, the others are  $b_2, b_3, \dots, b_n, \dots$ . Let  $AC = x$ .

By applying the similarity of triangles, we have  $\frac{a - b_1}{a} = \frac{b_1}{x} \Rightarrow b_1 = \frac{ax}{a + x} = \frac{a}{\frac{a}{x} + 1} = \frac{a}{\cot B + 1} = \frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B}a$ . Similarly, we have  $b_2 = \frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B}b_1 = (\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^2a, b_3 = (\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^3a, \dots, b_n = (\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^n a$ . Then  $b_1^2 = (\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B}a)^2, b_2^2 = [(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^2a]^2, b_3^2 = [(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^3a]^2, \dots, b_n^2 = [(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^n a]^2$ . Thus  $\{b_n^2\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term  $(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B}a)^2$ , the common ratio is  $(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^2$ . From the given condition, we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \{b_n^2\} = \frac{1}{4}ax$ , which means  $\frac{(\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^2 a^2}{1 - (\frac{\tan B}{1 + \tan B})^2} = \frac{1}{4}ax$ . Since  $x = a \tan B \Rightarrow \frac{a^2 \cdot \tan^2 B}{1 + 2 \tan B} = \frac{1}{4}a^2 \tan B$ . Then  $\tan B = \frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $AC = a \cdot \tan B = \frac{1}{2}a$ .

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



We will turn your CV into  
an opportunity of a lifetime



Do you like cars? Would you like to be a part of a successful brand?  
We will appreciate and reward both your enthusiasm and talent.  
Send us your CV. You will be surprised where it can take you.

Send us your CV on  
[www.employerforlife.com](http://www.employerforlife.com)



5.66 ★★★★ If the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfies  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = r$  ( $r > 0$ ).  $\{a_n a_{n+1}\}$  is a geometric sequence with the common ratio  $q$  ( $q > 0$ ). Let  $b_n = a_{2n-1} + a_{2n}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(1) Find the range of  $q$  such that  $a_n a_{n+1} + a_{n+1} a_{n+2} > a_{n+2} a_{n+3}$ .

(2) Find  $b_n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{S_n}$  where  $S_n = b_1 + b_2 + \cdots + b_n$ .

Solution: (1)  $a_1 a_2 = r$  when  $n = 1$ . Since  $\{a_n a_{n+1}\}$  is a geometric sequence with the common ratio  $q$ . Then  $a_n a_{n+1} = r \cdot q^{n-1}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).  $a_2 a_3 = rq$  when  $n = 2$ . Thus  $a_3 = q$ .  $a_3 a_4 = rq^2$  when  $n = 3$ . Thus  $a_4 = rq$ .  $a_4 a_5 = rq^3$  when  $n = 4$ . Thus  $a_5 = q^2 \cdots$ . Hence the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is  $1, r, q, rq, q^2, rq^2, \dots, q^{n-1}, rq^{n-1}, \dots$ . Since  $a_n a_{n+1} + a_{n+1} a_{n+2} > a_{n+2} a_{n+3}$ , then  $rq^{n-1} + rq^n > rq^{n+1}$ . Therefore  $0 < q < \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

(2) By applying  $b_n = a_{2n-1} + a_{2n}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ) and (1), we have  $b_1 = 1+r$ ,  $b_2 = (1+r)q$ ,  $b_3 = (1+r)q^2, \dots, b_n = (1+r)q^{n-1}$ . Thus  $S_n = b_1 + b_2 + \cdots + b_n = (1+r)(1+q+q^2+\cdots+q^{n-1}) = (1+r)\frac{1-q^n}{1-q}$ .

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{S_n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1-q}{(1+r)(1-q^n)} = \begin{cases} (1+r)n, & q = 1, n \in N^*; \\ \frac{1-q}{1+r}, & 0 < q < 1; \\ 0, & q > 1. \end{cases}$$

5.67 ★★★ Given the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $a_{n+1} = \frac{a_n^2 + 3}{2a_n}$ . The sequence  $\{b_n\}$  satisfies  $b_n = 3 - a_n^2$ , ( $n \in N$ ). Show (1)  $b_n < 0$ . (2)  $|\frac{b_{n+1}}{b_n}| < \frac{1}{2}$ . (3)  $|b_n| < (\frac{1}{2})^{n-1}$ , ( $n \geq 2$ ).

Proof: (1) From the given condition, we know that  $\{a_n\}$  is a positive sequence, and  $a_n = \frac{a_{n-1}^2 + 3}{2a_{n-1}} = \frac{a_{n-1}}{2} + \frac{3}{2a_{n-1}} > 2\sqrt{\frac{a_{n-1}}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2a_{n-1}}} = \sqrt{3}$ . Thus  $b_n = 3 - a_n^2 < 3 - (\sqrt{3})^2 = 0$ . This means  $b_n < 0$ .

$$(2) |\frac{b_{n+1}}{b_n}| - \frac{1}{2} = \left| \frac{3 - a_{n+1}^2}{3 - a_n^2} \right| - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3 - (\frac{a_n^2 + 3}{2a_n})^2}{3 - a_n^2} - \frac{1}{2} = -\frac{a_n^2 + 3}{4a_n^2} < 0. \text{ Thus } |\frac{b_{n+1}}{b_n}| < \frac{1}{2}.$$

$$(3) |b_n| = |b_1| \cdot \left| \frac{b_2}{b_1} \right| \cdot \left| \frac{b_3}{b_2} \right| \cdots \left| \frac{b_n}{b_{n-1}} \right| < |-1| \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdots \frac{1}{2} = (\frac{1}{2})^{n-1}, (n \geq 2).$$

5.68 ★★★★ Let the first  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{a_n\}$  be  $S_n$ , and  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $S_{n+1} = 4a_n + 2$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

(1) Let  $b_n = a_{n+1} - 2a_n$ , show  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence.

(2) Let  $c_n = \frac{a_n}{2^n}$ , show  $\{c_n\}$  is a geometric sequence.

(3) Calculate  $S_n = a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n$ .

(1) Proof: Since  $a_{n+1} = S_{n+1} - S_n = 4a_n - 4a_{n-1}$ , then  $a_{n+1} - 2a_n = 2(a_n - 2a_{n-1})$ . Since  $b_n = a_{n+1} - 2a_n$ , then  $b_n = 2b_{n-1}$ , ( $n \geq 2$ ). On the other hand,  $b_1 = a_2 - 2a_1 = S_2 - 3a_1 = (4a_1 + 2) - 3a_1 = a_1 + 2 = 3$ ,  $q = \frac{b_n}{b_{n-1}} = 2$ . Thus  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term 3 and the common ratio 2.

(2) Proof: By Applying (1), we have  $b_n = 3 \cdot 2^{n-1}$ , then  $a_{n+1} - 2a_n = 3 \cdot 2^{n-1}$ . Since  $c_n = \frac{a_n}{2^n}$ , then  $c_{n+1} - c_n = \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}(a_{n+1} - 2a_n) = \frac{1}{2^{n+1}} \cdot 3 \cdot 2^{n-1} = \frac{3}{4}$ , and  $c_1 = \frac{a_1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$ . Thus  $\{c_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the common ratio is  $\frac{3}{4}$ .

(3) Solution: By Applying (2), we have  $c_n = \frac{1}{2} + (n-1) \cdot \frac{3}{4} = \frac{3}{4}n - \frac{1}{4}$ . Then  $a_n = 2^n \cdot c_n = 2^{n-2}(3n-1)$ . When  $n \geq 2$ , then  $S_n = 4a_{n-1} + 2 = 4 \times 2^{n-3}(3n-4) + 2 = 2^{n-1}(3n-4) + 2$ .

When  $n = 1$ , then  $S_1 = a_1 = 1$  which also satisfies the above equation. Therefore  $S_n = 2^{n-1}(3n-4) + 2$  always holds for all  $n \in N^*$ .

**5.69 ★★★★★** The adjacent terms of  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_n$  and  $a_{n+1}$ , are the roots of the equation  $x^2 - c_n x + (\frac{1}{3})^n = 0$ , and  $a_1 = 2$ . Find the sum of infinite sequence  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n, \dots$ .

Solution: By applying the Vieta's theorem, we have  $c_n = a_n + a_{n+1}$ ,  $a_n \cdot a_{n+1} = (\frac{1}{3})^n$  ①. Then  $a_{n+1} \cdot a_{n+2} = (\frac{1}{3})^{n+1}$  ②. Dividing the equation ② by the equation ①, we have  $\frac{a_{n+2}}{a_n} = \frac{1}{3} \Rightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_{2k+1} + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_{2k} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_{2k+1} = 2 \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_{2k+1} + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_{2k} - a_1$ .

Since  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $a_1 a_2 = \frac{1}{3}$ , then  $a_2 = \frac{1}{6}$ . By applying  $\frac{a_{n+2}}{a_n} = \frac{1}{3}$  and the formula for the

sum of infinite decreasing geometric sequence, we have  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n = 2 \cdot \frac{2}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} + 2 \cdot \frac{\frac{1}{6}}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} - 2 =$

$\frac{9}{2}$ .

**5.70 ★★★★** Given  $\{a_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence,  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence, and  $a_1 = b_2$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$ ,  $a_1 \neq a_2$ ,  $a_n > 0$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . Show  $a_n < b_n$  when  $n > 2$ .

Proof: Let the common difference be  $d$  and the common ratio be  $q$ . Since  $a_2 = a_1 + d$ ,  $b_2 = b_1 q = a_1 q$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$ , we have  $a_1 + d = a_1 q$ . Then  $q = 1 + \frac{d}{a_1}$ .

On the other hand,  $a_n > 0$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , then  $d > 0$ . Thus  $q > 1$ . Hence  $a_n - b_n = a_1 + (n-1)d - a_1 q^{n-1} = a_1(1 - q^{n-1}) + (n-1)d = a_1(1-q)(1+q+\dots+q^{n-2}) + (n-1)d < a_1(1-q)(n-1) + (n-1)d = (n-1)[a_1(1-q) + d] = (n-1)(a_2 - b_2) = 0$ .

Therefore  $a_n < b_n$  when  $n > 2$ .

**5.71 ★★★★** For an arbitrary real number sequence  $A = (a_1, a_2, \dots)$ , we define  $\Delta A$  as the sequence  $A = (a_2 - a_1, a_3 - a_2, \dots)$ . Its  $n$ th term is  $a_{n+1} - a_n$ . Assume the differences between the adjacent two terms are all 1, and  $a_{19} = a_{92} = 0$ . Evaluate  $a_1$ .

Solution 1: Let  $a_{n+1} - a_n = b_n$ , then  $b_n - b_{n-1} = 1$ . Thus  $\{b_n\}$  is an arithmetic sequence and its common difference is 1. Hence  $b_n = b_1 + n - 1$ . This means  $a_{n+1} - a_n = b_1 + n - 1$ .

We obtain  $a_n = a_1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (b_1 + k - 1) = a_1 + (n-1)b_1 + \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2}$ . Since  $b_1 = a_2 - a_1$ ,

$$\text{then } a_n = (n-1)a_2 - (n-2)a_1 + \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{2}.$$

$$a_{19} = 0 \text{ when } n = 19. \text{ Then } 18a_2 - 17a_1 = -\frac{18 \times 17}{2} \quad ①.$$

$$a_{92} = 0 \text{ when } n = 92. \text{ Then } 91a_2 - 90a_1 = -\frac{91 \times 90}{2} \quad ②.$$

Solving the equation ① and the equation ② to generate  $a_1 = 819$ .

Solution 2: Let the first term of the sequence  $\Delta A$  be  $d$ . Then the sequence  $\Delta A$  is  $(d, d+1, d+2, \dots)$ . Its  $n$ th term is  $d + (n-1)$ . Thus the  $n$ th term of sequence  $A$  is

$$a_n = a_1 + \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} (a_{k+1} - a_k) = a_1 + d + (d+1) + \dots + (d+n-2) = a_1 + (n-1)d + \frac{1}{2}(n-1)(n-2).$$

This shows that  $a_n$  is a quadratic polynomial with respect to  $n$ , and the coefficient of its first term is  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Since  $a_{19} = a_{92} = 0$ , then  $a_n = \frac{1}{2}(n-19)(n-92)$ . Therefore

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{2}(1-19)(1-92) = 819.$$

Solution 3: From the given condition, we obtain that  $\{a_n\}$  is a second order arithmetic sequence. Thus its general term is a quadratic polynomial with respect to  $n$ . Since  $a_{19} = a_{92} = 0$ , we let  $a_n = A(n-19)(n-92)$  where  $A$  is an undetermined coefficient. Since  $a_3 - 2a_2 + a_1 = 1$ , then  $A[(3-19)(3-92) - 2(2-19)(2-92) + (1-19)(1-92)] = 1$ .

$$\text{By solving the equation, we have } A = \frac{1}{2}. \text{ Therefore } a_1 = \frac{1}{2}(1-19)(1-92) = 819.$$

**5.72 ★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n = n^2 a_n$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ). Find the general term of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and  $S_{100}$ .

Solution: From the given condition  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n = n^2 a_n$ , we have  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{n-1} = (n-1)^2 a_{n-1}$  by substituting  $n$  for  $n-1$ . Subtracting the second equation from the first one, we have  $a_n + (n-1)^2 a_{n-1} = n^2 a_n$ . This means  $a_n = \frac{n-1}{n+1} a_{n-1} = \frac{n-1}{n+1} \frac{n-2}{n} a_{n-2} = \frac{n-1}{n+1} \frac{n-2}{n} \frac{n-3}{n-1} a_{n-3} = \dots = \frac{n-1}{n+1} \frac{n-2}{n} \frac{n-3}{n-1} \dots \frac{1}{3} a_1 = \frac{2}{n(n+1)}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

$$S_{100} = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{100} = 100^2 \frac{2}{100(100+1)} = \frac{200}{101}.$$

5.73 ★★★ Given the  $n$ th partial sum of sequence  $\{a_n\}$  as  $S_n = 1 + ka_n$ ,  $k$  is a constant and  $k \neq 1$ . Find  $a_n$  and  $S_n$ .

Solution: Since  $S_n = 1 + ka_n$ , we have  $S_1 = a_1 = 1 + ka_1$ , then  $a_1 = \frac{1}{1-k}$ ,  $a_2 = S_2 - S_1 = 1 + ka_2 - a_1$ . This means  $(1-k)a_2 = 1 - \frac{1}{1-k} = -\frac{k}{1-k}$ . Thus  $a_2 = -\frac{k}{(1-k)^2}$ . Similarly,  $a_3 = \frac{k^2}{(1-k)^3}, \dots, a_{n-1} = (-1)^{n-2} \frac{k^{n-2}}{(1-k)^{n-1}}$ ,  $a_n = (-1)^{n-1} \frac{k^{n-1}}{(1-k)^n}$ . Thus  $\frac{a_2}{a_1} = -\frac{k}{(1-k)^2}/\frac{1}{1-k} = -\frac{k}{1-k}$ ,  $\frac{a_3}{a_2} = \frac{k^2}{(1-k)^3}/-\frac{k}{(1-k)^2} = -\frac{k}{1-k}, \dots, \frac{a_n}{a_{n-1}} = -\frac{k}{1-k}$ . Hence  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with  $a_1 = \frac{1}{1-k}$  and  $q = -\frac{k}{1-k}$ . Therefore  $a_n = (-1)^{n-1} \frac{k^{n-1}}{(1-k)^n}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ),  $S_n = 1 + ka_n = 1 + k(-1)^{n-1} \frac{k^{n-1}}{(1-k)^n} = 1 + (-1)^{n-1} \left(\frac{k}{1-k}\right)^n$ , ( $k \neq 1, n \in N^*$ ).

5.74 ★★★★ The three sides of  $\triangle ABC$  form an arithmetic sequence, and the difference between the largest angle and the smallest angle is  $90^\circ$ . Show the ratio of the three sides is  $(\sqrt{7} + 1) : \sqrt{7} : (\sqrt{7} - 1)$ .

**e-learning for kids**

- The number 1 MOOC for Primary Education
- Free Digital Learning for Children 5-12
- 15 Million Children Reached

**About e-Learning for Kids** Established in 2004, e-Learning for Kids is a global nonprofit foundation dedicated to fun and free learning on the Internet for children ages 5 - 12 with courses in math, science, language arts, computers, health and environmental skills. Since 2005, more than 15 million children in over 190 countries have benefitted from eLessons provided by EFK! An all-volunteer staff consists of education and e-learning experts and business professionals from around the world committed to making difference. eLearning for Kids is actively seeking funding, volunteers, sponsors and courseware developers; get involved! For more information, please visit [www.e-learningforkids.org](http://www.e-learningforkids.org).

Proof: Let the side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$  be  $a-d, a, a+d$ , the smallest angle is  $\alpha$ , the largest angle is  $90^\circ + \alpha$ . From the given condition, we have  $\frac{a-d}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{a+d}{\sin(90^\circ + \alpha)} = \frac{a}{\sin(90^\circ - 2\alpha)} \Rightarrow \frac{a-d+a+d}{\sin \alpha + \sin(90^\circ + \alpha)} = \frac{a}{\sin(90^\circ - 2\alpha)} \Rightarrow \frac{2a}{\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha} = \frac{a}{\cos 2\alpha} \Rightarrow 2\cos 2\alpha = \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha \Rightarrow 2(\cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha) = \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha \Rightarrow \cos \alpha - \sin \alpha = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \sqrt{2}\sin(45^\circ - \alpha) = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \sin(45^\circ - \alpha) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$ . Then  $\cos(45^\circ - \alpha) = \sqrt{1 - (\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4})^2} = \frac{\sqrt{14}}{4}$ . Thus  $\sin \alpha = \sin[45^\circ - (45^\circ - \alpha)] = \sin 45^\circ \cos(45^\circ - \alpha) - \cos 45^\circ \sin(45^\circ - \alpha) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \frac{\sqrt{14}}{4} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{7} - 1}{4}$ ,  $\sin(90^\circ + \alpha) = \cos \alpha = \cos[45^\circ - (45^\circ - \alpha)] = \cos 45^\circ \cos(45^\circ - \alpha) + \sin 45^\circ \sin(45^\circ - \alpha) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \frac{\sqrt{14}}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{7} + 1}{4}$ .  $\sin(90^\circ - 2\alpha) = \cos 2\alpha = \cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = (\frac{\sqrt{7} + 1}{4})^2 - (\frac{\sqrt{7} - 1}{4})^2 = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}$ . As a conclusion, the ratio of the three sides is  $(\sqrt{7} + 1) : \sqrt{7} : (\sqrt{7} - 1)$ .

**5.75 ★★★★★** Given the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 5$ ,  $a_{n+1} = \frac{5a_n + 6}{a_n + 4}$ . Find the general term  $a_n$ .

Solution: Let  $x = \frac{5x + 6}{x + 4}$  which means  $x^2 - x - 6 = 0$ , then the two fixed points of  $f(x) = \frac{5x + 6}{x + 4}$  are  $x = 3, x = -2$ . Hence  $a_{n+1} - 3 = \frac{5a_n + 6}{a_n + 4} - 3 = \frac{2(a_n - 3)}{a_n + 4}$  ①,  $a_{n+1} + 2 = \frac{5a_n + 6}{a_n + 4} + 2 = \frac{7(a_n + 2)}{a_n + 4}$  ②. By ① ÷ ②, then  $\frac{a_{n+1} - 3}{a_{n+1} + 2} = \frac{2}{7}(\frac{a_n - 3}{a_n + 2})$ . Hence  $\{\frac{a_n - 3}{a_n + 2}\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term  $\frac{a_1 - 3}{a_1 + 2} = \frac{2}{7}$  and the common ratio  $\frac{2}{7} \Rightarrow \frac{a_n - 3}{a_n + 2} = \frac{2}{7}(\frac{2}{7})^{n-1} = (\frac{2}{7})^n$ . Therefore  $a_n = \frac{3 \cdot 7^n + 2^{n+1}}{7^n - 2^n}$ .

**5.76 ★★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $a_{n+1} = \frac{a_n}{2} + \frac{1}{a_n}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). Show  $\sqrt{2} < a_n < \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{n}$ .

Proof: (1)  $\sqrt{2} < a_1 = 2 < \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{1} = \sqrt{2} + 1$  when  $n = 1$ . Thus  $p(1)$  holds.

(2) Assume  $p(k)$  holds when  $n = k$ . This means  $\sqrt{2} < a_k < \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{k}$ .

When  $n = k + 1$ , then  $a_{k+1} = \frac{a_k}{2} + \frac{1}{a_k} \geq 2\sqrt{\frac{a_k}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{a_k}} = \sqrt{2}$ , and the equation holds if and only if  $\frac{a_k}{2} = \frac{1}{a_k}$  which means  $a_k = \sqrt{2}$ . Since  $a_k > \sqrt{2}$ , then equal sign cannot hold for the above formula. Then  $a_{k+1} > \sqrt{2}$ . Since  $a_{k+1} = \frac{a_k}{2} + \frac{1}{a_k} < \frac{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{k}}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{2k} \leq \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{k+1}$ . Hence  $p(k + 1)$  holds when  $n = k + 1$ .  
 $\sqrt{2} < a_n < \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{n}$  always holds for all  $n \in N^*$ .

**5.77 ★★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $3a_{n+1} + a_n = 4$  ( $n \geq 1$ ),  $a_1 = 9$ , the  $n$ th partial sum is  $S_n$  and  $|S_n - n - 6| < \frac{1}{125}$ . Find the smallest positive integer number  $n$ .

Solution: By applying the recurrence relation, we have  $3(a_{n+1} - 1) = -(a_n - 1)$  where  $n = 1$  is a root of equation  $3n^2 + n = 4$ . Let  $b_n = a_n - 1$ ,  $b_{n+1} = a_{n+1} - 1$ , then  $b_{n+1} = -\frac{1}{3}b_n$ ,  $b_1 = a_1 - 1 = 8$ . Hence  $\{b_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term 8 and the common ratio  $-\frac{1}{3}$ . Therefore  $b_n = 8(-\frac{1}{3})^{n-1}$ .  $S_n - n = (a_1 - 1) + (a_2 - 1) + \dots + (a_n - 1) = b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n = \frac{8 \cdot [1 - (-\frac{1}{3})^n]}{1 - (-\frac{1}{3})} = 6 - 6 \cdot (-\frac{1}{3})^n$ . Since  $|S_n - n - 6| < \frac{1}{125} \Rightarrow 2 \cdot 3^{1-n} < \frac{1}{125} \Rightarrow 3^{n-1} > 250$ . Therefore the smallest positive integer number such that the inequality holds is  $n = 7$ .

**5.78 ★★★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = 2$ ,  $a_{n+2} = 4a_{n+1} - 3a_n + 2$ , find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ .

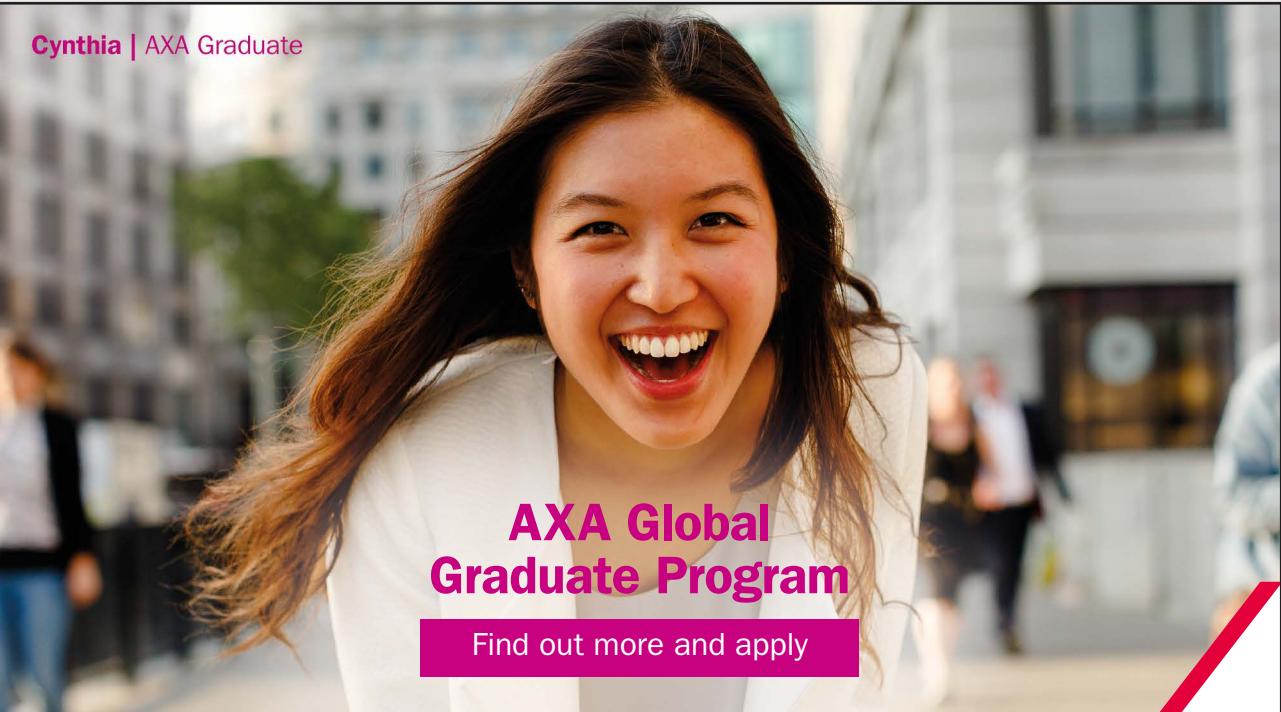
Solution: By applying the recurrence relation, we have  $a_{n+2} - a_{n+1} = 3(a_{n+1} - a_n) + 2$ . Let  $a_{n+1} - a_n = c_n$ , then  $c_1 = 1$ ,  $c_{n+1} = 3c_n + 2$ ,  $\frac{c_{n+1}}{3^n} = \frac{c_n}{3^{n-1}} + 2(\frac{1}{3})^n = \frac{c_n}{3^{n-1}} + 2 \times \frac{1}{3} \times (\frac{1}{3})^{n-1}$ . Thus  $\frac{c_n}{3^{n-1}} = c_1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} 2 \times (\frac{1}{3})^k = 1 + 2 \times (\frac{1}{3}) \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{3})^{n-1}}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} = 2 - (\frac{1}{3})^{n-1}$ . Then  $c_n = 2 \times 3^{n-1} - 1$ ,  $a_{n+1} = a_n + 2 \cdot 3^{n-1} - 1$ . Therefore  $a_n = a_1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (2 \cdot 3^{k-1} - 1) = 1 + 2 \times \frac{3^{n-1} - 1}{2} - (n - 1) = 3^{n-1} - n + 1$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.79 ★★★★ Let the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfy  $(2 - a_n) \cdot a_{n+1} = 1, n \geq 1$ . Show  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 1$ .

Proof: From the given condition, we have  $a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2 - a_n}$ , then  $a_n = \frac{1}{2 - a_{n-1}}$ . Subtracting both sides by 1 to obtain  $a_n - 1 = \frac{a_{n-1} - 1}{2 - a_{n-1}}$ . Thus  $\frac{1}{a_n - 1} = -1 + \frac{1}{a_{n-1} - 1} = -2 + \frac{1}{a_{n-2} - 1} = \dots = -(n-1) + \frac{1}{a_1 - 1} = \frac{1 - (n-1)(a_1 - 1)}{a_1 - 1}$ . Hence  $a_n = \frac{a_1 - 1}{1 - (n-1)(a_1 - 1)} + 1$ . Therefore  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} [\frac{a_1 - 1}{1 - (n-1)(a_1 - 1)} + 1] = 1$ .

5.80 ★★★★★ If  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  are both positive infinite sequences,  $a_1 = a$ ,  $b_1 = b$ , and  $a_n, b_n, a_{n+1}$  are arithmetic,  $b_n, a_{n+1}, b_{n+1}$  are geometric. (1) Show  $\{\sqrt{b_n}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence. (2) Find the general term of  $\{b_n\}$ . (3) Compare  $a_n$  and  $b_n$ .

(1) Proof: From the given condition, we have  $a_{n+1}^2 = b_n b_{n+1}$ ,  $a_n^2 = b_{n-1} b_n$ . Thus  $a_n + a_{n+1} = \sqrt{b_n \cdot b_{n-1}} + \sqrt{b_n \cdot b_{n+1}} = 2b_n$ . Divide the both sides by  $\sqrt{b_n}$ , then  $\sqrt{b_{n-1}} + \sqrt{b_{n+1}} = 2\sqrt{b_n}$ . Hence  $\{\sqrt{b_n}\}$  is an arithmetic sequence.



**Cynthia | AXA Graduate**

**AXA Global Graduate Program**

[Find out more and apply](#)

**redefining / standards** 

(2) Solution: Since  $\sqrt{b_1} = \sqrt{b}$ ,  $a_2^2 = b_1 b_2$  and  $a_1 + a_2 = 2b_1$ , we have  $b_2 = \frac{(2b-a)^2}{b}$ . On the other hand, since  $\{b_n\}$  is a positive sequence and  $a_n < b_n$ , then  $\sqrt{b_2} = \frac{2b-a}{\sqrt{b}}$ . Thus  $d = \sqrt{b_2} - \sqrt{b_1} = \frac{2b-a}{\sqrt{b}} - \sqrt{b} = \frac{b-a}{\sqrt{b}} > 0$ ,  $\sqrt{b_3} = \sqrt{b_1} + (3-1)\frac{b-a}{\sqrt{b}} = \frac{3b-2a}{\sqrt{b}}$  (all terms are positive)  $\dots$ ,  $\sqrt{b_n} = \frac{nb-(n-1)a}{\sqrt{b}}$ . Thus  $b_n = \frac{[nb-(n-1)a]^2}{b}$ .

(3) Solution: Since  $\{\sqrt{b_n}\}$  is an increasing sequence and  $a_n^2 = b_{n-1}b_n$ , then  $b_{n-1} < a_n < b_n$  which means  $a_n < b_n$ .

5.81 ★★★★★ Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 > 0$ ,  $a_{n+1} = \sqrt{\frac{3+a_n}{2}}$ . (1) Find the range of  $a_1$  such that  $a_{n+1} > a_n$  for any positive number  $n$ . (2) If  $a_1 = 4$ ,  $b_n = |a_{n+1} - a_n|$  ( $n \in N^*$ ), and let the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$  be  $S_n$ , show  $S_n < \frac{5}{2}$ .

(1) Solution:  $a_{n+1} - a_n = \sqrt{\frac{3+a_n}{2}} - \sqrt{\frac{3+a_{n-1}}{2}} = \frac{a_n - a_{n-1}}{2(\sqrt{\frac{3+a_n}{2}} + \sqrt{\frac{3+a_{n-1}}{2}})}$  when  $n \geq 2$ .

Since the denominator is positive, then  $a_{n+1} - a_n > 0 \Leftrightarrow a_n - a_{n-1} > 0 \Leftrightarrow \dots \Leftrightarrow a_2 - a_1 = \sqrt{\frac{3+a_1}{2}} - a_1 > 0$ , and  $a_1 > 0$ . Thus  $0 < a_1 < \frac{3}{2}$ . Hence the range of  $a_1$  is  $a_1 \in (0, \frac{3}{2})$ .

(2) Proof: By applying the method of (1), we obtain that  $a_{n+1} - a_n < 0$  holds for any positive  $n$  when  $a_1 > \frac{3}{2}$ . Since  $a_1 = 4$ ,  $a_{n+1} - a_n < 0$ , then  $b_n = |a_{n+1} - a_n| = a_n - a_{n+1}$ . Hence  $S_n = b_1 + b_2 + \dots + b_n = (a_1 - a_2) + (a_2 - a_3) + \dots + (a_n - a_{n+1}) = 4 - a_{n+1}$ . Additionally, since  $a_{n+2} < a_{n+1}$  which means  $\sqrt{\frac{3+a_{n+1}}{2}} < a_{n+1}$ , then  $a_{n+1} > \frac{3}{2}$ . Therefore  $S_n < 4 - \frac{3}{2} = \frac{5}{2}$ .

5.82 ★★★★★ Let the positive sequence  $a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, \dots$  satisfy  $\sqrt{a_n a_{n-2}} - \sqrt{a_{n-1} a_{n-2}} = 2a_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ), and  $a_0 = a_1 = 1$ . Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution: The given equation leads to  $\sqrt{a_n a_{n-2}} - 2a_{n-1} = \sqrt{a_{n-1} a_{n-2}}$ . Dividing both sides by  $\sqrt{a_{n-1} a_{n-2}}$  to obtain  $\sqrt{\frac{a_n}{a_{n-1}}} - 2\sqrt{\frac{a_{n-1}}{a_{n-2}}} = 1$  ①. Thus  $\sqrt{\frac{a_{n-1}}{a_{n-2}}} - 2\sqrt{\frac{a_{n-2}}{a_{n-3}}} = 1$  ②,  $\dots$ ,  $\sqrt{\frac{a_2}{a_1}} - 2\sqrt{\frac{a_1}{a_0}} = 1$  ③. By applying ①  $\times 1 + ② \times 2 + ③ \times 2^2 + \dots + ③ \times 2^{n-2}$ , we have  $\sqrt{\frac{a_n}{a_{n-1}}} - 2^{n-1}\sqrt{\frac{a_1}{a_0}} = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \dots + 2^{n-2}$ . This means  $\sqrt{\frac{a_n}{a_{n-1}}} = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \dots + 2^{n-2} + 2^{n-1} = 2^n - 1$ . Hence  $a_n = (2^n - 1)^2 a_{n-1} = (2^n - 1)^2 (2^{n-1} - 1)^2 a_{n-2} = \dots = \prod_{k=1}^n (2^k - 1)^2$ .

As a conclusion,

$$a_n = \begin{cases} 1, & n = 0; \\ \prod_{k=1}^n (2^k - 1)^2, & n \in N^*. \end{cases}$$

5.83 ★★★★★ Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ , the  $n$ th partial sum is  $S_n$ .  $a_n$  is the arithmetic mean of  $3S_n - 4$  and  $2 - \frac{5}{2}S_{n-1}$  for any  $n \in N^*$ . (1) Show  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence, and find the general term  $a_n$ . (2) Show  $\frac{1}{2}(\log_2 S_n + \log_2 S_{n+2}) < \log_2 S_{n+1}$ . (3) If  $b_n = \frac{4}{a_n} - 1$ ,  $c_n = \log_2(\frac{4}{a_n})^2$ . Let  $T_n$  is the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{b_n\}$ , and  $R_n$  is the  $n$ th partial sum of  $\{c_n\}$ . Does there exist a positive integer  $n$  such that  $T_n > R_n$ . If yes, find its range. If no, please explain the reason.

(1) Proof:  $2a_n = 3S_n - 4 + 2 - \frac{5}{2}S_{n-1}$  when  $n \geq 2$  which leads to  $2(S_n - S_{n-1}) = 3S_n - 2 - \frac{5}{2}S_{n-1}$ . Then  $S_n = \frac{1}{2}S_{n-1} + 2$ ,  $S_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}S_n + 2$ . Since  $a_1 = 2$ , then  $2 + a_2 = \frac{1}{2} \times 2 + 2$ .

Thus  $a_2 = 1$ . Hence  $\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = \frac{S_{n+1} - S_n}{S_n - S_{n-1}} = \frac{(\frac{1}{2}S_n + 2) - (\frac{1}{2}S_{n-1} + 2)}{S_n - S_{n-1}} = \frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $\frac{a_2}{a_1} = \frac{1}{2}$ . After all,  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with the common ratio  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

I joined MITAS because  
I wanted **real responsibility**

The Graduate Programme  
for Engineers and Geoscientists  
[www.discovermitas.com](http://www.discovermitas.com)



**Month 16**

I was a construction supervisor in the North Sea advising and helping foremen solve problems

Real work  
International opportunities  
Three work placements





(2) Proof: From (1), we have  $S_n = \frac{2(1 - \frac{1}{2^n})}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = 4 - (\frac{1}{2})^{n-2}$ . To show  $\frac{1}{2}(\log_2 S_n + \log_2 S_{n+2}) < \log_2 S_{n+1}$ , we only need to show  $S_n S_{n+2} < S_{n+1}^2$ . Since  $S_n S_{n+2} = [4 - (\frac{1}{2})^{n-2}][4 - (\frac{1}{2})^n] = 16 - 5(\frac{1}{2})^{n-2} + (\frac{1}{2})^{2n-2}$ ,  $S_{n+1}^2 = [4 - (\frac{1}{2})^{n-1}]^2 = 16 - 4(\frac{1}{2})^{n-2} + (\frac{1}{2})^{2n-2}$ , then  $S_n S_{n+2} < S_{n+1}^2$ . Therefore  $\frac{1}{2}(\log_2 S_n + \log_2 S_{n+2}) < \log_2 S_{n+1}$ .

(3) Proof: From the given condition and (1), we have  $b_n = \frac{4}{a_n} - 1 = \frac{4}{\frac{1}{2^{n-2}}} - 1 = 2^n - 1$ ,  $c_n = \log_2(\frac{4}{a_n})^2 = \log_2(2^n)^2 = 2n$ .  $T_n = 2(1 + 2 + 2^2 + \dots + 2^{n-1}) - n = 2(2^n - 1) - n = 2^{n+1} - n - 2$ .  $R_n = 2(1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + n) = 2 \times \frac{n(n+1)}{2} = n^2 + n$ .  $T_n < R_n$  when  $n = 1, 2, 3$ .  $T_n > R_n$  when  $n = 4, 5$  which means  $2^{n+1} > n^2 + 2n + 2$ . When  $n \geq 6$ , then  $2^{n+1} = (1+1)^{n+1} = c_{n+1}^0 + c_{n+1}^1 + c_{n+1}^2 + \dots + c_{n+1}^{n+1} > 2(c_{n+1}^0 + c_{n+1}^1 + c_{n+1}^2) = n^2 + 3n + 4 > n^2 + 2n + 2$ . Thus  $T_n > R_n$  when  $n \geq 4$ .

**5.84 ★★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_k > 0$  ( $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ), and  $S_n = \frac{1}{2}(a_n + \frac{1}{a_n})$ . Find  $a_n$  and  $S_n$ .

Solution: Since  $a_1 = S_1 = \frac{1}{2}(a_1 + \frac{1}{a_1})$ , then  $a_1 = 1$ . Since  $a_2 = S_2 - S_1 = \frac{1}{2}(a_2 + \frac{1}{a_2}) - 1$ , then  $a_2 = -1 + \sqrt{2}$ ,  $S_2 = a_2 + S_1 = \sqrt{2}$ . Since  $a_3 = S_3 - S_2 = \frac{1}{2}(a_3 + \frac{1}{a_3}) - \sqrt{2}$ , then  $a_3 = -\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}$ ,  $S_3 = a_3 + S_2 = \sqrt{3}, \dots$ . We have the conjecture:  $a_n = -\sqrt{n-1} + \sqrt{n}$ ,  $S_n = \sqrt{n}$ , ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Now we show the conjecture using mathematical induction.

Proof: (1) When  $n = 1$ , then  $a_1 = \sqrt{1} = S_1$ .  $p(1)$  is correct.

(2) Suppose  $p(k)$  is correct when  $n = k$ . This means  $a_k = -\sqrt{k-1} + \sqrt{k}$  and  $S_k = \sqrt{k}$  both hold. Then when  $n = k+1$ , we have  $a_{k+1} = S_{k+1} - S_k = \frac{1}{2}(a_{k+1} + \frac{1}{a_{k+1}}) - \sqrt{k} \Rightarrow 2a_{k+1} = a_{k+1} + \frac{1}{a_{k+1}} - 2\sqrt{k} \Rightarrow a_{k+1}^2 + 2\sqrt{k}a_{k+1} - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow (a_{k+1} + \sqrt{k})^2 = k+1$ . Since  $a_{k+1} > 0$ , then  $a_{k+1} = -\sqrt{k} + \sqrt{k+1}$ . Thus  $S_{k+1} = a_{k+1} + S_k = (-\sqrt{k} + \sqrt{k+1}) + \sqrt{k} = \sqrt{k+1}$ . Hence  $p(k+1)$  is correct when  $n = k+1$ . Therefore  $a_n = -\sqrt{n-1} + \sqrt{n}$  and  $S_n = \sqrt{n}$  both hold for any  $n \in N^*$ .

**5.85 ★★★★★** Given sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 0$ ,  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + n^2$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). Find the  $n$ th partial sum  $S_n$  of  $\{a_n\}$ .

Solution:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + n^2$  implies  $a_{n+1} - 2a_n = n^2$ .

Since  $S_n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n$ , then  $2S_n = 2a_1 + 2a_2 + \dots + 2a_n$ . Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we have  $-S_n = a_1 + (a_2 - 2a_1) + (a_3 - 2a_2) + \dots + (a_n - 2a_{n-1}) - 2a_n$ . This means  $-S_n = 0 + 1^2 + 2^2 + \dots + (n-1)^2 - 2a_n$ .

Thus  $S_n = 2a_n - \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ) (\*). Let  $a_n = an^2 + bn + c$ , then  $a(n+1)^2 + b(n+1) + c = 2(an^2 + bn + c) + n^2$ . Simplifying the equation to generate  $(a+1)n^2 + (b-2a)n - [(a+b)-c] = 0$ . Thus  $a = -1, b = -2, c = -3$ . Hence  $a_{n+1} + [(n+1)^2 + 2(n+1) + 3] = 2(a_n + n^2 + 2n + 3) \Rightarrow \frac{a_{n+1} + [(n+1)^2 + 2(n+1) + 3]}{a_n + n^2 + 2n + 3} = 2$ .  $a_1 + 1^2 + 2 \times 1 + 3 = 6$  when  $n = 1$ . Therefore  $\{a_n + n^2 + 2n + 3\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term 6 and the common ratio 2. Then  $a_n + n^2 + 2n + 3 = 6 \times 2^{n-1}$ ,  $2a_n = 6 \times 2^n - 2 \times n^2 - 4n - 6$ . By substituting it into (\*), we have  $S_n = 6 \times 2^n - 2n^2 - 4n - 6 - \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

5.86 ★★★★★ Let the function  $f_1(x) = \frac{2}{1+x}$ . Define  $f_{n+1}(x) = f_1[f_n(x)]$ , and  $a_n = \frac{f_n(0) - 1}{f_n(0) + 2}$ ,  $n \in N^*$ . (1) Find the general term of  $\{a_n\}$ . (2) If  $T_{2n} = a_1 + 2a_2 + \dots + 2na_{2n}$ ,  $Q_n = \frac{4n^2+n}{4n^2+4n+1}$ ,  $n \in N^*$ . Compare  $9T_{2n}$  and  $Q_n$ .

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $f_1(0) = 2$ ,  $a_1 = \frac{2-1}{2+2} = \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $f_{n+1}(0) = f_1[f_n(0)] = \frac{2}{1+f_n(0)}$ . Thus  $a_{n+1} = \frac{f_{n+1}(0) - 1}{f_{n+1}(0) + 2} = \frac{\frac{2}{1+f_n(0)} - 1}{\frac{2}{1+f_n(0)} + 2} = \frac{1-f_n(0)}{4+2f_n(0)} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{f_n(0) - 1}{f_n(0) + 2} = -\frac{1}{2}a_n$ . This means  $\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Thus  $\{a_n\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term  $\frac{1}{4}$  and the common ratio  $-\frac{1}{2}$ , and  $a_n = \frac{1}{4}(-\frac{1}{2})^{n-1}$ ,  $n \in N^*$ .  
(2)  $T_{2n} = a_1 + 2a_2 + \dots + (2n-1)a_{2n-1} + 2na_{2n}$  ①. Subtracting both sides of ① by  $-\frac{1}{2}$  to obtain  $-\frac{1}{2}T_{2n} = (-\frac{1}{2})a_1 + (-\frac{1}{2})2a_2 + \dots + (-\frac{1}{2})(2n-1)a_{2n-1} + (-\frac{1}{2})2na_{2n} = a_2 + 2a_3 + \dots + (2n-1)a_{2n} - na_{2n}$  ②. Using ① - ②, we have  $\frac{3}{2}T_{2n} = a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots + a_{2n} + na_{2n} = \frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{2}}[1 - (-\frac{1}{2})^{2n}] + n\frac{1}{4}(-\frac{1}{2})^{2n-1} = \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{6}(-\frac{1}{2})^{2n} + \frac{n}{4}(-\frac{1}{2})^{2n-1}$ . Thus  $T_{2n} = \frac{1}{9} - \frac{1}{9}(-\frac{1}{2})^{2n} + \frac{n}{6}(-\frac{1}{2})^{2n-1} = \frac{1}{9} - \frac{1}{9}\frac{1}{2^{2n}} - \frac{n}{6} \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2^{2n}} = \frac{1}{9}(1 - \frac{3n+1}{2^{2n}})$ . This

means  $9T_{2n} = 1 - \frac{3n+1}{2^{2n}}$ .  $Q_n = \frac{4n^2+n}{4n^2+4n+1} = 1 - \frac{3n+1}{(2n+1)^2}$ .

When  $n = 1$ , then  $2^{2n} = 4$ ,  $(2n+1)^2 = 9$ . Thus  $9T_{2n} < Q_n$ .

When  $n = 2$ , then  $2^{2n} = 16$ ,  $(2n+1)^2 = 25$ . Thus  $9T_{2n} < Q_n$ .

When  $n \geq 3$ , then  $2^{2n} = [(1+1)^n]^2 = (c_n^0 + c_n^1 + \dots + c_n^n)^2 > (2n+1)^2$ . Thus  $9T_{2n} > Q_n$ .

5.87 ★★★★★ Let  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  be the two real roots of equation  $x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$ . Show  $x_1^n + x_2^n$  is always an integer but not a multiple of 5, for any natural number  $n$ .

Proof: According to the relation of roots and coefficients, we have  $x_1 + x_2 = 6$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = 1$ . Let  $a_n = x_1^n + x_2^n$ , then  $a_1 = x_1 + x_2 = 6$ ,  $a_2 = x_1^2 + x_2^2 = (x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2 = 34$ . Since  $x_1^n + x_2^n = (x_1 + x_2)(x_1^{n-1} + x_2^{n-1}) - x_1 x_2(x_1^{n-2} + x_2^{n-2})$ , then  $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ). Let  $b_n$  be the remainder of  $a_n$  divided by 5. By applying the above recursive formula, we have  $b_n = b_{n-1} - b_{n-2}$ ,  $b_{n+2} = b_{n+1} - b_n$ ,  $b_{n+3} = b_{n+2} - b_{n+1} = (b_{n+1} - b_n) - b_{n+1} = -b_n$ . Then  $b_{n+6} = -b_{n+3} = b_n$ . Thus  $\{b_n\}$  is a sequence whose period is 6. Since  $a_1 = 6$ , then  $b_1 = 1$ . Since  $a_2 = 34$ , then  $b_2 = 4$ . Since  $a_3 = x_1^3 + x_2^3 = (x_1 + x_2)[(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 3x_1 x_2] = 198$ . Thus  $b_3 = 3$ . Since  $a_4 = x_1^4 + x_2^4 = [(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2]^2 - 2(x_1 x_2)^2 = 1154$ , then  $b_4 = -1$ . Since  $a_5 = x_1^5 + x_2^5 = (x_1^3 + x_2^3)(x_1^2 + x_2^2) - x_1^3 x_2^2 - x_1^2 x_2^3 = (x_1 + x_2)[(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 3x_1 x_2][(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2] - (x_1 x_2)^2(x_1 + x_2) = 6726$ , then  $b_5 = -4$ . Since  $a_6 = x_1^6 + x_2^6 = (x_1^2)^3 + (x_2^2)^3 = (x_1^2 + x_2^2)(x_1^4 - x_1^2 x_2^2 + x_2^4) = [(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2]\{(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2\}^2 - 3(x_1 x_2)^2 = 39202$ , then  $b_6 = -3$ . Therefore  $b_n \neq 0$  for any natural number  $n$  and  $a_n$  is not a multiple of 5.

5.88 ★★★★★ Let sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and sequence  $\{b_n\}$  satisfy  $a_0 = 1$ ,  $b_0 = 0$ , and

$$\begin{cases} a_{n+1} = 7a_n + 6b_n - 3 & \text{①} \\ b_{n+1} = 8a_n + 7b_n - 4 & \text{②} \end{cases} \quad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$

Show  $a_n$  ( $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ) are complete squares.

**93%**  
OF MIM STUDENTS ARE  
WORKING IN THEIR SECTOR 3 MONTHS  
FOLLOWING GRADUATION

## MASTER IN MANAGEMENT

- STUDY IN THE CENTER OF MADRID AND TAKE ADVANTAGE OF THE UNIQUE OPPORTUNITIES THAT THE CAPITAL OF SPAIN OFFERS
- PROPEL YOUR EDUCATION BY EARNING A DOUBLE DEGREE THAT BEST SUITS YOUR PROFESSIONAL GOALS
- STUDY A SEMESTER ABROAD AND BECOME A GLOBAL CITIZEN WITH THE BEYOND BORDERS EXPERIENCE

Length: 10 MONTHS  
Av. Experience: 1 YEAR  
Language: ENGLISH / SPANISH  
Format: FULL-TIME  
Intakes: SEPT / FEB

5 SPECIALIZATIONS PERSONALIZE YOUR PROGRAM	#10 WORLDWIDE MASTER IN MANAGEMENT FINANCIAL TIMES	55 NATIONALITIES IN CLASS
---	--	------------------------------

[www.ie.edu/master-management](http://www.ie.edu/master-management) | [mim.admissions@ie.edu](mailto:mim.admissions@ie.edu) | [Follow us on IE MIM Experience](#)

Proof: By applying the equation ①, we get  $b_n = \frac{1}{6}(a_{n+1} - 7a_n + 3)$ . Substituting it into ②, we get  $b_{n+1} = \frac{1}{6}(7a_{n+1} - a_n - 3)$  ③. From the equation ①, we get  $b_{n+1} = \frac{1}{6}(a_{n+2} - 7a_{n+1} + 3)$  ④. From the equation ③ and equation ④, we get  $a_{n+2} = 14a_{n+1} - a_n - 6$ . This means  $a_{n+2} - \frac{1}{2} = 14(a_{n+1} - \frac{1}{2}) - (a_n - \frac{1}{2})$  where  $\frac{1}{2}$  is the root of the equation  $x = 14x - x - 6$ . Let  $d_n = a_n - \frac{1}{2}$ , then  $d_0 = 1 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $d_1 = a_1 - \frac{1}{2} = 7a_0 - 6b_0 - 3 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{7}{2}$ ,  $d_{n+2} = 14d_{n+1} - d_n$ . The characteristic equation is  $x^2 = 14x - 1$ , and the characteristic roots are  $x_{1,2} = 7 \pm 4\sqrt{3}$ . Then  $d_n = c_1(7 + 4\sqrt{3})^n + c_2(7 - 4\sqrt{3})^n$ . Since  $d_0 = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $d_1 = \frac{7}{2}$ , then

$$\begin{cases} c_1 + c_2 = \frac{1}{2} \\ 7(c_1 + c_2) + 4\sqrt{3}(c_1 - c_2) = \frac{7}{2} \end{cases}$$

Solving the equations to obtain  $c_1 = c_2 = \frac{1}{4}$ . Thus  $d_n = \frac{1}{4}[(7 + 4\sqrt{3})^n + (7 - 4\sqrt{3})^n]$ .  $a_n = d_n + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}[(2 + \sqrt{3})^{2n} + 2(2 + \sqrt{3})^n(2 - \sqrt{3})^n + (2 - \sqrt{3})^{2n}] = \frac{1}{4}[(2 + \sqrt{3})^n + (2 - \sqrt{3})^n]^2$ . Let  $(2 + \sqrt{3})^n = A_n + B_n\sqrt{3}$  ( $A_n, B_n$  are all positive integer number). Then  $(2 - \sqrt{3})^n = A_n - B_n\sqrt{3}$ . Hence  $a_n = \frac{1}{4}(A_n + B_n\sqrt{3} + A_n - B_n\sqrt{3})^2 = \frac{1}{4}(2A_n)^2 = A_n^2$ . Therefore  $a_n$  ( $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ) are complete squares.

**5.89 ★★★★☆** Given sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = -1$ ,  $b_1 = 2$ ,  $b_2 = -3$ , and  $a_{n+1} = 3a_n - 2b_n$ ,  $b_{n+1} = 5a_n - 4b_n$ . Find the general terms of sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $a_{n+2} = 3a_{n+1} - 2b_{n+1} = 3a_{n+1} - 2(5a_n - 4b_n) = 3a_{n+1} - 2(5a_n + 2a_{n+1} - 6a_n) = -a_{n+1} + 2a_n$ . let  $a_{n+2} - r_1 a_{n+1} = r_2(a_{n+1} - r_1 a_n)$ . Comparing the coefficients to obtain  $r_1 + r_2 = -1$ ,  $r_1 r_2 = -2$ . Then  $r_1, r_2$  are the two roots of the characteristic equation  $x^2 + x - 2 = 0$ . Thus  $r_1 = 1, r_2 = -2$ . This means  $a_{n+2} - a_{n+1} = -2(a_{n+1} - a_n) \Rightarrow a_n - a_{n-1} = -2(a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}) \Rightarrow \frac{a_n - a_{n-1}}{a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}} = -2, \frac{a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}}{a_{n-2} - a_{n-3}} = -2, \dots, \frac{a_3 - a_2}{a_2 - a_1} = -2$ . Multiplying the above equations to obtain  $\frac{a_n - a_{n-1}}{a_2 - a_1} = (-2)^{n-2}$ . Thus  $a_n - a_{n-1} = (-2)^{n-1}$ ,  $a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = (-2)^{n-2}, \dots, a_2 - a_1 = (-2)$ . Adding the above equations to obtain  $a_n - a_1 = -2 + (-2)^2 + \dots + (-2)^{n-1}$ . Hence  $a_n = 1 + \frac{-2[1 - (-2)^{n-1}]}{1 - (-2)} = \frac{1 - (-2)^n}{3}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ). similarly,  $b_n = \frac{1 + 5(-2)^{n-1}}{3}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

# 6 FUNCTIONS

6.1 Let the function  $f(x) = \frac{1-2x}{1+x}$ , and the graphs of  $g(x)$  and  $y = f^{-1}(x+1)$  are symmetric about  $y = x$ . Evaluate  $g(2)$ .

Solution 1: Since  $y = f(x) = \frac{1-2x}{1+x}$ , then  $x = \frac{1-y}{y+2}$ . Thus  $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{1-x}{x+2}$ ,  $f^{-1}(x+1) = \frac{-x}{x+3}$ . Hence  $g(x)$  and  $f(x) = \frac{-x}{x+3}$  are inverse functions for each other. Since  $2 = -\frac{x}{x+3}$ , then  $g(2) = -2$ .  
 Solution 2: Since  $y = f^{-1}(x+1)$ , then  $x = f(y) - 1$ . Thus  $g(x) = f(x) - 1$ . Then  $g(2) = f(2) - 1 = -2$ .

6.2 Compute the range of  $x = \frac{1}{\log_{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{3}} + \frac{1}{\log_{\frac{1}{5}} \frac{1}{3}}$ .

Solution:  $x = \frac{1}{\log_{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{3}} + \frac{1}{\log_{\frac{1}{5}} \frac{1}{3}} = \log_{\frac{1}{3}} \frac{1}{2} + \log_{\frac{1}{3}} \frac{1}{5} = \log_{\frac{1}{3}} \frac{1}{10} = \log_3 10$ , and  $2 = \log_3 9 < \log_3 10 < \log_3 27 = 3$ . Hence  $x \in (2, 3)$ .

6.3 Let  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  be the two real roots of the equation  $x^2 - (k-2)x + (k^2 + 3k + 5) = 0$  ( $k \in R$ ). Find the maximum value of  $x_1^2 + x_2^2$ .

Solution: According to the Vieta's theorem, we have  $x_1 + x_2 = k-2$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = k^2 + 3k + 5$ . Then  $x_1^2 + x_2^2 = (x_1 + x_2)^2 - 2x_1 x_2 = (k-2)^2 - 2(k^2 + 3k + 5) = -(k+5)^2 + 19$ . Since the equation has two real roots, then  $\Delta = (k-2)^2 - 4(k^2 + 3k + 5) \geq 0$ . This means  $3k^2 + 16k + 16 \leq 0$ . The range is  $-4 \leq k \leq -\frac{4}{3}$ . To find the maximum value of  $x_1^2 + x_2^2$ , we need to find the maximum value of  $y = -(k+5)^2 + 19$  when  $-4 \leq k \leq -\frac{4}{3}$ . Since the symmetric axis  $k = -5$  is not in  $[-4, -\frac{4}{3}]$ , then the function is decreasing in  $[-4, -\frac{4}{3}]$ . Therefore the the maximum value is  $y_{max} = -(-4+5)^2 + 19 = 18$ .

6.4 If the function  $f(x)$  is defined for all real numbers  $R$ , and  $f(10+x) = f(10-x)$ ,  $f(20-x) = -f(20+x)$ . Is  $f(x)$  a periodic function? And determine  $f(x)$  is odd or even.

Solution: From the first given equation, we have  $f[10 + (10 - x)] = f[10 - (10 - x)]$ . Thus  $f(x) = f(20 - x)$  ①. Combining the given second equation, we have  $f(x) = -f(20 + x)$  ②.

Then  $f(40 + x) = f[20 + (20 + x)] = -f(20 + x) = f(x)$ . Hence  $f(x)$  is a periodic function. By applying ① and ②, we have  $f(-x) = f(20 + x) = -f(x)$ . Therefore  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

6.5 The function  $F(x)$  is an odd function, and  $a > 0, a \neq 1$ . Determine the function  $G(x) = F(x)(\frac{1}{a^x - 1} + \frac{1}{2})$  is odd or even.

Proof: Since  $F(x)$  is an odd function, then  $F(-x) = -F(x)$ . Let  $g(x) = \frac{1}{a^x - 1} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{a^x + 1}{2(a^x - 1)}$ , then  $g(-x) = \frac{a^{-x} + 1}{2(a^{-x} - 1)} = \frac{\frac{1}{a^x} + 1}{2(\frac{1}{a^x} - 1)} = \frac{a^x + 1}{2(1 - a^x)} = -g(x)$ . This means  $g(x)$  is also an odd function.  $G(x) = F(x)g(x)$  holds in  $\mathbb{R}$  when  $a > 0$  and  $a \neq 1$ . Since  $G(-x) = F(-x)g(-x) = F(x)g(x)$ , then  $G(x)$  is an even function.

6.6 Given the set  $M = \{x, xy, \lg(xy)\}$ , the set  $N = \{0, |x|, y\}$ , and  $M = N$ , evaluate  $(x + \frac{1}{y}) + (x^2 + \frac{1}{y^2}) + (x^3 + \frac{1}{y^3}) + \dots + (x^{2011} + \frac{1}{y^{2011}})$ .

Proof: Since  $M = N$ , we get that at least one element of  $M$  is zero. From the definition of logarithmic function, we have  $xy \neq 0$ . This means  $x$  and  $y$  are both nonzero. Thus  $\lg(xy) = 0$ . Then  $xy = 1$ . Hence  $M = \{x, 1, 0\}$ ,  $N = \{0, |x|, \frac{1}{x}\}$ . Additionally, by applying the equal of sets, we have

**"I studied English for 16 years but...  
...I finally learned to speak it in just six lessons"**

Jane, Chinese architect

ENGLISH OUT THERE

Click to hear me talking before and after my unique course download

$$\begin{cases} x = |x| \\ 1 = \frac{1}{x} \end{cases}$$

or

$$\begin{cases} x = \frac{1}{x} \\ 1 = |x| \end{cases}$$

But it is contradicting to the element distinction in a set when  $x = 1$ . Thus  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$ . Then  $x^{2k+1} + \frac{1}{y^{2k+1}} = -2$ ,  $x^{2k} + \frac{1}{y^{2k}} = 2$ , ( $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ).

Therefore  $(x + \frac{1}{y}) + (x^2 + \frac{1}{y^2}) + (x^3 + \frac{1}{y^3}) + \dots + (x^{2011} + \frac{1}{y^{2011}}) = -2$ .

6.7 Given  $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x + 1} + \sqrt[3]{x^2 - 1} + \sqrt[3]{x^2 - 2x + 1}}$ , solve  $f(1) + f(3) + f(5) + \dots + f(2011)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } f(x) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x + 1} + \sqrt[3]{x^2 - 1} + \sqrt[3]{x^2 - 2x + 1}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt[3]{x+1} - \sqrt[3]{x-1}}{(x-1) - \sqrt[3]{(x+1)^2(x-1)} + \sqrt[3]{(x^2-1)(x+1)} - \sqrt[3]{(x^2-1)(x-1)} + \sqrt[3]{(x-1)^2(x+1)} - (x-1)} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt[3]{x+1} - \sqrt[3]{x-1}}{2 - \sqrt[3]{(x+1)(x^2-1)} + \sqrt[3]{(x^2-1)(x+1)} - \sqrt[3]{(x^2-1)(x-1)} + \sqrt[3]{(x^2-1)(x-1)}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(\sqrt[3]{x+1} - \sqrt[3]{x-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $f(1) + f(3) + f(5) + \dots + f(2011) = \frac{1}{2}(\sqrt[3]{2} - 0 + \sqrt[3]{4} - \sqrt[3]{2} + \sqrt[3]{6} - \sqrt[3]{4} + \dots + \sqrt[3]{2010} - \sqrt[3]{2008} + \sqrt[3]{2012} - \sqrt[3]{2010}) = \frac{\sqrt[3]{2012}}{2}$ .

6.8 Given  $f(x) = a \sin x + b \sqrt[3]{x} + 4$ , ( $a, b \in R$ ), and  $f(\lg \log_3 10) = 5$ . Find the value of  $f(\lg \lg 3)$ .

Solution: Since  $f(x) - 4 = a \sin x + b \sqrt[3]{x}$ , then  $f(x) - 4$  is an odd function. Thus  $f(-x) - 4 = -(f(x) - 4)$ . This means  $f(-x) = -f(x) + 8$ . Additionally, since  $\lg \lg 3 = -\lg \log_3 10$ , then  $f(\lg \lg 3) = f(-\lg \log_3 10) = -f(\lg \log_3 10) + 8 = -5 + 8 = 3$ .

6.9 Given  $f(x)$  is an odd function,  $g(x)$  is an even function, and  $f(x) - g(x) = x^2 - x$ . Find  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ .

Solution: Since  $f(x)$  is an odd function, then  $f(-x) = -f(x)$ . Since  $g(x)$  is an even function, then  $g(-x) = g(x)$ . Thus  $f(x) - g(x) = x^2 - x \Rightarrow f(-x) - g(-x) = x^2 + x \Rightarrow -f(x) - g(x) = x^2 + x \Rightarrow f(x) + g(x) = -x^2 - x$ . Then

$$\begin{cases} f(x) - g(x) = x^2 - x \\ f(x) + g(x) = -x^2 - x \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x) = -x, g(x) = -x^2.$$

6.10 ★ If the domain of the function  $y = f(x^2)$  is  $[-\frac{1}{4}, 1]$ , find the domain of  $g(x) = f(x+a) + f(x-a)$ .

Solution: Since the domain of the function  $y = f(x^2)$  is  $[-\frac{1}{4}, 1]$ , then  $-\frac{1}{4} \leq x \leq 1$ . Thus  $0 \leq x^2 \leq 1$ . Hence the domain of the function  $y = f(x)$  is  $\{x|0 \leq x \leq 1\}$ . Then the domain of  $g(x)$  is the solution set of the following system:

$$\begin{cases} 0 \leq x+a \leq 1 \\ 0 \leq x-a \leq 1 \end{cases}$$

Then

$$\begin{cases} -a \leq x \leq 1-a \\ a \leq x \leq 1+a \end{cases}$$

The domain of  $g(x) = f(x+a) + f(x-a)$  is  $\{x|-a \leq x \leq 1+a\}$  when  $-\frac{1}{2} < a < 0$ .

The domain of  $g(x) = f(x+a) + f(x-a)$  is  $\{x|a \leq x \leq 1-a\}$  when  $0 \leq a \leq \frac{1}{2}$ . Note that  $x \in \emptyset$  when  $a < -\frac{1}{2}$  or  $a > \frac{1}{2}$ .

6.11 ★ Given the range of  $y = \frac{ax^2 + 8x + b}{x^2 + 1}$  as  $\{y|1 \leq y \leq 9\}$ , find the value of  $a$  and  $b$ .

Solution: Since  $y = \frac{ax^2 + 8x + b}{x^2 + 1}$ , then  $(y-a)x^2 - 8x + y - b = 0$ . Since  $x \in R$ , then  $\Delta = 64 - 4(y-a)(y-b) \geq 0$  when  $y \neq a$ . Simplifying the formula to generate  $y^2 - (a+b)y + ab - 16 \leq 0$ . Since the range of  $y$  is  $\{y|1 \leq y \leq 9\}$ , then 1 and 9 are the two roots of the equation with respect to  $y$ . According to the relationship between roots and coefficients, we have

$$\begin{cases} a+b=10 \\ ab-16=9 \end{cases}$$

Then  $a = b = 5$ .

$x = \frac{a-b}{8} \in R$  when  $y = a$ . Therefore  $a = b = 5$ .

6.12 ★ For arbitrary  $x, y \in R$ , the function  $y = f(x)$  always satisfies  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y) - 1$ . And  $f(x) > 1$  when  $x > 0$  and  $f(3) = 4$ . (1) Show  $y = f(x)$  is an increasing function. (2) Find the maximum value and the minimum value of  $f(x)$  in  $[1, 2]$ .

(1) Proof: Let  $x_1, x_2 \in R$ , and  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $f(x_2) = f(x_2 - x_1 + x_1) = f(x_2 - x_1) + f(x_1) - 1$ . Thus  $f(x_2) - f(x_1) = f(x_2 - x_1) - 1$ . Since  $x_1 < x_2$ ,  $x_2 - x_1 > 0$ , we have  $f(x_2 - x_1) > 1$  which means  $f(x_2 - x_1) - 1 > 0$ . Hence  $f(x_2) - f(x_1) > 0$ . Then  $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$ . Therefore  $y = f(x)$  is an increasing function.

(2) Solution: From (1), we know that  $f(x)$  is an increasing function in  $R$ . Then  $f(x)$  is an increasing function in  $[1, 2]$ . The minimum value of  $f(x)$  is  $f(1) = 2$  when  $x = 1$ . The maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $f(2) = 2f(1) - 1 = 3$  when  $x = 2$ . Therefore the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is 3 and the minimum value of  $f(x)$  is 2 when  $x \in [1, 2]$ .

6.13 For all ordered pairs of positive integers  $(x, y)$ ,  $f(x, 1) = 1$  holds.  $f(x, y) = 0$  and  $f(x + 1, y) = y[f(x, y) + f(x, y - 1)]$  both hold when  $y > x$ . Evaluate  $f(5, 5)$ .

Solution: Since  $f(x, 1) = 1$ , then  $f(1, 1) = 1$ ,  $f(2, 2) = f(1+1, 2) = 2[f(1, 2)+f(1, 1)] = 2[0 + f(1, 1)] = 2f(1, 1) = 2 = 2 \times 1$ .  $f(3, 3) = f(2+1, 3) = 3[f(2, 3) + f(2, 2)] = 3f(2, 2) = 3 \times 2 \times 1, \dots$ . Thus  $f(5, 5) = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 120$ .

6.14 ★ If the real numbers  $x$  and  $\theta$  satisfy  $\log_3(x + 7) + 2 \cos(\theta + 2012) = 4$ . Compute  $|x - 2| + |x - 722|$ .

Solution:  $\log_3(x + 7) + 2 \cos(\theta + 2012) = 4 \Rightarrow 2 \leq \log_3(x + 7) = 4 - 2 \cos(\theta + 2012) \leq 6 \Rightarrow 9 \leq x + 7 \leq 729 \Rightarrow 2 \leq x \leq 722$ . Thus  $|x - 2| + |x - 722| = x - 2 + 722 - x = 720$ .

Excellent Economics and Business programmes at:

 university of  
groningen

AACSB ACCREDITED

**“The perfect start  
of a successful,  
international career.”**

**CLICK HERE**  
to discover why both socially  
and academically the University  
of Groningen is one of the best  
places for a student to be

[www.rug.nl/feb/education](http://www.rug.nl/feb/education)

6.15 ★ Let  $A = [1, b]$  ( $b > 1$ ). The function  $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - x + \frac{3}{2}$ . The range of  $f(x)$  is  $A$  when  $x \in A$ . Find the value of  $b$ .

Solution:  $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - x + \frac{3}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + 1$  is a parabolic curve, and its symmetric axis is  $x = 1$ , the vertex is  $(1, 1)$ . Thus  $f(x)$  is an increasing function when  $x \in [1, b]$  ( $b > 1$ ). Then  $f(x)$  reaches the maximum value  $f(b)$  when  $x = b$ . Since  $f(b) \in [1, b]$ , then  $f(b) = b$ . This means  $\frac{1}{2}(b-1)^2 + 1 = b$ . Then  $b^2 - 4b + 3 = 0$ . Hence  $b = 1$  or  $b = 3$ . Since  $b > 1$ , then  $b = 3$ .

6.16 Given the function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + 1$  where  $a, b$  are real numbers,  $x \in R$ .

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), (x > 0) \\ -f(x), (x < 0) \end{cases}$$

(1) If  $f(-1) = 0$ , and the range of  $f(x)$  is  $[0, +\infty)$ , Find the analytic formula of  $F(x)$ . (2) Under the condition of (1),  $g(x) = f(x) - kx$  is a monotone function when  $x \in [-2, 2]$ . Find the range of  $k$ .

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $\begin{cases} a - b + 1 = 0 \\ -\frac{b}{2a} = -1 \end{cases}$ . By solving the equation system, we have  $\begin{cases} a = 1 \\ b = 2 \end{cases}$ . Thus  $F(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x + 1, (x > 0) \\ -x^2 - 2x - 1, (x < 0) \end{cases}$ .  
(2)  $g(x) = x^2 + (2-k)x + 1$  is a monotone function when  $x \in [-2, 2]$  if and only if  $-\frac{2-k}{2} \geq 2$  or  $-\frac{2-k}{2} \leq -2$ . Then  $k \geq 6$  or  $k \leq -2$ . Thus the range of  $k$  is  $(-\infty, -2] \cup [6, +\infty)$ .

6.17 ★ The graph of  $f(x) = kx + b$  intersects  $x$  axis at  $A$  and intersects  $y$  axis at  $B$ .  $\overrightarrow{AB} = 2i + 2j$ , ( $i$  is the unit vector of positive  $x$  axis,  $j$  is the unit vector of positive  $y$  axis), and  $g(x) = x^2 - x - 6$ .

(1) Evaluate  $k$  and  $b$ . (2) Find the minimum value of  $\frac{g(x) + 1}{f(x)}$  when  $f(x) > g(x)$ .

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $A(-\frac{b}{k}, 0)$ ,  $B(0, b)$ . Then  $\overrightarrow{AB} = \{\frac{b}{k}, b\}$ .

Thus  $\frac{b}{k} = 2, b = 2, k = 1$ .

(2) Since  $f(x) > g(x)$ , then  $x + 2 > x^2 - x - 6$ . thus  $-2 < x < 4$ .  $\frac{g(x) + 1}{f(x)} = \frac{x^2 - x - 5}{x + 2} = x + 2 + \frac{1}{x + 2} - 5$ . Since  $x+2 > 0$ , then  $\frac{g(x) + 1}{f(x)} \geq 2\sqrt{(x+2)\frac{1}{x+2}} - 5 = -3$ , and the equation holds if and only if  $x + 2 = 1$  i.e.  $x = -1$ . Hence the minimum value of  $\frac{g(x) + 1}{f(x)}$  is  $-3$ .

6.18 If the equation  $(2 - 2^{-|x-3|})^2 = 3 + a$  with respect to  $x$  has real roots, find the range of real number  $a$ .

Solution: We simply the given equation to get  $a = (2 - 2^{-|x-3|})^2 - 3$ . Let  $t = 2^{-|x-3|}$ , then  $0 < t \leq 1$ ,  $a = f(t) = (t - 2)^2 - 3$ . Since  $a = f(t)$  is decreasing on  $(0, 1]$ , then  $f(1) \leq f(t) < f(0)$ . This means  $-2 \leq f(t) < 1$ . Thus the range of real number  $a$  is  $a \in [-2, 1)$ .

6.19 If the maximum value of the function  $f(x) = -3x^2 - 3x + 4b^2 + \frac{9}{4}$  ( $b > 0$ ) on  $[-b, 1-b]$  is 25, find the value of  $b$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $f(x) = -3(x + \frac{1}{2})^2 + 4b^2 + 3$ .

(1) The maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $4b^2 + 3 = 25$  when  $-b \leq -\frac{1}{2} \leq 1-b$  i.e.  $\frac{1}{2} \leq b \leq \frac{3}{2}$ .

Then  $b^2 = \frac{11}{2}$ . It is contradicting to  $\frac{1}{2} \leq b \leq \frac{3}{2}$ .

(2)  $f(x)$  is decreasing on the interval  $[-b, 1-b]$  when  $-\frac{1}{2} \leq -b$  i.e.  $0 < b < \frac{1}{2}$ . Then  $f(-b) = (b + \frac{3}{2})^3 < 25$ .

(3)  $f(x)$  is increasing on the interval  $[-b, 1-b]$  when  $-\frac{1}{2} > 1-b$  i.e.  $b > \frac{3}{2}$ .

Hence  $f(1-b) = b^2 + 9b - \frac{15}{4} = 25$ . Then  $b = \frac{5}{2}$ .

6.20 ★ If for all  $x, y \in R$ ,  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$  holds. (1) Show  $f(x)$  is an odd function. (2) if  $f(-3) = a$ , express  $f(12)$  as a function  $a$ .

(1) Proof: Obviously, the domain of  $f(x)$  is  $R$ . Let  $y = -x$  where  $f(x+y) = f(x)+f(y)$ , then  $f(0) = f(x) + f(-x)$ . Let  $x = y = 0$  where  $f(0) = f(0) + f(0)$ , then  $f(0) = 0$ . Thus  $f(x) + f(-x) = 0$  which means  $f(x) = -f(-x)$ . Hence  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

(2) Solution: Since  $f(-3) = a$ ,  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$ , and  $f(x)$  is an odd function, we have  $f(12) = 2f(6) = 4f(3) = -4f(-3) = -4a$ .

6.21 ★ If  $M$  is a set of functions that satisfy the following conditions: (1) the domain of  $f(x)$  is  $[-1, 1]$ . (2) If  $x_1, x_2 \in [-1, 1]$ , then  $|f(x_1) - f(x_2)| \leq 4|x_1 - x_2|$ . Determine whether the function  $g(x) = x^2 + 2x - 1$  defined on the interval  $[-1, 1]$  belongs to the set  $M$ .

Proof: From the given condition, we know that  $g(x)$  satisfies the condition (1) obviously. Let  $x_1, x_2 \in [-1, 1]$ . Then  $|x_1| \leq 1$ ,  $|x_2| \leq 1$ . Since  $|g(x_1) - g(x_2)| = |(x_1^2 + 2x_1 - 1) - (x_2^2 + 2x_2 - 1)| = |(x_1 - x_2)(x_1 + x_2 + 2)| \leq |x_1 - x_2||x_1 + x_2 + 2| \leq (|x_1| + |x_2| + 2)|x_1 - x_2| \leq 4|x_1 - x_2|$ . Thus  $g(x)$  satisfies the condition (2). Hence  $g(x) \in M$ .

6.22 ★ Given the set  $A = \{x | (x-2)[x-(3a+1)] < 0\}$ ,  $B = \{x | \frac{(x-2a)}{x-(a^2+1)} < 0\}$ .

(1) Find  $A \cap B$  when  $a = 2$ . (2) Find the range of the real number  $a$  such that  $B \subseteq A$ .

Solution: (1)  $A = \{x | (x-2)(x-7) < 0\} = (2, 7)$ ,  $B = \{x | \frac{x-4}{x-5} < 0\} = (4, 5)$ . Thus  $A \cap B = (4, 5)$ .

(2) Since  $B = (2a, a^2 + 1)$ , then  $A = (3a + 1, 2)$  when  $a < \frac{1}{3}$ . In order to have  $B \subseteq A$ ,

we must have  $\begin{cases} 2a \geq 3a + 1 \\ a^2 + 1 \leq 2 \end{cases}$  for which  $a = -1$ .  $A = \emptyset$ . When  $a = \frac{1}{3}$ . There is no  $a$

such that  $B \subseteq A$ . Then  $A = (2, 3a + 1)$  when  $a > \frac{1}{3}$ . In order to have  $B \subseteq A$ , we

must have  $\begin{cases} 2a \geq 2 \\ a^2 + 1 \leq 3a + 1 \end{cases}$ . Thus  $1 \leq a \leq 3$ . As a conclusion, the range of the real number  $a$  such that  $B \subseteq A$  is  $[1, 3] \cup \{-1\}$ .

6.23 ★ The statement  $p$  is that the equation  $a^2x^2 + ax - 2 = 0$  has solutions on the interval  $[-1, 1]$ , and the statement  $q$  is that there is only one real number  $x$  such that the inequality  $x^2 + 2ax + 2a \leq 0$  holds. If the statement “ $p$  or  $q$ ” is a false statement, find the range of  $a$ .

## American online LIGS University

is currently enrolling in the  
Interactive Online **BBA, MBA, MSc,**  
**DBA and PhD** programs:

- ▶ **enroll by September 30th, 2014** and
- ▶ **save up to 16%** on the tuition!
- ▶ pay in 10 installments / 2 years
- ▶ Interactive Online education
- ▶ visit [www.ligsuniversity.com](http://www.ligsuniversity.com) to find out more!

Note: LIGS University is not accredited by any nationally recognized accrediting agency listed by the US Secretary of Education.  
[More info here.](#)



Solution:  $a^2x^2 + ax - 2 = 0 \Rightarrow (ax + 2)(ax - 1) = 0$ . Obviously,  $a \neq 0$ , then  $x = -\frac{2}{a}$  or  $x = \frac{1}{a}$ . Since  $x \in [-1, 1]$ , then  $|\frac{2}{a}| \leq 1$  or  $|\frac{1}{a}| \leq 1$ . Thus  $|a| \geq 1$ . Since there is only one real number  $x$  such that the inequality  $x^2 + 2ax + 2a \leq 0$  holds, then there is only one intersection of the parabolic curve  $y = x^2 + 2ax + 2a$  and x-axis. Thus  $\Delta = 4a^2 - 8a = 0$ . Hence  $a = 0$  or  $a = 2$ . Then  $|a| \geq 1$  or  $a = 0$  when the statement “ $p$  or  $q$ ” is a true statement. Therefore the range of  $a$  is  $\{|a| - 1 < a < 1 \text{ or } 0 < a < 1\}$  when the statement “ $p$  or  $q$ ” is a false statement.

6.24 ★ The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$ , and  $f(0) = f(1)$ . If for arbitrary distinct  $x_1, x_2 \in [0, 1]$ ,  $|f(x_2) - f(x_1)| < |x_2 - x_1|$  holds. Show  $|f(x_2) - f(x_1)| < \frac{1}{2}$ .

Proof: Let  $0 \leq x_1 \leq x_2 \leq 1$ . (1) If  $x_2 - x_1 \leq \frac{1}{2}$ , then  $|f(x_2) - f(x_1)| < |x_2 - x_1| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ . (2)

If  $x_2 - x_1 > \frac{1}{2}$ , since  $f(0) = f(1)$ , then  $|f(x_2) - f(x_1)| = |f(x_2) - f(1) + f(0) - f(x_1)| \leq |f(x_2) - f(1)| + |f(0) - f(x_1)| < (1 - x_2) + (x_1 - 0) = 1 - (x_2 - x_1) < \frac{1}{2}$ .

As a conclusion,  $|f(x_2) - f(x_1)| < \frac{1}{2}$ .

6.25 ★ Given  $f(x)$  is an increasing function on the interval  $(0, +\infty)$ , and  $f(1) = 0$ ,  $f(x) + f(y) = f(x, y)$ , show  $|f(x)| > |f(y)|$  when  $0 < x < y < 1$ .

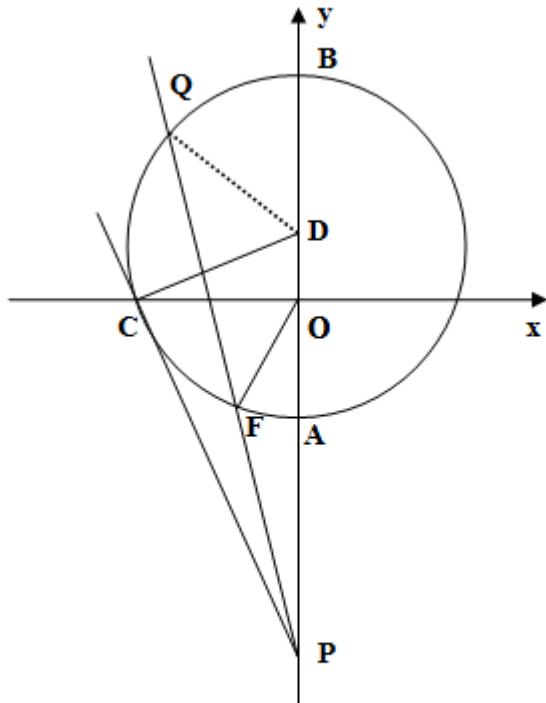
Proof: Since  $f(x)$  is an increasing function on the interval  $(0, +\infty)$ , and  $0 < x < y$ , we have that  $f(x) < f(y)$ . This means  $f(x) - f(y) < 0$  ①. Since  $0 < x < y < 1$ , then  $f(x) + f(y) = f(xy) < f(1) = 0$ . This means  $f(x) + f(y) < 0$  ②. By applying ① × ②, we have  $[f(x)]^2 - [f(y)]^2 > 0$ . Thus  $|f(x)| > |f(y)|$ .

6.26 Let  $f(x)$  is a function defined on  $R \rightarrow R$ . Show  $f(x)$  can be expressed as the sum of an odd function and an even function.

Proof: Assume  $f((x)) = g(x) + h(x)$  where  $g(x)$  is an even function and  $h(x)$  is odd function. Then  $f(-x) = g(-x) + h(-x) = g(x) - h(x)$ . Thus  $\begin{cases} f(x) = g(x) + h(x) \\ f(-x) = g(x) - h(x) \end{cases}$ .

Solving the equation system, we have  $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}[f(x) + f(-x)]$ ,  $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}[f(x) - f(-x)]$ .

Conversely, since  $g(-x) = \frac{1}{2}[f(-x) + f(x)] = g(x)$ , then  $g(x)$  is an even function. Since  $h(-x) = \frac{1}{2}[f(-x) - f(x)] = -\frac{1}{2}[f(x) - f(-x)] = -h(x)$ , then  $h(x)$  is an odd function. Therefore  $f((x))$  can be expressed as the sum of an odd function and an even function.

**Figure 3**

6.27 As shown in Figure 3, the circle  $\odot D$  intersects y-axis at the points  $A$  and  $B$ , and intersects x-axis at the point  $C$  on the left. The straight line  $y = -2\sqrt{2}x - 8$  intersects y-axis at the point  $P$ . The coordinates of the center  $D$  is  $(0, 1)$ . (1) Show  $PC$  is a tangent line of the circle  $\odot D$ . (2) Determine whether there exists a point  $E$  on the straight line  $CP$  such that  $S_{\triangle EOP} = 4S_{\triangle COD}$ . If yes, find the coordinates of  $E$ . If no, please explain the reason. (3) When the straight line  $CP$  turns around the point  $P$ , it intersects the inferior arc  $\widehat{AC}$  at the point  $F$  (here  $F$  does not coincide with  $A$  or  $C$ ). We connect  $OF$ . Let  $PF = m$ ,  $OF = n$ , find the relation between  $m$  and  $n$ , and determine the range of the variable  $n$ .

(1) Proof: The straight line  $y = -2\sqrt{2}x - 8$  passing through  $C$  intersects x-axis at  $C(-2\sqrt{2}, 0)$  and y-axis at  $P(0, -8)$ . Then  $\cot \angle OCD = \frac{|CO|}{|OD|} = 2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\cot \angle OPC = \frac{|OP|}{|OC|} = 2\sqrt{2}$ . Since  $\angle OPC + \angle PCO = 90^\circ$ , then  $\angle OCD + \angle PCO = 90^\circ$ . Hence,  $PC$  is a tangent line of the circle  $\odot D$ .

(2) Let the point  $E(x, y)$  on the straight line  $CP$  such that  $S_{\triangle EOP} = 4S_{\triangle COD}$ . Then  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 \times |x| = 4 \times \frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times 2\sqrt{2}$ . Thus  $x = \pm\sqrt{2}$ . Since  $y = -2\sqrt{2}x - 8$ , then  $y = -12$  when  $x = \sqrt{2}$  and  $y = -4$  when  $x = -\sqrt{2}$ . Thus there exists a point  $E(\sqrt{2}, -12)$  or  $E(-\sqrt{2}, -4)$  on the straight line  $CP$  such that  $S_{\triangle EOP} = 4S_{\triangle COD}$ .

(3) Let the straight line  $PF$  intersects the arc  $\widehat{AC}$  at the point  $F$ , and intersects the arc  $\widehat{BC}$  at the point  $Q$ . We connect  $DQ$ . By applying the cutting theorem, we have  $PC^2 = PF \cdot PQ$  ①. In  $\triangle CPD$  and  $\triangle OPC$ ,  $\angle PCD = \angle POC = 90^\circ$ ,  $\angle CPD = \angle OPC$ . Thus  $\triangle CPD \sim \triangle OPC$ ,  $\frac{PC}{PO} = \frac{PD}{PC}$  which means  $PC^2 = PO \cdot PD$  ②. According to ① and ②, we have  $PO \cdot PD = PF \cdot PQ$ . Additionally, since  $\angle FPO = \angle DPQ$ , then  $\triangle FPO \sim \triangle DPQ$ . Hence  $\frac{PF}{FO} = \frac{PD}{DQ} = \frac{m}{n}$ . Since  $PD = 9$ ,  $DQ = CD = \sqrt{(2\sqrt{2})^2 + 1^2} = 3$ . Thus  $\frac{m}{n} = \frac{9}{3} = 3$ ,  $OA = 3 - 1 = 2$ . Therefore  $m = 3n$  ( $2 < n < 2\sqrt{2}$ ).

6.28 ★ Given the function  $f(x) = \log_2(x+1)$ , and the point  $(x, y)$  moves on the graph of  $f(x)$ , the point  $(\frac{x}{3}, \frac{y}{2})$  moves on the graph of  $y = g(x)$ . Find the maximum value of the function  $p(x) = g(x) - f(x)$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $g(x) = \frac{1}{2} \log_2(3x+1)$ . Then  $P(x) = \frac{1}{2} \log_2(3x+1) - \log_2(x+1) = \log_2 \sqrt{\frac{3x+1}{(x+1)^2}}$ . Let  $u = \frac{3x+1}{(x+1)^2}$ , then  $ux^2 + (2u - 3)x + u - 1 = 0$ . Since  $u$  has meaning, then  $\Delta = (2u - 3)^2 - 4u(u - 1) = -8u + 9 \geq 0$ . This means  $u \leq \frac{9}{8}$ . Thus  $p_{max}(x) = \log_2 \sqrt{\frac{9}{8}} = \log_2 3 - \frac{3}{2}$ .

**DON'T EAT YELLOW SNOW**

**What will your advice be?**

**Some advice just states the obvious.** But to give the kind of advice that's going to make a real difference to your clients you've got to listen critically, dig beneath the surface, challenge assumptions and be credible and confident enough to make suggestions right from day one. At Grant Thornton you've got to be ready to kick start a career right at the heart of business.

Sound like you? Here's our advice: visit [GrantThornton.ca/careers/students](http://GrantThornton.ca/careers/students)

Scan here to learn more about a career with Grant Thornton.

**Grant Thornton**  
An instinct for growth™

© Grant Thornton LLP. A Canadian Member of Grant Thornton International Ltd

Download free eBooks at [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)

**Click on the ad to read more**

6.29 ★ Suppose the function  $f(x) = \sqrt{2 - \frac{x+3}{x+1}}$  has the domain  $A$ , and the function  $g(x) = \lg[(x-a-1)(2a-x)](a < 1)$  has the domain  $B$ . (1) Find  $A$  and  $B$ . (2) If  $B \subseteq A$ , find the range of the real number  $a$ .

Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2x+2-x-3}{x+1}} = \sqrt{\frac{x-1}{x+1}}$ .

Since  $\frac{x-1}{x+1} \geq 0$ , then  $x \geq 1$  or  $x \leq -1$ . Thus  $A = (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, +\infty)$ . Since  $\begin{cases} (x-a-1)(2a-x) > 0 \\ a < 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} [x-(a+1)](x-2a) < 0 \\ a < 1 \end{cases}$ , then  $2a < x < a+1$ .

Thus  $B = (2a, a+1)$ .

(2) Since  $B \subseteq A$ , then  $2a \geq 1$  or  $a+1 \leq -1$ . This means  $a \geq \frac{1}{2}$ , or  $a \leq -2$ . Since  $a < 1$ , then  $\frac{1}{2} \leq a < 1$ , or  $a \leq -2$ . For  $B \subseteq A$ , the range of real number  $a$  is  $(-\infty, -2] \cup [\frac{1}{2}, 1)$ .

6.30 ★ The graph of the linear function  $f(x) = ax + b$  passes through the point  $(10, 13)$ , and its x-intercept is  $(p, 0)$  and its y-intercept is  $(0, q)$ , where  $p$  is a prime number and  $q$  is a positive integer number. Find all linear functions that satisfy the above conditions.

Solution: Since the x- and y-intercepts of the linear function  $f(x) = ax + b$  are  $(p, 0)$  and  $(0, q)$  respectively, we have  $\begin{cases} ap + b = 0 \\ b = q \end{cases}$ . Solving these equations to obtain  $a = -\frac{p}{q}$ ,  $b = q$ . Thus  $y = -\frac{p}{q}x + q$ . This means  $\frac{x}{p} + \frac{y}{q} = 1$ . Since the linear function passes through  $(10, 13)$ , we have  $10q + 13p = pq$ . Then  $(p-10)(q-13) = 130$ . Since  $p$  is a prime number, then  $p$  is only 11 or 23. Hence,  $q = 143$  when  $p = 11$ ;  $q = 23$  when  $p = 23$ . The linear functions which satisfy the conditions are  $y = -13x + 143$ ;  $y = -x + 23$ .

6.31 Given a quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  ( $a > 0$ ). The two roots of the equation  $f(x) - x = 0$  are  $x_1, x_2$ , which satisfy  $0 < x_1 < x_2 < \frac{1}{a}$ . In addition, the graph of  $f(x)$  is symmetric about the straight line  $x = x_0$ . Show  $x_0 < \frac{x_1}{2}$ .

Proof: From the given condition, we have  $f(x) - x = ax^2 + (b-1)x + c$ . Since the two roots of the equation  $f(x) - x = 0$  are  $x_1, x_2$ , which satisfy  $0 < x_1 < x_2 < \frac{1}{a}$ , we have  $0 < x_1 < \frac{b-1}{-2a} < x_2 < \frac{1}{a}$ , and  $\frac{b-1}{-2a} - x_1 = x_2 - \frac{b-1}{-2a} < \frac{1}{a} - \frac{b-1}{-2a}$ . This means  $-\frac{b}{a} < x_1$ . Thus  $x_0 = -\frac{b}{2a} < \frac{x_1}{2}$ .

6.32 ★★ Given  $f(x) = x^4 + ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$  ( $a, b$  are constants), and  $f(1) = 2009f(2) = 4018f(3) = 6027$ . Evaluate  $\frac{1}{4}[f(11) + f((-7))]$ .

Solution: Let  $n = 2009$ ,  $F(x) = f(x) - nx$ , then  $F(1) = F(2) = F(3) = 0$ . Thus  $F(x) = (x-1)(x-2)(x-3)(x-r)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{4}[f(11)+f(-7)] &= \frac{1}{4}[F(11)+F((-7))+11n-7n] = \frac{1}{4}[F(11)+F(-7)]+n = \frac{1}{4}[10\times 9\times \\ &8\times(11-r)+(-8)\cdot(-9)\cdot(-10)\cdot(-7-r)]+2009 = \frac{1}{4}[10\times 9\times 8\times(11-r+7+r)]+2009 = \\ &\frac{1}{4}\times 10\times 9\times 8\times 18+2009 = 5249.\end{aligned}$$

6.33 ★★ If  $a > b > c$ , show that the equation  $3x^2 - 2(a+b+c)x + ab + bc + ca = 0$  has two real roots with one located in the interval  $(c, b)$  and the other one in the interval  $(b, a)$ .

Proof: Let  $f(x) = 3x^2 - 2(a+b+c)x + ab + bc + ca$ . Since  $\Delta = [-2(a+b+c)]^2 - 4 \times 3 \cdot (ab + bc + ca) = 4(a+b+c)^2 - 12(ab + bc + ca) = 2(2a^2 + 2b^2 + 2c^2 - 2ab - 2bc - 2ca) = 2[(a-b)^2 + (b-c)^2 + (c-a)^2]$ . Since  $a > b > c$ , then  $\Delta > 0$ . Thus the equation has two distinct real roots.

$$f(a) = 3a^2 - 2(a+b+c)a + ab + bc + ca = a^2 - ca + bc - ab = (a-c)(a-b) > 0.$$

$$f(b) = 3b^2 - 2(a+b+c)b + ab + bc + ca = b^2 - ab - bc + ca = (b-a)(b-c) < 0.$$

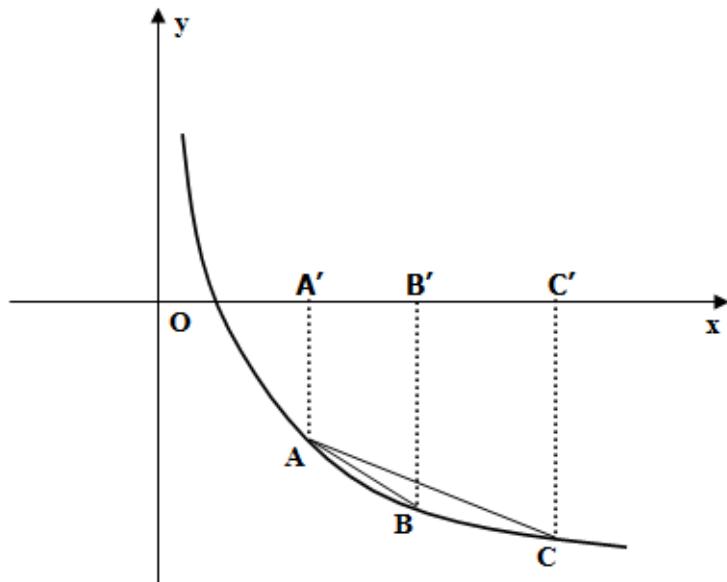
$$f(c) = 3c^2 - 2(a+b+c)c + ab + bc + ca = c^2 - ca - bc + ab = (c-a)(c-b) > 0.$$

The two x-intercepts of the graph are in the interval  $(c, b)$  and  $(b, a)$ . Thus the equation has two real roots with one located in the interval  $(c, b)$  and the other one in the interval  $(b, a)$ .

6.34 ★ Let  $p$  be a real number, and the graph of the quadratic function  $y = x^2 - 2px - p$  has two distinct x-intercepts  $A(x_1, 0), B(x_2, 0)$ . (1) Show  $2px_1 + x_2^2 + 3p > 0$ . (2) If the distance between the two points  $A$  and  $B$  is not larger than  $|2p - 3|$ . Find the maximum value of  $p$ .

(1) Proof: According to the relationship between roots and coefficients, we have  $x_1 + x_2 = 2p$ ,  $x_1x_2 = -p$ . From the above equations, we have  $x_2^2 = 2px_2 + p$ . Since  $\Delta = (-2p)^2 - 4(-p) = 4p^2 + 4p > 0$ , then  $2px_1 + x_2^2 + 3p = 2px_1 + (2px_2 + p) + 3p = 2p(x_1 + x_2) + 4p = 4p^2 + 4p > 0$ .

(2) Solution:  $AB = |x_2 - x_1| = \sqrt{(x_2 + x_1)^2 - 4x_2x_1} = \sqrt{4p^2 + 4p} \leq |2p - 3|$ . Squaring both sides to generate  $4p^2 + 4p \leq 4p^2 - 12p + 9$ . Solving the inequality to obtain  $p \leq \frac{9}{16}$ . Thus the maximum value of  $p$  is  $\frac{9}{16}$ .

**Figure 4**

6.35 ★★ As shown in Figure 4,  $A, B, C$  are three points on the graph of the function  $y = \log_{\frac{1}{3}} x$ . Their x-coordinates are  $t, t + 2, t + 4$  ( $t \geq 1$ ), respectively. (1) Let the area  $S_{\triangle ABC}$  be  $S$ , find  $S = f(t)$ . (2) Determine the monotonicity of  $S = f(t)$ . (3) Find the maximum value of  $S = f(t)$ .

www.alcatel-lucent.com/careers

Alcatel-Lucent

**What if  
you could  
build your  
future and  
create the  
future?**

One generation's transformation is the next's status quo.  
In the near future, people may soon think it's strange that  
devices ever had to be "plugged in." To obtain that status, there  
needs to be "The Shift".

**Click on the ad to read more**

Solution: (1) Starting from the points  $A, B, C$ , we draw lines  $AA'$ ,  $BB'$ ,  $CC'$  perpendicular to x-axis with the foot points  $A', B', C'$ . Then  $S = S_{\text{trapezoid}}AA'B'B + S_{\text{trapezoid}}BB'C'C - S_{\text{trapezoid}}AA'C'C = -[\log_{\frac{1}{3}}t + \log_{\frac{1}{3}}(t+2)](t+2-t) \times \frac{1}{2} - [\log_{\frac{1}{3}}(t+2) + \log_{\frac{1}{3}}(t+4)] \cdot [(t+4)-(t+2)] \frac{1}{2} + [\log_{\frac{1}{3}}t + \log_{\frac{1}{3}}(t+4)](t+4-t) \times \frac{1}{2} = \log_{\frac{1}{3}}\frac{t^2+4t}{(t+2)^2} = \log_3(1 + \frac{4}{t^2+4t})$ , ( $t \geq 1$ ).

(2) Let  $u = t^2 + 4t$  be an increasing function on the interval  $[1, +\infty)$ , and  $u \geq 5$ . Let  $v = 1 + \frac{4}{u}$  be a decreasing function on the interval  $[5, +\infty)$ , and  $1 < v \leq \frac{9}{5}$ , which means  $S = \log_3 v$  is an increasing function on the interval  $(1, \frac{9}{5}]$ . Hence, the composite function  $S = f(t) = \log_3(1 + \frac{4}{t^2+4t})$  is a decreasing function on the interval  $[1, +\infty)$ .

(3) According to (2),  $S$  reaches the maximum value when  $t = 1$ , and its maximum value is  $S_{\max} = f(1) = \log_3 \frac{9}{5} = 2 - \log_3 5$ .

6.36 ★★ Given  $f(2x-1) = x^2$  ( $x \in R$ ), find the range of the function  $f[f(x)]$ .

Solution 1 : Let  $A(2x-1)^2 + B(2x-1) + C \equiv x^2$ . Comparing the coefficients to obtain  $A = \frac{1}{4}, B = \frac{1}{2}, C = \frac{1}{4}$ . Thus  $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}x^2 + \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{4}(x+1)^2$ . Hence  $f[f(x)] = \frac{1}{4}[\frac{1}{4}(x+1)^2 + 1]^2 = \frac{1}{64}[(x+1)^2 + 4]^2$ . Then  $f[f(x)] \geq \frac{1}{4}$  (The equation holds when  $x = -1$ ). This means the minimum value of  $f[f(x)]$  is  $\frac{1}{4}$ . The range of the function  $f[f(x)]$  is  $[1/4, +\infty)$ .

Solution 2 : Let  $2x-1 = t$ , then  $x = \frac{t+1}{2}$ . From the given condition, we have  $f(t) = (\frac{t+1}{2})^2$ . Notice that  $t \in R$  and  $x \in R$ , then  $f(x) = (\frac{x+1}{2})^2 = \frac{1}{4}(x+1)^2$ ,  $f[f(x)] = \frac{1}{4}[\frac{1}{4}(x+1)^2 + 1]^2 = \frac{1}{64}[(x+1)^2 + 4]^2$ . Thus  $f[f(x)] \geq \frac{1}{4}$  (The equation holds when  $x = -1$ ). The range of the function  $f[f(x)]$  is  $[1/4, +\infty)$ .

6.37 ★★ Let  $A = [-1, 0] \cup (1, 2]$  and  $B = [0, 2]$ . The map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  maps  $x$  to  $y = |x|$ . Show that  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a one-to-one map and find its inverse map.

Proof: Let  $x_1, x_2 \in A$ , and  $x_1 \neq x_2$ , with  $f(x_1) = |x_1|$ ,  $f(x_2) = |x_2|$ . If  $|x_1| = |x_2|$ , according the given condition  $x_1 \neq x_2$ , then  $x_1 = -x_2$ . This means  $x_1, x_2$  are opposite numbers. Without loss of generality, let  $x_1 > 0, x_2 < 0$ , according to the given  $A$ , we have  $x_1 \in (1, 2], x_2 \in [-1, 0)$ . Obviously,  $|x_1| > 1, |x_2| \leq 1$  for this case. Thus  $|x_1| \neq |x_2|$ , which is contradicting to the given condition.

On the other hand, let  $y_1 \in B$ , then  $0 \leq y_1 \leq 2$ . Notice  $B = [0, 1] \cup (1, 2]$ . Then  $y_1 \in [0, 1]$ , or  $y_1 \in (1, 2]$ . When  $y_1 \in [0, 1]$ , then there is a unique element in  $A$ ,  $x_1 = -y_1$ , corresponding to it. When  $y_1 \in (1, 2]$ , then there is a unique element in  $A$ ,  $x_2 = y_1$ , corresponding to it. According to the property of a one-to-one map, we know that  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a one-to-one map, and its inverse map is  $x = \begin{cases} y, & (y \in (1, 2]) \\ -y, & (y \in [0, 1]) \end{cases}$ .

6.38 ★★ Given the set  $A = \{(x, y) | x^2 + mx - y + 2 = 0, x \in R\}$ ,  $B = \{(x, y) | x - y + 1 = 0, 0 \leq x \leq 2\}$ . If  $A \cap B \neq \emptyset$ , find the range of the real number  $m$ .

Solution: The problem is equivalent to the following: the equation system  $\begin{cases} y = x^2 + mx + 2 \\ y = x + 1 \end{cases}$

has solutions on the interval  $[0, 2]$ . This means  $x^2 + (m - 1)x + 1 = 0$  has solutions on the interval  $[0, 2]$ . Let  $f(x) = x^2 + (m - 1)x + 1$ , since  $f(0) = 1$ , then the parabolic curve  $y = f(x)$  passes through the point  $(0, 1)$ . Thus the parabolic curve  $y = f(x)$  has an x-intercept in the interval  $[0, 2]$ . It is equivalent to  $f(2) = 2^2 + 2(m - 1) + 1 \leq 0$  ①

$$\text{or } \begin{cases} \Delta = (m - 1)^2 - 4 \geq 0 \\ 0 < \frac{1-m}{2} < 2 \\ f(2) = 2^2 + 2(m - 1) + 1 > 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{②.}$$

From ①, we have  $m \leq -\frac{3}{2}$ . From ②, we have  $-\frac{3}{2} < m \leq -1$ . Thus the range of  $m$  is  $(-\infty, -1]$ .



**Maastricht University** *Leading in Learning!*

**Join the best at  
the Maastricht University  
School of Business and  
Economics!**

**Visit us and find out why we are the best!  
Master's Open Day: 22 February 2014**

#### Top master's programmes

- 33<sup>rd</sup> place Financial Times worldwide ranking: MSc International Business
- 1<sup>st</sup> place: MSc International Business
- 1<sup>st</sup> place: MSc Financial Economics
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Management of Learning
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Economics
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Econometrics and Operations Research
- 2<sup>nd</sup> place: MSc Global Supply Chain Management and Change

Sources: Keuzegids Master ranking 2013; Elsevier 'Beste Studies' ranking 2012; Financial Times Global Masters in Management ranking 2012

**Maastricht  
University is  
the best specialist  
university in the  
Netherlands  
(Elsevier)**

[www.mastersopenday.nl](http://www.mastersopenday.nl)

6.39 ★★ If the functions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  defined for the real numbers satisfy  $f(0) = 0$ , and for arbitrary  $x, y \in R$ ,  $g(x - y) = f(x)f(y) + g(x)g(y)$  holds. Show  $[f(x)]^{2012} + [g(x)]^{2012} \leq 1$ .

Proof : Let  $x = y$ , then  $[f(x)]^2 + [g(x)]^2 = g(0)$ (\*). In (\*), let  $x = 0$ , then  $[f(0)]^2 + [g(0)]^2 = g(0)$ . Since  $f(0) = 0$ , then  $[g(0)]^2 = g(0)$ . Thus  $g(0) = 0$  or  $g(0) = 1$ .

(1) If we substitute  $g(0) = 0$  into (\*), then  $[f(x)]^2 + [g(x)]^2 = g(0)$ . Thus  $f(x) = g(x) = 0$ . Hence  $[f(x)]^{2012} + [g(x)]^{2012} \leq 1$ .

(2) If we substitute  $g(0) = 1$  into (\*), then  $[f(x)]^2 + [g(x)]^2 = 1$ . Thus  $|f(x)| \leq 1$ ,  $|g(x)| \leq 1$ . Hence  $[f(x)]^{2012} \leq [f(x)]^2$ ,  $[g(x)]^{2012} \leq [g(x)]^2$ . Therefore  $[f(x)]^{2012} + [g(x)]^{2012} \leq [f(x)]^2 + [g(x)]^2 \leq 1$ .

6.40 ★★ Let  $f(x) = x^2 + px + q$ ,  $A = \{x|x = f(x)\}$ ,  $B = \{x|f[f(x)] = x\}$ .

(1) Show  $A \subseteq B$ . (2) If  $A = \{-1, 3\}$ , find  $B$ .

(1) Proof: Let  $x_0$  is an arbitrary element in the set  $A$  which means  $x_0 \in A$ . Since  $A = \{x|x = f(x)\}$ , then  $x_0 = f(x_0)$ . Thus  $f[f(x_0)] = f(x_0) = x_0$ . Thus  $x_0 \in B$ . Therefore  $A \subseteq B$ .

(2) Solution: Since  $A = \{-1, 3\} = \{x|x^2 + px + q = x\}$ , then the equation  $x^2 + (p-1)x + q = 0$  has two roots  $-1$  and  $3$ . By applying the Vieta's theorem, we have  $\begin{cases} -1+3=-(p-1) \\ (-1)\times 3=q \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} p=-1 \\ q=-3 \end{cases}$ . Then  $f(x) = x^2 - x - 3$ . Thus the elements in the set  $B$  is the roots of the equation  $f[f(x)] = x$ . This means  $(x^2 - x - 3)^2 - (x^2 - x - 3) - 3 = x$ . Simplifying the equation to generate  $(x^2 - x - 3)^2 - x^2 = 0 \Rightarrow (x^2 - x - 3 + x)(x^2 - x - 3 - x) = 0 \Rightarrow (x^2 - 3)(x^2 - 2x - 3) = 0$ . Thus  $x_1 = -\sqrt{3}$ ,  $x_2 = \sqrt{3}$ ,  $x_3 = -1$ ,  $x_4 = 3$ . Therefore  $B = \{-\sqrt{3}, -1, \sqrt{3}, 3\}$ .

6.41 ★★ Let  $f(x) = \frac{4^x}{4^x + 2}$ , compute  $f(\frac{1}{1001}) + f(\frac{2}{1001}) + \dots + f(\frac{1000}{1001})$ .

Solution: Since  $f(1-x) = \frac{4^{1-x}}{4^{1-x}+2} = \frac{4}{4+2\times 4^x} = \frac{2}{4^x+2}$ , then  $f(x) + f(1-x) = \frac{4^x}{4^x+2} + \frac{2}{4^x+2} = 1$ . Thus  $f(\frac{1}{1001}) + f(\frac{2}{1001}) + \dots + f(\frac{1000}{1001}) = f(\frac{1}{1001}) + f(\frac{1000}{1001}) + f(\frac{2}{1001}) + f(\frac{999}{1001}) + \dots + f(\frac{500}{1001}) + f(\frac{501}{1001}) = \underbrace{1+1+\dots+1}_{500} = 500$ .

6.42 ★★★ Given vectors  $\vec{a} = (\cos \frac{3}{2}x, \sin \frac{3}{2}x)$ ,  $\vec{b} = (\cos \frac{x}{2}, -\sin \frac{x}{2})$ , and  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ .

If the minimum value of  $f(x) = ab - 2\lambda|a+b|$  is  $-\frac{3}{2}$ . Find the value of  $\lambda$ .

Solution:  $ab = (\cos \frac{3}{2}x, \sin \frac{3}{2}x)(\cos \frac{x}{2}, -\sin \frac{x}{2}) = \cos \frac{3x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} - \sin \frac{3x}{2} \sin \frac{x}{2} = \cos 2x$ ,

$|a+b| = \sqrt{(\cos \frac{3x}{2} + \cos \frac{x}{2})^2 + (\sin \frac{3x}{2} - \sin \frac{x}{2})^2} = \sqrt{2(1 + \cos 2x)} = 2|\cos x|$ . Since  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , then  $\cos x > 0$ . Thus  $|a+b| = 2\cos x$ . Hence  $f(x) = ab - 2\lambda|a+b| = \cos 2x - 4\lambda \cos x + 2\lambda^2 - 2\lambda^2 = 2(\cos x - \lambda)^2 - 1 - 2\lambda^2$ . Since  $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , then  $0 \leq \cos x \leq 1$ .

(1) If  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $f(x)$  reaches the minimum value  $-1$  if and only if  $\cos x = 0$ . It is contradicting to the given condition.

(2) If  $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ ,  $f(x)$  reaches the minimum value  $-1 - 2\lambda^2$  if and only if  $\cos x = \lambda$ .

Since  $-1 - 2\lambda^2 = -\frac{3}{2}$ , then  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$ .

(3) If  $\lambda > 1$ ,  $f(x)$  reaches the minimum value  $1 - 4\lambda$  if and only if  $\cos x = 1$ . Since  $1 - 4\lambda = -\frac{3}{2}$ , then  $\lambda = \frac{5}{8}$ . It is contradicting to  $\lambda > 1$ .

As a conclusion,  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$ .

6.43 ★★ Given  $f(x) = x^2 + (\lg a + 2)x + \lg b$ , and  $f(-1) = -2$ .  $f(x) \geq 2x$  holds for all  $x \in R$ . Evaluate  $a + b$ .

Solution: Since  $f(-1) = -2 \Rightarrow 1 - (\lg a + 2) + \lg b = -2 \Rightarrow \lg a = \lg 10b \Rightarrow a = 10b$ . Since  $f(x) \geq 2x$  holds for all  $x \in R$ , then  $x^2 + (\lg a + 2)x + \lg b \geq 2x \Rightarrow x^2 + (\lg a)x + \lg b \geq 0$ . Since the coefficient of  $x^2$  is  $1 > 0$ , then  $\Delta = \lg^2 a - 4\lg b \leq 0 \Rightarrow \lg^2 a - 4(\lg a - 1) \leq 0 \Rightarrow (\lg a - 2)^2 \leq 0$ . Since  $(\lg a - 2)^2 \geq 0$ , then  $(\lg a - 2)^2 = 0$ . Thus  $a = 100$ ,  $b = 10$ . Therefore  $a + b = 110$ .

6.44 ★★ Let the equation of the curve  $C$  is  $y = x^3 - x$ . The graph of  $C$  shifts  $t$  ( $t \neq 0$ ) units to the positive x direction and then shifts  $s$  units to the positive y direction. Then we obtain the curve  $C_1$ . (1) Write the equation of the curve  $C_1$ . (2) Show the curves  $C$  and  $C_1$  are symmetric about the point  $A(\frac{t}{2}, \frac{s}{2})$ . (3) If there is only one intersection between the curves  $C$  and  $C_1$ , show  $s = \frac{t^3}{4} - t$ .

(1) Solution: The equation of the curve  $C_1$  is  $y = (x-t)^3 - (x-t) + s$  ( $t \neq 0$ ).

(2) Proof: We choose an arbitrary point  $B_1(x_1, y_1)$  on the curve  $C$ . Assume  $B_2(x_2, y_2)$  is the symmetric point of  $B_1$  about  $A(\frac{t}{2}, \frac{s}{2})$ , then  $\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} = \frac{t}{2}$ ,  $\frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} = \frac{s}{2}$ . Thus  $x_1 = t - x_2$ ,  $y_1 = s - y_2$ . By substituting them into the equation of  $C$ , we have  $s - y_2 = (t - x_2)^3 - (t - x_2)$ . This means  $y_2 = (x_2 - t)^3 - (x_2 - t) + s$ . Then we show that the point  $B_2(x_2, y_2)$  is on the curve  $C_1$ . Similarly, we can show that the symmetric point of  $C_1$  about  $A(\frac{t}{2}, \frac{s}{2})$  is on the curve  $C$ . Therefore the curves  $C$  and  $C_1$  are symmetric about the point  $A(\frac{t}{2}, \frac{s}{2})$ .

(3) Proof: Since the curves  $C$  and  $C_1$  have a unique intersection point, then the equation system  $\begin{cases} y = x^3 - x \\ y = (x-t)^3 - (x-t) + s \end{cases}$  has only one solution. By eliminating  $y$ , we obtain  $3tx^2 - 3t^2x + (t^3 - t - s) = 0$ . Then  $\Delta = 9t^4 - 12t(t^3 - t - s) = 0$ . This means  $t(t^3 - 4t - 4s) = 0$ . Since  $t \neq 0$ , then  $t^3 - 4t - 4s = 0$ . Thus  $s = \frac{t^3}{4} - t \quad (t \neq 0)$ .

6.45 ★★ Given  $f(x) = \lg(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1})$ , show  $f(x)$  and  $f^{-1}(x)$  are both odd functions.

Proof: Let  $y = f(x) = \lg(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1}) \Rightarrow x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} = 10^y \Rightarrow x^2 + 1 = x^2 + 10^{2y} - 2x \cdot 10^y \Rightarrow x = \frac{10^y - 10^{-y}}{2}$ . Thus  $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{10^x - 10^{-x}}{2}, (x \in R)$ . Since  $f(-x) = \lg(-x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1}) = \lg \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1} + x} = -\lg(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1}) = -f(x)$ , then  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

Since  $f^{-1}(-x) = \frac{10^{-x} - 10^x}{2} = -\frac{10^x - 10^{-x}}{2} = -f(x)$ , then  $f^{-1}(x)$  is an odd function on  $R$ .

6.46 ★★★ Given  $f(x) = \frac{x+1-u}{u-x} \quad (u \in R)$ . (1) Is the graph of the function  $y = f(x)$  centrally symmetric? If it is centrally symmetric, please point out its symmetric center. (2) Find the range of  $f(x)$  for  $x \in [u+1, u+2]$ .

**BI** NORWEGIAN BUSINESS SCHOOL

**Empowering People. Improving Business.**

BI Norwegian Business School is one of Europe's largest business schools welcoming more than 20,000 students. Our programmes provide a stimulating and multi-cultural learning environment with an international outlook ultimately providing students with professional skills to meet the increasing needs of businesses.

BI offers four different two-year, full-time Master of Science (MSc) programmes that are taught entirely in English and have been designed to provide professional skills to meet the increasing need of businesses. The MSc programmes provide a stimulating and multi-cultural learning environment to give you the best platform to launch into your career.

- MSc in Business
- MSc in Financial Economics
- MSc in Strategic Marketing Management
- MSc in Leadership and Organisational Psychology

[www.bi.edu/master](http://www.bi.edu/master)

EFMD **EQUIS** ACCREDITED



Solution: (1) From the given condition, we have  $f(x) = \frac{x+1-u}{u-x} = -1 - \frac{1}{x-u}$ ,

then the graph of  $y = f(x)$  can be obtained by shifting the graph of  $g(x) = -\frac{1}{x}$  in the horizontal direction. Since the graph of  $g(x) = -\frac{1}{x}$  is centrally symmetric about the original point, then the graph of the function  $y = f(x)$  is centrally symmetric about  $(u, -1)$ , the symmetric center is  $(u, -1)$ .

(2) Since  $f(x)+2 = \frac{x+1-u}{u-x} + 2 = \frac{u+1-x}{u-x}$ ,  $f(x)+\frac{3}{2} = \frac{x+1-u}{u-x} + \frac{3}{2} = \frac{u+2-x}{2(u-x)}$ .

Thus  $[f(x)+2][f(x)+\frac{3}{2}] = \frac{u+1-x}{u-x} \cdot \frac{u+2-x}{2(u-x)} = \frac{(x-u-1)(x-u-2)}{2(u-x)^2}$ . On the other hand, since  $x \in [u+1, u+2]$ ,  $(u-x)^2 > 0$ , then  $(x-u-1) \geq 0$ ,  $(x-u-2) \leq 0$ . Thus  $[f(x)+2][f(x)+\frac{3}{2}] \leq 0$ . Hence  $-2 \leq f(x) \leq -\frac{3}{2}$ .

6.47 ★★ If  $M = \{z|z = \frac{t}{1+t} + i\frac{1+t}{t}, t \in R, t \neq -1, t \neq 0\}$ ,  $N = \{z|z = \sqrt{2}[\cos(\arcsin t) + i \cdot \cos(\arccos t)], t \in R, |t| \leq 1\}$ . Determine how many elements in  $M \cap N$ .

Solution: The points of the set  $M$  are on the curve  $M$ :  $\begin{cases} x = \frac{t}{1+t} \\ y = \frac{1+t}{t} \end{cases} \quad (t \in R, t \neq -1, t \neq 0)$ .

The points of the set  $N$  are on the curve  $N$ :  $\begin{cases} x = \sqrt{2(1-t^2)} \\ y = \sqrt{2}t \end{cases} \quad (t \in R, |t| \leq 1)$ .

The general equations of the curves  $M$  and  $N$  are  $xy = 1(x \neq 0, 1)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 = 2$ , ( $0 \leq x \leq \sqrt{2}$ ), respectively. Thus the x-coordinates of the intersection points of  $M$  and  $N$  satisfy  $x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} = 2$ . This means  $x = \pm 1$ . Obviously,  $M \cap N = \emptyset$ . Hence,  $M \cap N$  has zero elements.

6.48 ★★★ Given  $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, (x < a) \\ (\frac{x-a}{a-b})^2, (a \leq x \leq b) \\ 1, (x > b) \end{cases}$ . (1) Show  $f(x) \geq \frac{1}{4}$  always

holds for arbitrary  $x \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ . (2) Is there a real number  $c$  such that  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ ? If  $c$  exists, find its range. If  $c$  does not exist, please explain the reason.

(1) Proof: When  $x \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ , ① if  $\frac{a+b}{2} \leq x \leq b$ , then  $f(x) = \frac{1}{(a-b)^2}(x-a)^2$  is an increasing function. Thus  $f(x) \geq \frac{1}{(a-b)^2}\left(\frac{a+b}{2}-a\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$ . ② if  $x > b$ , then  $f(x) = 1 > \frac{1}{4}$ . Thus  $f(x) \geq \frac{1}{4}$  holds when  $x \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ .

(2) Solution: When  $a+b \leq 0$ , since  $f(x) \geq 0$ , then  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$  always holds for arbitrary real number  $c$ . When  $\frac{a+b}{2} > 1$ , since  $f(x) \leq 1$ , then  $c$  does not exist. When  $0 < \frac{a+b}{2} \leq 1$ , if  $c > b$ , then  $f(x) = 1$ . If  $a < c \leq b$ , then  $f(c) = \frac{(c-a)^2}{(a-b)^2} \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ . We get that  $(b-a)\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{2}} + a \leq c \leq b$ . Hence  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$  when  $c \geq (b-a)\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{2}} + a$ . After all, when  $a+b > 2$ , the real number  $c$ , which satisfies  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ , does not exist. When  $a+b \leq 0$ , the real number  $c$ , which satisfies  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$ , exists. When  $0 < a+b \leq 2$ ,  $c \in [(b-a)\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{2}} + a, +\infty]$  makes  $f(c) \geq \frac{a+b}{2}$  hold.

6.49 ★★ Determine how many elements in the set  $\{(x, y) | \lg(x^3 + \frac{1}{3}y^3 + \frac{1}{9}) = \lg x + \lg y\}$ .

Solution: From the properties of the logarithmic function, we get  $x > 0, y > 0$ . Then  $\lg(x^3 + \frac{1}{3}y^3 + \frac{1}{9}) = \lg x + \lg y \Rightarrow x^3 + \frac{1}{3}y^3 + \frac{1}{9} = xy \Rightarrow x^3 + \frac{1}{3}y^3 + \frac{1}{9} \geq 3\sqrt[3]{x^3(\frac{1}{3}y^3)\frac{1}{9}} = xy$ , the equation holds if and only if  $\begin{cases} x^3 = \frac{1}{9} \\ \frac{1}{3}y^3 = \frac{1}{9} \end{cases}$ . Thus  $x = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{9}}, y = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{3}}$ . Hence there is a unique point  $(\sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{9}}, \sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{3}})$  in the set. Therefore the set has one element.

6.50 ★★ Given the functions  $f(x) = 3^x - 1$  and  $g(x) = \log_9(3x + 1)$ . (1) If  $f^{-1}(x) \leq g(x)$ , find the range  $D$  of  $x$ . (2) Let the function  $H(x) = g(x) - \frac{1}{2}f^{-1}(x)$ . What is the range of  $H(x)$  when  $x \in D$ ?

Solution: (1) Since  $f(x) = 3^x - 1$ , then  $f^{-1}(x) = \log_3(x+1)$ . Since  $f^{-1}(x) \leq g(x) \Rightarrow \log_3(x+1) \leq \log_9(3x+1) \Rightarrow \log_3(x+1)^2 \leq \log_9(3x+1) \Rightarrow \begin{cases} (x+1)^2 \leq 3x+1 \\ x+1 > 0 \end{cases}$ .

Then  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ . Thus  $x \in D = [0, 1]$ .

(2)  $H(x) = g(x) - \frac{1}{2}f^{-1}(x) = \log_9(3x+1) - \frac{1}{2}\log_3(x+1) = \log_9(3x+1) - \log_9(x+1) = \log_9 \frac{3x+1}{x+1}, x \in [0, 1]$ . Let  $t = \frac{3x+1}{x+1} = 3 - \frac{2}{x+1}$ . Obviously,  $t$  is increasing on the interval  $[0, 1]$ , then  $1 \leq t \leq 2$ . Hence  $0 \leq H(x) \leq \log_9 2$ . Therefore the range of  $H(x)$  is  $\{y | 0 \leq y \leq \log_9 2\}$ .

**6.51 ★★★** The function  $f(x) = \log_2(x+m)$ , and the numbers  $f(0)$ ,  $f(2)$ ,  $f(6)$  form an arithmetic sequence. (1) Find the value of the real number  $m$ . (2) If  $a, b, c$  are distinct positive numbers, and they form a geometric sequence, determine the order of  $f(a) + f(c)$  and  $2f(b)$ .

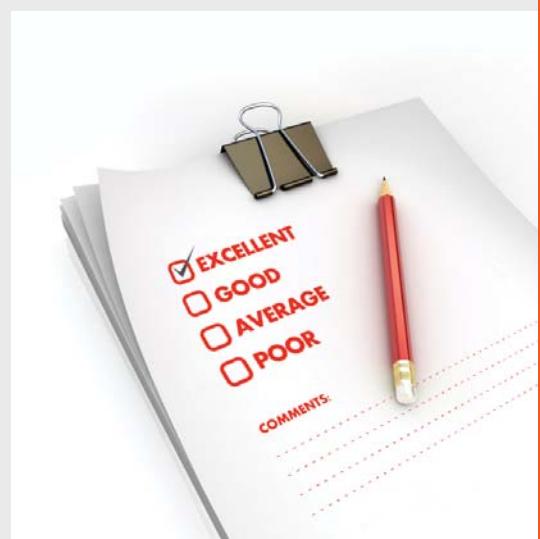
Solution: (1) Since  $f(0)$ ,  $f(2)$ ,  $f(6)$  form an arithmetic sequence, then  $2\log_2(2+m) = \log_2 m + \log_2(m+6) \Rightarrow (m+2)^2 = m(m+6)$ , and  $m > 0$ . Thus  $m = 2$ .

(2) Since  $f(x) = \log_2(x+2)$ , then  $2f(b) = 2\log_2(b+2) = \log_2(b+2)^2$ ,  $f(a) + f(c) = \log_2(a+2) + \log_2(c+2) = \log_2[(a+2)(c+2)]$ . Thus  $(a+2)(c+2) = ac + 2(a+c) + 4 > ac + 4\sqrt{ac} + 4 = b^2 + 4b + 4 = (b+2)^2$ . Hence  $\log_2[(a+2)(c+2)] > \log_2(b+2)^2$ . This means  $\log_2(a+2) + \log_2(c+2) > 2\log_2(b+2)$ . Therefore  $f(a) + f(c) > 2f(b)$ .

## Need help with your dissertation?

Get in-depth feedback & advice from experts in your topic area. Find out what you can do to improve the quality of your dissertation!

**Get Help Now**



Go to [www.helpmyassignment.co.uk](http://www.helpmyassignment.co.uk) for more info

**Helpmyassignment**

6.52 ★★ Given the function  $f(x) = x^{-k^2+k+2}$  ( $k \in Z$ ) and  $f(2) < f(3)$ . (1) Evaluate  $k$ . (2) Is there a positive number  $p$  such that the range of the function  $g(x) = 1 - pf(x) + (2p - 1)x$  is  $[-4, \frac{17}{8}]$  when  $x \in [-1, 2]$ . If  $p$  exists, find its range. If  $p$  does not exist, please explain the reason.

Solution: (1) Since  $f(2) < f(3)$ , then  $-k^2 + k + 2 > 0$ . Thus  $k^2 - k - 2 < 0$ . Since  $k \in Z$ , then  $k = 0$  or  $k = 1$ .

(2) From (1), we have  $f(x) = x^2$ ,  $g(x) = 1 - px^2 + (2p - 1)x = -p(x - \frac{2p-1}{2p})^2 + \frac{4p^2+1}{4p}$ .

When  $\frac{2p-1}{2p} \in [-1, 2]$  which means  $p \in [\frac{1}{4}, +\infty)$ , then  $\frac{4p^2+1}{4p} = \frac{17}{8}$ . We have  $p = 2$

or  $p = \frac{1}{8}$ . Since  $p \in [\frac{1}{4}, +\infty)$ , then  $p = 2$ . Thus  $g(-1) = -4$ ,  $g(2) = -1$ . When

$\frac{2p-1}{2p} \in (2, +\infty)$  Since  $p > 0$ , then such  $p$  does not exist. When  $\frac{2p-1}{2p} \in (-\infty, -1)$

which means  $p \in (0, \frac{1}{4})$ , then  $g(-1) = \frac{17}{8}$ ,  $g(2) = -4$ . Thus such  $p$  does not exist.

After all,  $p = 2$ .

6.53 ★★★ Suppose  $f(x)$  is an increasing function defined on  $(0, +\infty)$ , and  $f(\frac{x}{y}) =$

$f(x) - f(y)$ ,  $f(2) = 1$ . Solve the inequality  $f(x) - f(\frac{1}{x-3}) \leq 2$ .

Proof: Since  $1 = f(2)$ , then  $2 = f(2) + f(2)$ . And  $f(\frac{x}{y}) = f(x) - f(y) \Rightarrow f(y) + f(\frac{x}{y}) = f(x)$ . Let  $y = 2$ ,  $\frac{x}{y} = 2$ , we have  $x = 2y = 4$ . Then  $f(2) + f(2) = f(4)$ . Thus  $f(4) = 2$ .

Hence  $f(x) - f(\frac{1}{x-3}) \leq 2 \Rightarrow f[x(x-3)] \leq f(4)$ . Since  $f(x)$  is an increasing func-

tion on  $(0, +\infty)$ , we have  $\begin{cases} x(x-3) \leq 4 \\ x > 0 \\ x-3 > 0 \end{cases}$ . Solving the equation system to obtain

$3 < x \leq 4$ . Therefore the solution set of the inequality is  $\{x | 3 < x \leq 4\}$ .

6.54 ★★ Let  $f(x) = x^2 + ax + b \cos x$ ,  $\{x | f(x) = 0, x \in R\} = \{x | f(f(x)) = 0, x \in R\} \neq \emptyset$ . Find all values of  $a$  and  $b$  which satisfy the conditions.

Solution: Let  $x_0 \in \{x | f(x) = 0, x \in R\}$ , then  $b = f(0) = f(f(x_0)) = 0$ . Thus  $f(x) = x(x+a)$ ,  $f(f(x)) = f(x)(f(x)+a) = x(x+a)(x^2+ax+a)$ . Obviously,  $a = 0$  satisfies the problem. If  $a \neq 0$ , since the roots of  $x^2+ax+a=0$  are neither 0 nor  $-a$ . Hence  $x^2+ax+a=0$  does not have real roots. Therefore  $\Delta = a^2 - 4a < 0$ . We have  $0 < a < 4$ .

After all, all  $a$  and  $b$  which satisfy the conditions are  $0 \leq a < 4$ ,  $b = 0$ .

6.55 ★★★ Suppose  $a, b, c \in R$ , and their absolute values are no more than 1. Show  $ab + bc + ca + 1 \geq 0$ .

Proof: We introduce the function  $f(a) = ab + bc + ca + 1$ . Since  $a \in [-1, 1]$ , then we only need to show  $f(-1) \geq 0$ ,  $f(1) \geq 0$ . Then we show  $f(a) \geq 0$ .

When  $a = -1$ , then  $f(-1) = -b + bc - c + 1 = (b-1)(c-1)$ . Since  $b, c \in [-1, 1]$ , then  $(b-1)(c-1) \geq 0$ . Thus  $f(-1) \geq 0$ .

When  $a = 1$ , then  $f(1) = b + bc + c + 1 = (b+1)(c+1)$ . Since  $b, c \in [-1, 1]$ , then  $(b+1)(c+1) \geq 0$ . Thus  $f(1) \geq 0$ . Therefore  $ab + bc + ca + 1 \geq 0$ .

6.56 ★★ The function  $f(x) = \frac{a \cdot 2^x - 1}{2^x + 1}$  ( $a \in R$ ) is an odd function. (1) Evaluate  $a$ . (2) Find the inverse function of  $f(x)$ . (3) For arbitrary  $k \in (0, +\infty)$ , solve the inequality of  $f^{-1}(x) > \log_2 \frac{1+x}{k}$ .

Solution: (1) Since the  $f(x)$  is an odd function, we have  $f(0) = 0$ . Then  $\frac{a-1}{2} = 0$ .

Thus  $a = 1$ . While  $f(x) + f(-x) = \frac{2^x - 1}{2^x + 1} + \frac{2^{-x} - 1}{2^{-x} + 1} = \frac{2^x - 1}{2^x + 1} + \frac{1 - 2^x}{1 + 2^x} = 0$  satisfies that  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

(2) Since  $y = f(x) = \frac{2^x - 1}{2^x + 1} = 1 - \frac{2}{2^x + 1}$ , then  $2^x = \frac{1+y}{1-y}$ , ( $-1 < y < 1$ ). Thus  $f^{-1}(x) = \log_2 \frac{1+x}{1-x}$ , ( $-1 < x < 1$ ).

(3) Since  $f^{-1}(x) = \log_2 \frac{1+x}{1-x} > \log_2 \frac{1+x}{k} \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{1+x}{1-x} > \frac{1+x}{k} \\ -1 < x < 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} x > 1-k \\ -1 < x < 1 \end{cases}$ .

When  $0 < k < 2$ , the solution set of the inequality is  $\{x | 1-k < x < 1\}$ . When  $k \geq 2$ , the solution set of the inequality is  $\{x | -1 < x < 1\}$ .

6.57 ★★ The function  $f(x)$  is defined for real numbers, and  $f(x+2)f(1-f(x)) = 1 + f(x)$ . (1) Show that  $f(x)$  is a periodic function. (2) If  $f(1) = 2 + \sqrt{3}$ , find the value of  $f(2013)$ .

(1) Proof: Since  $f(x+2)(1-f(x)) = 1 + f(x)$  holds on  $R$ , then  $f(1) \neq 1$ . Thus  $f(x+2) = \frac{1+f(x)}{1-f(x)}$ . Hence  $f(x+4) = f[(x+2)+2] = \frac{1+f(x+2)}{1-f(x+2)} = \frac{1+\frac{1+f(x)}{1-f(x)}}{1-\frac{1+f(x)}{1-f(x)}} = \frac{2}{-2f(x)} = -\frac{1}{f(x)}$ . On the other hand,  $f(x+8) = f[(x+4)+4] = -\frac{1}{f(x+4)} = f(x)$ , then  $f(x)$  is a periodic function with the period 8.

(2) Solution: Since  $f(1) = 2 + \sqrt{3}$  and  $f(x)$  is a periodic function with the period 8, we have  $f(8k+1) = 2 + \sqrt{3}$ , ( $k \in Z$ ). Thus  $f(2009) = f(251 \times 8 + 1) = f(1) = 2 + \sqrt{3}$ ,  $f(2013) = f(2009+4) = -\frac{1}{f(2009)} = -\frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}} = \sqrt{3} - 2$ .

6.58 ★★★ Find the range of the function  $y = x + \sqrt{x^2 - 3x + 2}$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $\sqrt{x^2 - 3x + 2} = y - x \geq 0$ . Then we square both sides of the equation to obtain  $x^2 - 3x + 2 = y^2 - 2xy + x^2$ . This means  $(2y - 3)x = y^2 - 2$ . From the above equation, we have  $y \neq \frac{3}{2}$  and  $x = \frac{y^2 - 2}{2y - 3}$ . Additionally, since  $y \geq x$ , then  $y \geq \frac{y^2 - 2}{2y - 3} \Rightarrow \frac{y^2 - 3y + 2}{2y - 3} \geq 0 \Rightarrow \frac{(y-1)(y-2)}{y-\frac{3}{2}} \geq 0$ .

Then  $1 \leq y < \frac{3}{2}$  or  $y \geq 2$ .

Now we have  $y_0 \in [2, +\infty)$  arbitrarily. Let  $x_0 = \frac{y_0^2 - 2}{2y_0 - 3}$ , then  $x_0 - 2 = \frac{y_0^2 - 2}{2y_0 - 3} - 2 = \frac{(y_0 - 2)^2}{2y_0 - 3} \geq 0$ . Thus  $x_0 \geq 2$ . Hence  $x_0^2 - 3x_0 + 2 \geq 0$ , and  $y_0 = x_0 + \sqrt{x_0^2 - 3x_0 + 2}$ .

We have  $y \in [1, \frac{3}{2})$  arbitrarily. Let  $x_0 = \frac{y_0^2 - 2}{2y_0 - 3}$ , then  $x_0 - 1 = \frac{y_0^2 - 2}{2y_0 - 3} - 1 = \frac{(y_0 - 1)^2}{2y_0 - 3} \leq 0$ . Thus  $x_0 \leq 1$ . Hence  $x_0^2 - 3x_0 + 2 \geq 0$ , and  $y_0 = x_0 + \sqrt{x_0^2 - 3x_0 + 2}$ .

As a conclusion, the range of the function  $y = x + \sqrt{x^2 - 3x + 2}$  is  $[1, \frac{3}{2}) \cup [2, +\infty)$ .

## Brain power

By 2020, wind could provide one-tenth of our planet's electricity needs. Already today, SKF's innovative know-how is crucial to running a large proportion of the world's wind turbines.

Up to 25 % of the generating costs relate to maintenance. These can be reduced dramatically thanks to our systems for on-line condition monitoring and automatic lubrication. We help make it more economical to create cleaner, cheaper energy out of thin air.

By sharing our experience, expertise, and creativity, industries can boost performance beyond expectations.

Therefore we need the best employees who can meet this challenge!

The Power of Knowledge Engineering

Plug into The Power of Knowledge Engineering.  
Visit us at [www.skf.com/knowledge](http://www.skf.com/knowledge)

**SKF**

6.59 ★★ Given the coefficient of the quadratic term of the quadratic function  $f(x)$  is  $a$ , and the solution of the inequality  $f(x) > -2x$  is  $(1, 3)$ . (1) If the function  $f(x) + 6a = 0$  has two equal roots, find the analytic form of  $f(x)$ . (2) If the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is a positive number, find the range of  $a$ .

Solution: (1) Since the solution of the inequality  $f(x) > -2x$  is  $(1, 3)$ , we let  $f(x) + 2x = a(x-1)(x-3)$  and  $a < 0$ . Then  $f(x) = a(x-1)(x-3) - 2x = ax^2 - (2+4a)x + 3a$  ①. By substituting the equation  $f(x) + 6a = 0$  into ①, we have  $ax^2 - (2+4a)x + 9a = 0$  ②. Since the equation ② has two equal roots, then  $\Delta = [-(2+4a)]^2 - 36a^2 = 0$ . Thus  $a = 1$  or  $a = -\frac{1}{5}$ . Since  $a < 0$ , then  $a = -\frac{1}{5}$ . By substituting  $a = -\frac{1}{5}$  into ①, we have

$$f(x) = -\frac{1}{5}x^2 - \frac{6}{5}x - \frac{3}{5}.$$

(2) Since  $f(x) = ax^2 - 2(1+2a)x + 3a = a(x - \frac{1+2a}{a})^2 - \frac{a^2+4a+1}{a}$  and  $a < 0$ , then the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $-\frac{a^2+4a+1}{a}$ . Since  $\begin{cases} -\frac{a^2+4a+1}{a} > 0 \\ a < 0 \end{cases}$ , then  $a < -2 - \sqrt{3}$  or  $-2 + \sqrt{3} < a < 0$ . Therefore the range of  $a$  is  $(-\infty, -2 - \sqrt{3})$  or  $(-2 + \sqrt{3}, 0)$  when the maximum value of  $f(x)$  is positive.

6.60 ★★ Given  $f(x) = (x^n + c)^m$ ,  $g(x) = (ax^m + 1)$ ,  $h(x) = (bx^n + 1)$ , and  $f(x) \equiv g(x)h(x)$  where  $m, n$  are both positive integers. Compute  $|a + b + c|$ .

Solution: Since  $f(x) \equiv g(x)h(x)$ , then  $(x^n + c)^m \equiv (ax^m + 1)(bx^n + 1)$ . Comparing the leading terms, we have  $mn = m + n \Rightarrow (m-1)(n-1) = 1$ . Since  $m, n$  are both positive integers, then  $m = 2, n = 2$ . Thus  $(x^2 + c)^2 \equiv (ax^2 + 1)(bx^2 + 1) \Rightarrow x^4 + 2cx^2 + c^2 \equiv abx^4 + (a+b)x^2 + 1 \Rightarrow \begin{cases} ab = 1 \\ a+b = 2c \\ c^2 = 1 \end{cases}$ . Then  $a = 1, b = 1, c = 1$  or  $a = -1, b = -1, c = -1$ . Hence  $|a + b + c| = 3$ .

6.61 ★★★ Given the function  $f(x) = ax^2 + 4x + b$  ( $a < 0, a, b \in R$ ), the two real roots of the equation  $f(x) = 0$  with respect to  $x$  are  $x_1, x_2$ , and the two real roots of the equation  $f(x) = x$  with respect to  $x$  are  $\alpha, \beta$ .

(1) If  $|\alpha - \beta| = 1$ , Find the relation formula between  $a$  and  $b$ . (2) If  $a$  and  $b$  are both negative integers, and  $|\alpha - \beta| = 1$ , find the analytic expression of  $f(x)$ . (3) If  $\alpha < 1 < \beta < 2$ , show  $(x_1 + 1)(x_2 + 1) < 7$ .

Solution: (1) Since  $f(x) = ax^2 + 4x + b$  and  $f(x) = x$ , then  $ax^2 + 3x + b = 0$ . From the given condition, we have  $\begin{cases} \alpha + \beta = -\frac{3}{a} \\ \alpha\beta = \frac{b}{a} \\ |\alpha - \beta| = 1 \end{cases}$ . Then  $a^2 + 4ab = 9$ .

(2) Since  $a, b$  are both negative integers, then  $a + 4b$  is also a negative integer, and  $a + 4b \leq -5$ . Since  $a^2 + 4ab = 9$ , then  $a(a + 4b) = 9$ . Thus  $a = -1, a + 4b = -9$ . Then  $b = -2$ . Hence  $f(x) = -x^2 + 4x - 2$ .

(3) Let  $g(x) = ax^2 + 3x + b$ , then the sufficient and necessary condition of  $\alpha < 1 < \beta < 2$  is  $\begin{cases} g(1) > 0 \\ g(2) < 0 \end{cases}$ , that is  $\begin{cases} a + b + 3 > 0 \\ 4a + b + 6 < 0 \end{cases}$ . Since  $x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{4}{a}$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = \frac{b}{a}$ , then  $(x_1 + 1)(x_2 + 1) - 7 = x_1 x_2 + (x_1 + x_2) - 6 = \frac{b}{a} - \frac{4}{a} - 6 = \frac{-6a + b - 4}{a} = \frac{\frac{10}{3}g(1) - \frac{7}{3}g(2)}{a}$ . Since  $g(1) > 0, g(2) < 0, a < 0$ , then  $(x_1 + 1)(x_2 + 1) - 7 < 0$ . Thus we show that  $(x_1 + 1)(x_2 + 1) < 7$ .

6.62 ★★ Let  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  ( $a > b > c$ ),  $f(1) = 0$ ,  $g(x) = ax + b$ .

(1) Show the graphs of  $y = f(x)$  and  $y = g(x)$  have two intersection points.

(2) Let the two intersection points of the graphs of  $y = f(x)$  and  $y = g(x)$  are  $A, B$ , their projections on x-axis are  $A_1, B_1$ . Find the range of  $|A_1 B_1|$ .

(1) Proof: From the given condition, we have  $\begin{cases} a + b + c = 0 \\ a > b > c \end{cases} \Rightarrow a > 0, c < 0$ . Let  $ax^2 + bx + c = ax + b$ , then  $ax^2 + (b-a)x + c - b = 0$ ,  $\Delta = (b-a)^2 - 4a(c-b) = (b+a)^2 - 4ac$ . Since  $a > 0, c < 0$ , then  $\Delta > 0$ . Thus the graphs of  $y = f(x)$  and  $y = g(x)$  have two intersection points.

(2) Solution: Let the two roots of  $ax^2 + (b-a)x + c - b = 0$  are  $x_1, x_2$ , then  $x_1 + x_2 = \frac{a-b}{a}$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = \frac{c-b}{a}$ . Thus  $|A_1 B_1| = |x_1 - x_2| = \sqrt{(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1 x_2} = \sqrt{\frac{(b+a)^2 - 4ac}{a^2}}$ . Since  $b = -(a+c)$ , then  $|A_1 B_1| = \sqrt{\frac{c^2 - 4ac}{a^2}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{c}{a}\right)^2 - 4\left(\frac{c}{a}\right)} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{c}{a} - 2\right)^2 - 4}$ . Since  $b = -(a+c)$  and  $a > b > c, a > 0, c < 0$ , then  $\begin{cases} a > -(a+c) \\ -(a+c) > c \end{cases}$ .

Solve the equation system, then  $-2 < \frac{c}{a} < -\frac{1}{2}$ . Thus  $\frac{3}{2} < |A_1 B_1| < 2\sqrt{3}$ . Hence the range of  $|A_1 B_1|$  is  $(\frac{3}{2}, 2\sqrt{3})$ .

6.63 ★★ The function  $f(x)$  is defined for real numbers, and for arbitrary  $x, y \in R$ ,  $f(x) + f(y) = f(x+y) - xy - 1$ . Since  $f(1) = 1$ , Find the integer number  $n$  such that  $f(n) = n$ .

Solution: For the given equation, let  $y = 1$ , then  $f(x+1) = f(x) + x + 2$ . Thus  $f(x+1) > x+1$  when  $x \in Z$ . For the given equation, let  $x = y = 0$ , then  $2f(0) = f(0) - 1$ . Thus  $f(0) = -1$ . Let  $x = -1, y = 1$ , then  $f(-1) + f(1) = f(0)$ . Thus  $f(-1) = f(0) - f(1) = -2$ . Let  $x = -2, y = 1$ , then  $f(-2) + f(1) = f(-1) + 1$ . Thus  $f(-2) = f(-1) - f(1) + 1 = -2$ . When  $x \in Z, x \leq -3$ , then  $f(x) > x$ . Therefore the integer number  $n$  such that  $f(n) = n$  is  $n = 1$  or  $n = -2$ .

6.64 ★★ Given the odd function  $f(x)$  defined for real numbers, and  $f(x) > 0$  when  $x \geq 0$ . Does there exist a real number  $\lambda$  such that  $f(\cos 2\theta - 3) + f(4\lambda - 2\lambda \cos \theta) > f(0)$  hold for all  $\theta \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ ? If yes, find its range. If no, please explain the reason.

Solution: Since  $f(x)$  is an odd function and is an increasing function on  $[0, +\infty)$ , then  $f(x)$  is an increasing function on  $R$ , and  $f(0) = 0$ . Since  $f(\cos 2\theta - 3) + f(4\lambda - 2\lambda \cos \theta) > f(0) = 0 \Rightarrow f(\cos 2\theta - 3) > -f(4\lambda - 2\lambda \cos \theta) = f(2\lambda \cos \theta - 4\lambda) \Rightarrow \cos 2\theta - 3 > 2\lambda \cos \theta - 4\lambda \Rightarrow \cos^2 \theta - \lambda \cos \theta + 2\lambda - 2 > 0$ . If the inequality hold for arbitrary  $\theta \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , we should have  $\lambda$  is larger than the maximum value of  $y = \frac{2 - \cos^2 \theta}{2 - \cos \theta}$ .

Let  $t = \cos \theta \in [0, 1]$ , then  $y = \frac{2 - t^2}{2 - t} \Rightarrow t^2 - yt + 2y - 2 = 0$ ,  $\Delta = y^2 - 8y + 8 \geq 0$ . Thus  $y_{max} = 4 - 2\sqrt{2}$ . Hence  $\lambda \in (4 - 2\sqrt{2}, +\infty)$ .

6.65 ★★★ If the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + 1$  ( $a, b \in R, a > 0$ ), and the function  $f(x) = x$  has two real roots  $x_1, x_2$ . (1) If  $x_1 < 2 < x_2 < 4$ , let the symmetric axis of  $f(x)$  is  $x = x_0$ . Show  $x_0 > -1$ . (2) If  $|x_1| < 2, |x_2 - x_1| = 2$ , find the range of  $b$ .

(1) Proof: Let  $g(x) = f(x) - x = ax^2 + (b-1)x + 1$ , then the two roots of  $g(x) = 0$  are  $x_1, x_2$ . Since  $a > 0$  and  $x_1 < 2 < x_2 < 4$ , we have  $\begin{cases} g(2) < 0 \\ g(4) > 0 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} 4a + 2b - 1 < 0 \\ 16a + 4b - 3 > 0 \end{cases}$

## TURN TO THE EXPERTS FOR SUBSCRIPTION CONSULTANCY

Subscrybe is one of the leading companies in Europe when it comes to innovation and business development within subscription businesses.

We innovate new subscription business models or improve existing ones. We do business reviews of existing subscription businesses and we develop acquisition and retention strategies.

Learn more at [linkedin.com/company/subscrybe/](https://www.linkedin.com/company/subscrybe/) or contact Managing Director Morten Suhr Hansen at [mha@subscrybe.dk](mailto:mha@subscrybe.dk)

**SUBSCRYBE** - to the future



$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} 3 + 3 \cdot \frac{b}{2a} - \frac{3}{4a} < 0 & \textcircled{1} \\ -4 - 2 \cdot \frac{b}{2a} + \frac{3}{4a} < 0 & \textcircled{2} \end{cases} \quad \text{By } \textcircled{1} + \textcircled{2}, \text{ we have } \frac{b}{2a} < 1. \text{ Thus } x_0 = -\frac{b}{2a} > -1.$$

(2) Solution:  $(x_1 - x_2)^2 = (x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1x_2 = (\frac{b-1}{a})^2 - \frac{4}{a} = 4 \Rightarrow 2a + 1 = \sqrt{(b-1)^2 + 1}$ . Since  $x_1x_2 = \frac{1}{a} > 0$ , then the signs of  $x_1, x_2$  are same. Thus  $|x_1| < 2, |x_2 - x_1| = 2$  are equivalent to  $\begin{cases} 0 < x_1 < 2 < x_2 \\ 2a + 1 = \sqrt{(b-1)^2 + 1} \end{cases}$  or  $\begin{cases} x_2 < -2 < x_1 < 0 \\ 2a + 1 = \sqrt{(b-1)^2 + 1} \end{cases}$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} g(2) < 0 \\ g(0) > 0 \\ 2a + 1 = \sqrt{(b-1)^2 + 1} \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{cases} g(-2) < 0 \\ g(0) > 0 \\ 2a + 1 = \sqrt{(b-1)^2 + 1} \end{cases}. \quad \text{Then we have } b < \frac{1}{4}$$

or  $b > \frac{7}{4}$ .

6.66 ★★★ Given a linear function  $f(x) = kx + h$  ( $k \neq 0$ ).  $f(m) > 0$  and  $f(n) > 0$  when  $m < n$ .

(1) Show  $f(x) > 0$  holds for arbitrary  $x \in (m, n)$ . (2) By applying the condition of (1), show if  $a, b, c \in R$  and  $|a| < 1, |b| < 1, |c| < 1$ , then  $ab + bc + ca > -1$ .

Proof: (1) When  $k > 0$ , then the function  $f(x) = kx + h$  is an increasing function on  $x \in R, m < x < n, f(x) > f(m) > 0$ . When  $k < 0$ , then the function  $f(x) = kx + h$  is a decreasing function on  $x \in R, m < x < n, f(x) > f(n) > 0$ . Thus  $f(x) > 0$  holds for arbitrary  $x \in (m, n)$ .

(2) Rewrite  $ab + bc + ca + 1$  as  $(b+c)a + bc + 1$ . Introduce the function  $f(x) = (b+c)x + bc + 1$ . Then  $f(a) = (b+c)a + bc + 1$ .  $f(a) = bc + 1 = -c^2 + 1$  when  $b + c = 0$  which means  $b = -c$ . Since  $|c| < 1$ , then  $f(a) = -c^2 + 1 > 0$ . When  $b + c \neq 0$ , then  $f(x) = (b+c)x + bc + 1$  is a linear function. Since  $|b| < 1, |c| < 1$ , then  $f(1) = b + c + bc + 1 = (1+b)(1+c) > 0, f(-1) = -b - c + bc + 1 = (1-b)(1-c) > 0$ . From (1), we obtain all  $f(a) > 0$  for  $|a| < 1$ . Thus  $(b+c)a + bc + 1 = ab + bc + ca + 1 > 0$ . Hence we show that  $ab + bc + ca > -1$ .

6.67 ★★ Let  $P(x+a, y_1), Q(x, y_2), R(2+a, y_3)$  be the three distinct points on the graph of the inverse function of the function  $f(x) = 2^x + a$ . If there is one but the only one real number  $x$  such that  $y_1, y_2, y_3$  form an arithmetic sequence, find the range of  $a$ . And Compute the area of  $\triangle PQR$  when the distance from the origin to the point  $R$  is smallest.

Solution: From the given condition,  $P(x+a, y_1), Q(x, y_2), R(2+a, y_3)$  are on the graph of the function  $f^{-1}(x) = \log_2(x-a)$ . Then  $y_1 = \log_2 x, y_2 = \log_2(x-a),$

$y_3 = 1$ . Since  $y_1 + y_3 = 2y_2$ , then  $\log_2 x + 1 = 2\log_2(x-a) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x > a \\ (x-a)^2 = 2x \end{cases}$ .

From the given condition, the equation  $x^2 - (2a + 2)x + a^2 = 0$  has an unique root. Then  $\Delta = (2a + 2)^2 - 4a^2 = 0$ . Thus  $a = -\frac{1}{2}$  or  $a \geq 0$ . Additionally,  $|OR|^2 = (2+a)^2 + 1$ . When  $a = -\frac{1}{2}$ , then  $|OR|$  reaches the minimum value, for which  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $P(0, -1)$ ,  $Q(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ ,  $R(\frac{3}{2}, 1)$ . Since  $|PQ| = \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2} - 0)^2 + (0 + 1)^2} = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$ , the distance from the point  $R$  to the straight line  $PQ : 2x - y - 1 = 0$  is  $d = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ . Hence  $S_{\triangle PQR} = \frac{1}{2}|PQ| \cdot d = \frac{1}{4}$ .

**6.68 ★★** Given the function  $f(x) = 2^x - \frac{a}{2^x}$ . (1) The graph of  $y = g(x)$  is the graph of  $y = f(x)$  shifted to the right by 2 units. Find the analytic expression of  $g(x)$ . (2) The graph of  $y = h(x)$  and the graph of  $y = g(x)$  are symmetric about the line  $y = 1$ . Find the analytic expression of  $h(x)$ . (3) Let  $F(x) = \frac{1}{a}f(x) + h(x)$ , the minimum value of  $F(x)$  is  $m$ , and  $m > 2 + \sqrt{7}$ , find the range of the real number  $a$ .

Solution: (1)  $g(x) = f(x - 2) = 2^{x-2} - \frac{a}{2^{x-2}}$

(2) An arbitrary point on  $y = h(x)$  is  $P(x, y)$ . Then the symmetric point of  $P$  about the linear line  $y = 1$  is  $Q(x, 2 - y)$  and the point  $Q$  is on the graph  $y = g(x)$ . Thus  $h(x) = 2 - 2^{x-2} + \frac{a}{2^{x-2}}$ .

$$(3) F(x) = \frac{1}{a}(2^x - \frac{a}{2^x}) + 2 - 2^{x-2} + \frac{a}{2^{x-2}} = (\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{4})2^x + (4a - 1)\frac{1}{2^x} + 2.$$

① When  $a < 0$ ,  $\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{4} < 0$ ,  $4a - 1 < 0$ , then  $F(x) < 2$ . It is contradictory with  $m > 2 + \sqrt{7}$ .

② When  $0 < a \leq \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{4} > 0$ ,  $4a - 1 \leq 0$ , then  $F(x)$  is an increasing function on  $R$ . Thus  $F(x)$  has no minimum value.

③ When  $\frac{1}{4} < a < 4$ ,  $\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{4} > 0$ ,  $4a - 1 > 0$ , then  $F(x) \geq 2\sqrt{\frac{(4-a)(4a-1)}{4a}} + 2 = m$ .

Since  $m > 2 + \sqrt{7}$ , then  $\begin{cases} \frac{1}{4} < a < 4 \\ \frac{(4-a)(4a-1)}{a} > 7 \end{cases}$ . Then  $\frac{1}{2} < a < 2$ .

**6.69 ★★** If an odd function  $f(x)$  is defined on  $R$ , and  $f(x) = 2x - x^2$  when  $x \geq 0$ . Let the range of the function  $y = f(x)$ ,  $x \in [a, b]$  be  $[\frac{1}{b}, \frac{1}{a}]$ , ( $a \neq b$ ). Find the values of  $a, b$ .

Solution: Since  $y = f(x)$  is an odd function, then  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x$  when  $x < 0$ . Thus  $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - x^2, (x \geq 0) \\ x^2 + 2x, (x < 0) \end{cases}$ . Since  $[a, b]$  and  $[\frac{1}{b}, \frac{1}{a}]$  exist at the same time, and  $a \neq b$ , then  $a < b$ ,  $\frac{1}{b} < \frac{1}{a}$ . Thus the signs of  $a, b$  are same.

① When  $1 \leq a < b$ , since  $\begin{cases} 2a - a^2 = \frac{1}{a} \\ 2b - b^2 = \frac{1}{b} \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} (a-1)(a^2-a-1) = 0 \\ (b-1)(b^2-b-1) = 0 \end{cases}$  We have  
 $a = 1, b = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}.$

② When  $-\infty < a < b \leq -1$ , since  $\begin{cases} 2a + a^2 = \frac{1}{a} \\ 2b + b^2 = \frac{1}{b} \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} (a+1)(a^2+a-1) = 0 \\ (b+1)(b^2+b-1) = 0 \end{cases}$  We have  $a = \frac{-1-\sqrt{5}}{2}, b = -1.$

③ When  $0 < a < b < 1$ , since  $\begin{cases} 2a - a^2 = \frac{1}{b} \\ 2b - b^2 = \frac{1}{a} \end{cases}$ . The equation system has no solution.

④ When  $-1 < a < b < 0$ , since  $\begin{cases} 2a + a^2 = \frac{1}{b} \\ 2b + b^2 = \frac{1}{a} \end{cases}$ . The equation system has no solution.

⑤ When  $0 < a < 1 < b < +\infty$ , since  $\frac{1}{a} = 1$ , then  $a = 1$ . It is contradicting to  $a < 1$ .

⑥ When  $-\infty < a < -1 < b < 0$ , since  $\frac{1}{b} = -1$ , then  $b = -1$ . It is contradicting to  $b > -1$ .

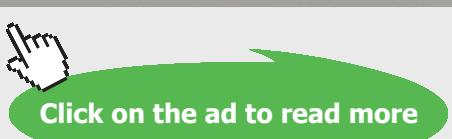
**What do you want to do?**

No matter what you want out of your future career, an employer with a broad range of operations in a load of countries will always be the ticket. Working within the Volvo Group means more than 100,000 friends and colleagues in more than 185 countries all over the world. We offer graduates great career opportunities – check out the Career section at our web site [www.volvologroup.com](http://www.volvologroup.com). We look forward to getting to know you!

**VOLVO**

AB Volvo (publ)  
[www.volvologroup.com](http://www.volvologroup.com)

VOLVO TRUCKS | RENAULT TRUCKS | MACK TRUCKS | VOLVO BUSES | VOLVO CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT | VOLVO PENTA | VOLVO AERO | VOLVO IT  
 VOLVO FINANCIAL SERVICES | VOLVO 3P | VOLVO POWERTRAIN | VOLVO PARTS | VOLVO TECHNOLOGY | VOLVO LOGISTICS | BUSINESS AREA ASIA



As a conclusion, we have  $\begin{cases} a = 1 \\ b = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \end{cases}$  or  $\begin{cases} a = \frac{-1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \\ b = -1 \end{cases}$ .

**6.70 ★★** Given a function  $f(x)$ , and  $f(x+y) - f(y) = (x+2y+1)x$  holds for all  $x, y$ , and  $f(1) = 0$ .

(1) Evaluate  $f(0)$ . (2) If  $f(x_1) + 2 < \log_a x_2$  holds for arbitrary  $x_1 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $x_2 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ , find the range of  $a$ .

Solution: (1) Let  $x = 1$  and  $y = 0$  in the formula  $f(x+y) - f(y) = (x+2y+1)x$ , then  $f(1) - f(0) = 2$ . Since  $f(1) = 0$ , then  $f(0) = -2$ .

(2) Let  $y = 0$  in the formula  $f(x+y) - f(y) = (x+2y+1)x$ , then  $f(x) - f(0) = (x+1)x$ . From (1), we have  $f(0) = -2$ . Then  $f(x) + 2 = x^2 + x$ . Since  $x_1 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ , then  $f(x_1) + 2 = x_1^2 + x_1 = (x_1 + \frac{1}{2})^2 - \frac{1}{4}$  is increasing when  $x_1 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ . Thus  $f(x_1) + 2 \in (0, \frac{3}{4})$ . To make  $f(x_1) + 2 < \log_a x_2$  hold for arbitrary  $x_1 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $x_2 \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ , when  $a > 1$ ,  $\log_a x_2 < \log_a \frac{1}{2}$ , obviously the inequality does not hold. when  $0 < a < 1$ ,  $\log_a x_2 > \log_a \frac{1}{2}$ , then  $\begin{cases} 0 < a < 1 \\ \log_a \frac{1}{2} \geq \frac{3}{4} \end{cases}$ . Solving the inequality system to generate  $\frac{\sqrt[3]{4}}{4} \leq a < 1$ .

**6.71 ★★★** If on the interval  $[1, 2]$ , the function  $f(x) = x^2 + px + q$  ( $p \in [-4, -2]$ ) and  $g(x) = x + \frac{1}{x^2}$  reach the same minimum value on the same point. Find the maximum value of  $f(x)$  on the interval.

Solution: When  $x \in [1, 2]$ ,  $g(x) = x + \frac{1}{x^2} = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{x^2} \geq 3 \cdot \sqrt[3]{\frac{x}{2} \cdot \frac{x}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{x^2}} = \frac{3}{2}\sqrt[3]{2}$ , and the equation holds if and only if  $\frac{x}{2} = \frac{1}{x^2}$  i.e.  $x = \sqrt[3]{2} \in [1, 2]$ . Thus  $g(x)_{\min} = \frac{3}{2}\sqrt[3]{2}$ .

On the other hand,  $f(x) = x^2 + px + q = (x + \frac{p}{2})^2 + \frac{4q-p^2}{4}$ . Since  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  reach the same minimum value on the same point, then  $-\frac{p}{2} = \sqrt[3]{2}$ ,  $\frac{4q-p^2}{4} = \frac{3}{2}\sqrt[3]{2}$ .

Thus  $p = -2\sqrt[3]{2}$ ,  $q = \frac{3}{2}\sqrt[3]{2} + \sqrt[3]{4}$ .

Since the symmetric axis of  $f(x) = x^2 + px + q$  is  $x = \sqrt[3]{2}$  and the coefficient of the quadratic term is positive, then the function  $f(x)$  is decreasing on the interval  $[1, \sqrt[3]{2}]$ .

Thus  $f(1) = 1 - \frac{\sqrt[3]{2}}{2} + \sqrt[3]{4}$  when  $x = 1$ . The function  $f(x)$  is increasing on the interval  $[\sqrt[3]{2}, 2]$ . Thus  $f(2) = 4 - \frac{5}{2}\sqrt[3]{2} + \sqrt[3]{4}$  when  $x = 2$ . Since  $f(2) > f(1)$ . Therefore the maximum value of  $f(x)$  on the interval  $[1, 2]$  is  $f_{\max}(x) = f(2) = 4 - \frac{5}{2}\sqrt[3]{2} + \sqrt[3]{4}$ .

6.72 ★★★ Suppose the function  $y = f(x)$  is a periodic function defined on  $R$  with the period 5. The function  $y = f(x)$  is an odd function on the interval  $[-1, 1]$ .  $y = f(x)$  is a linear function on the  $[0, 1]$ , and it is a quadratic function on the interval  $[1, 4]$ . The function reaches its minimum value -5 occurring at  $x = 2$ .

(1) Show  $f(1) + f(4) = 0$ . (2) Find the analytic expression of  $y = f(x)$  when  $x \in [1, 4]$ .

(3) Find the analytic expression of  $y = f(x)$  when  $x \in [4, 9]$ .

(1) Proof: Since  $f(x)$  is a periodic function with the period 5, then  $f(4) = f(4-5) = f(-1)$ . Since  $y = f(x)$  is an odd function on the interval  $[-1, 1]$ , then  $f(1) = -f(-1) = -f(4)$ . Thus  $f(1) + f(4) = 0$ .

(2) Solution: According to the given condition, we assume  $f(x) = a(x-2)^2 - 5 (a > 0)$  when  $x \in [1, 4]$ . From (1), then  $f(1) + f(4) = 0$ , that is  $a(1-2)^2 - 5 + a(4-2)^2 - 5 = 0$ . Thus  $a = 2$ . Hence  $f(x) = 2(x-2)^2 - 5, (1 \leq x \leq 4)$ .

(3) Solution: Since  $y = f(x)$  is an odd function on the interval  $[-1, 1]$ , then  $f(0) = 0$ . Since  $y = f(x)$  is a linear function on the  $[0, 1]$ , we choose  $f(x) = kx (0 \leq x \leq 1)$ . Since  $f(1) = 2(1-2)^2 - 5 = -3$ , then  $k = -3$ . Thus, when  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ , then  $f(x) = -3x$ . When  $-1 \leq x < 0$ , then  $f(x) = -f(-x) = -3x$ . When  $-1 \leq x \leq 1$ , then  $f(x) = -3x$ . Hence, when  $4 \leq x \leq 6$ , which is equivalent to  $-1 \leq x-5 \leq 1$ , then  $f(x) = f(x-5) = -3(x-5) = -3x+15$ . When  $6 < x \leq 9$ , which is equivalent to  $1 < x-5 \leq 4$ , then  $f(x) = f(x-5) = 2[(x-5)-2]^2 - 5 = 2(x-7)^2 - 5$ .

$$\text{Thus } f(x) = \begin{cases} -3x+15, & (4 \leq x \leq 6) \\ 2(x-7)^2 - 5, & (6 < x \leq 9) \end{cases}$$

6.73 ★★★ Given the function  $f(x) = |x-a|$ ,  $g(x) = x^2 + 2ax + 1$  ( $a$  is a positive constant). The y-intercepts of the graphs of  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  are equal.

(1) Evaluate  $a$ . (2) What is the monotone increasing interval of  $f(x) + g(x)$ . (3) If  $n \in N^*$ , show  $10^{f(n)} \cdot (\frac{4}{5})^{g(n)} < 4$ .

(1) Solution: From the given condition, we have  $f(0) = g(0)$ . Then  $|a| = 1$ . Since  $a > 0$ , then  $a = 1$ .

(2) Solution:  $f(x) + g(x) = |x-1| + x^2 + 2x + 1$ . When  $x \geq 1$ , then  $f(x) + g(x) = x^2 + 3x$ . It is monotonous increasing on the interval  $[1, +\infty)$ . When  $x < 1$ , then  $f(x) + g(x) = x^2 + x + 2$ . It is monotonous decreasing on the interval  $[-\frac{1}{2}, 1)$ .

(3) Proof: Let  $T_n = 10^{f(n)} \cdot (\frac{4}{5})^{g(n)}$ . Solving the inequality  $\frac{T_{n+1}}{T_n} < 1$  with  $T_n > 0$  to obtain  $10(\frac{4}{5})^{2n+3} < 1$ . By solving the inequality, we have  $n > \frac{1}{2\lg 0.8} - \frac{3}{2} \approx 3.7$ . Since  $n \in N^*$ , then  $n \geq 4$ . Thus  $T_1 \leq T_2 \leq T_3 \leq T_4$ , while  $T_4 > T_5 > T_6 > \dots$ .

$$\text{Therefore } 10^{f(n)} \cdot (\frac{4}{5})^{g(n)} \leq 10^{f(4)} \cdot (\frac{4}{5})^{g(4)} = 10^3 \cdot (\frac{4}{5})^{25} < 4.$$

6.74 ★★ If the symmetric axis of the quadratic function  $f(x) = x^2 + bx + c$  is on the right of y-axis. Its y-intercept is  $P(0, -3)$ , and its x-intercepts are  $A, B$ . Its vertex is  $Q$ . If the area of  $\triangle QAB$  is 8, find the analytic expression of the quadratic function.

Solution: Let  $A(x_1, 0), B(x_2, 0)$ , then  $x_1, x_2$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + bx + c = 0$ . Since  $x_1 + x_2 = -b$ ,  $x_1 \cdot x_2 = c$ , then  $AB = |x_1 - x_2| = \sqrt{(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1x_2} = \sqrt{b^2 - 4c}$ . The vertex of the parabolic curve is  $\frac{4c - b^2}{4}$ . Thus  $S_{\triangle QAB} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{b^2 - 4c} \cdot |\frac{4c - b^2}{4}|$  which is equivalent to  $8 = \frac{1}{8}\sqrt{b^2 - 4c} \cdot (b^2 - 4c)$ . Then  $\sqrt{b^2 - 4c} = 4$  ①. Since the intersection of the parabolic curve and y-axis is  $(0, -3)$ , then substituting  $c = -3$  into ① to generate  $b = \pm 2$ . When  $b = 2$ , then the symmetric axis is  $x = -\frac{2}{2} = -1$  which is on the left of y-axis. It is contradicting to the given conditions. Thus  $b = -2$ . When  $b = -2$ , the analytic expression of the quadratic function is  $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$ .

6.75 ★★★ If  $k \in R$ ,  $f(x) = \frac{x^4 + kx^2 + 1}{x^4 + x^2 + 1}$ .  $f(a), f(b), f(c)$  form three sides of a triangle for arbitrary real numbers  $a, b, c$ . Find the range of  $k$ .

Solution: To have  $f(x) > 0$ , we only need  $x^4 + kx^2 + 1 > 0$ .

$x^4 + kx^2 + 1 > 0$  holds when  $k \geq 0$ . We need  $\Delta = k^2 - 4 < 0$  when  $k < 0$ . This means  $-2 < k < 0$ . Thus  $f(x) > 0$  when  $k > -2$ .

① When  $k = 1$ , then  $f(x) = 1$  which satisfies the given conditions.

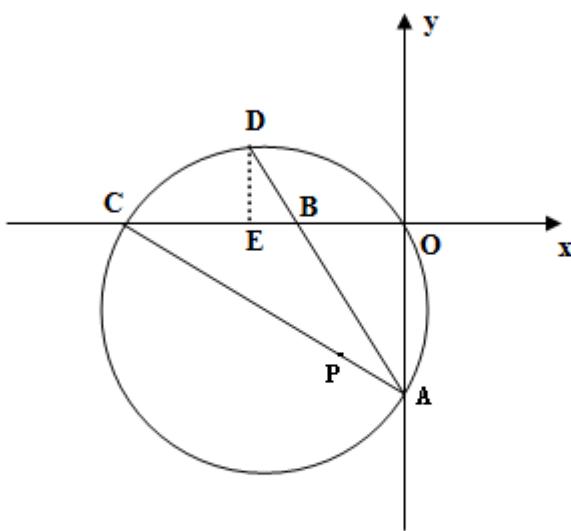
② When  $k > 1$ , then  $f(x) = 1 + \frac{(k-1)x^2}{x^4 + x^2 + 1} \geq 1$  and the equation holds when  $x = 0$ .

Additionally,  $f(x) = 1 + \frac{(k-1)x^2}{x^4 + x^2 + 1} \leq 1 + \frac{(k-1)x^2}{3x^2} = \frac{k+2}{3}$  and the equation holds when  $x = 1$ . Thus  $f_{\min}(x) = 1$ ,  $f_{\max}(x) = \frac{k+2}{3}$ .

According to the property that the sum of two sides is larger than the third side, we have  $2 \times 1 > \frac{k+2}{3}$ . Then  $k < 4$ . Thus  $1 < k < 4$  satisfies the given condition.

③ When  $-2 < k < 1$ , similarly with ②, we have  $f_{\max}(x) = 1$ ,  $f_{\min}(x) = \frac{k+2}{3}$ . Since  $2 \times \frac{k+2}{3} > 1$ , then  $k > -\frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $-\frac{1}{2} < k < 1$ .

As a conclusion, the range of  $k$  is  $-\frac{1}{2} < k < 4$ .



**Figure 5**

6.76 ★★★ As shown in Figure 5, in the Cartesian coordinates, the points  $B, C$  are on the negative x-axis, the points  $A$  is on the negative y-axis. The circle with diameter  $AC$  intersects the extended line of  $AB$  at the point  $D$ .  $\widehat{CD} = \widehat{AO}$ . If  $AB = 10$ , and the lengths of  $AO$  and  $BO$  are the two roots of the quadratic function  $x^2 + kx + 48 = 0$ ,  $AO > BO > 0$ .

(1) Find the coordinates of  $D$ . (2) If the point  $P$  is on the straight line  $AC$ , and  $AP = \frac{1}{4}AC$ . Is the point  $(-2, -10)$  on the straight line  $DP$ ? Please explain the reason.

Solution: (1) Since the lengths of  $AO$  and  $BO$  are the two roots of the quadratic function  $x^2 + kx + 48 = 0$ , then  $AO \cdot BO = 48$  ①. In  $Rt\triangle ABO$ ,  $AB^2 = AO^2 + BO^2$ . Since  $AO > BO > 0$ ,  $AB = 10$ , then  $AO^2 + BO^2 = 100$  ②. From ① and ②, we have  $AO = 8$ ,  $BO = 6$ .

Since  $\widehat{CD} = \widehat{AO}$ , then  $\angle BAC = \angle BCA$  which means  $\widehat{CDO} = \widehat{AOD}$ . Thus  $AB = BC = 10$ ,  $AD = CO = CB + BO = 16$ . Then  $DB = AD - AB = 6$ . We draw  $DE \perp BC$  at the point  $E$  through the point  $D$  as shown in Figure 5, then  $Rt\triangle DEB \sim Rt\triangle AOB$ . Thus  $\frac{DE}{AO} = \frac{DB}{AB} = \frac{EB}{OB}$ . This means  $DE = \frac{AO \cdot DB}{AB} = \frac{8 \times 6}{10} = \frac{24}{5}$ ,  $EB = \frac{DB \cdot OB}{AB} = \frac{6 \times 6}{10} = \frac{18}{5}$ . Since  $EO = EB + BO = \frac{18}{5} + 6 = \frac{48}{5}$ , then  $D$  is  $(-\frac{48}{5}, \frac{24}{5})$ .

(2) Since the point  $P$  is on  $AC$ ,  $AP = \frac{1}{4}AC$ ,  $A(0, -8)$ ,  $C(-16, 0)$ ,  $P(-4, -6)$ . Let the straight line passing through the points  $D$  and  $P$  is  $y = kx + b$ . Substituting the coordinates of  $D$  and  $P$  into the linear function to generate  $\begin{cases} -\frac{48}{5}k + b = \frac{24}{5} \\ -4k + b = -6 \end{cases}$ . Then

$k = -\frac{27}{14}$ ,  $b = -\frac{96}{7}$ . Hence the straight line passing through the points  $D$  and  $P$  is  $y = -\frac{27}{14}x - \frac{96}{7}$ . By substituting  $-2$ , the x-coordinate of the point  $(-2, -10)$ , into the equation of the straight line  $DP$ , we have  $y = -\frac{69}{7} \neq -10$ . Thus the point  $(-2, -10)$  is not on the straight line  $DP$ .

6.77 ★★★ Let  $M = \{(x, y) | |xy| = 1, x > 0\}$ ,  $N = \{(x, y) | \arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} y = \pi\}$ . Show  $M \cup N = M$ .

Proof: In the set  $M$ ,  $|xy| = 1$ . This means  $xy = 1$  or  $xy = -1$ . Since  $x > 0$ , then the graph of the reciprocal function is in the first and fourth quadrants.

In the set  $N$ ,  $\arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} y = \pi$ , then  $\arctan x = \pi - \operatorname{arccot} y$ . Thus  $x = \tan(\pi - \operatorname{arccot} y) = -\tan(\operatorname{arccot} y) = -\frac{1}{\cot(\pi - \operatorname{arccot} y)} = -\frac{1}{y}$ . Then  $xy = -1$ . Thus the reciprocal function is in the second and fourth quadrants. Since  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $0 < \operatorname{arccot} y < \pi$ , if  $x < 0$ , then  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan x < 0$ ,  $y > 0$ ,  $0 < \operatorname{arccot} y < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . At this time  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} y < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . It is contradicting to  $\arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} y = \pi$ . Thus  $x \geq 0$ . Then  $N = \{(x, y) | xy = -1, x > 0\}$  is the reciprocal function  $xy = -1$  in the fourth quadrant. Hence  $N \subset M$ . therefore  $M \cup N = M$ .

6.78 ★★★ The real numbers  $a, b, c$  satisfy  $\frac{a}{m+2} + \frac{b}{m+1} + \frac{c}{m} = 0$  where  $m$  is a positive integer. For  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ , (1) if  $a \neq 0$ , show  $af\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right) < 0$ . (2) If  $a \neq 0$ , show the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has real roots on the interval  $(0, 1)$ .

Proof: (1) From the given condition, we have  $af\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right) = a[a\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right)^2 + b\frac{m}{m+1} + c]$  ①. Since  $\frac{a}{m+2} + \frac{b}{m+1} + \frac{c}{m} = 0$ , then  $c = -\left(\frac{am}{m+2} + \frac{bm}{m+1}\right)$ . By substituting it into ①, we have  $af\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right) = a^2\left[\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right)^2 - \frac{m}{m+2}\right] = a^2m^2\left[\frac{1}{(m+1)^2} - \frac{1}{m^2+2m}\right]$ .

Since  $(m+1)^2 > m^2 + 2m > 0$ , then  $\frac{1}{(m+1)^2} - \frac{1}{m^2+2m} < 0$ . Thus  $af\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right) < 0$ .

(2) If  $a > 0$ , from the conclusion of (1), we have  $f\left(\frac{m}{m+1}\right) < 0$ . We only need to prove one of  $f(0)$  and  $f(1)$  is larger than 0. Since  $f(0) = c$ ,  $f(1) = a+b+c$ , then  $f(0) > 0$  holds if  $c > 0$ . We prove the conclusion. If  $c \leq 0$ , we only need to prove  $f(1) = a+b+c > 0$ . By applying  $\frac{a}{m+2} + \frac{b}{m+1} + \frac{c}{m} = 0$ , we have  $b = -\left[\frac{a(m+1)}{m+2} + \frac{c(m+1)}{m}\right]$ . Thus  $f(1) = a - \frac{a(m+1)}{m+2} - \frac{c(m+1)}{m} + c = \frac{a}{m+2} - \frac{c}{m}$ . Since  $a > 0, m > 0, c \leq 0$ , then  $f(1) > 0$ . We prove the conclusion. Hence when  $a > 0$ , the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has real roots on the interval  $(0, 1)$ . Similarly, when  $a < 0$ , the equation  $f(x) = 0$  also has real roots on the interval  $(0, 1)$ . Therefore, the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has real roots on the interval  $(0, 1)$  when  $a \neq 0$ .

This e-book  
is made with  
**SetaPDF**



**PDF components for PHP developers**

**www.setasign.com**

6.79 ★★★ If the function  $f(x)$  is the inverse function of  $y = \frac{2}{10^x + 1} - 1$  ( $x \in R$ ), the graph of  $g(x)$  and the graph of  $y = -\frac{1}{x+2}$  are symmetric about the straight line  $x = -2$ . Let  $F(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ .

(1) Find the analytic expression and the domain of  $F(x)$ . (2) Determine whether there exist two distinct points  $A, B$  on the graph of the function  $F(x)$  such that the straight line  $AB$  is perpendicular to y-axis. If yes, find the coordinates of  $A, B$ . If no, please explain the reason.

Solution: (1) Since  $y = \frac{2}{10^x + 1} - 1$ , then its inverse function is  $f(x) = \lg \frac{1-x}{1+x}$ .

Additionally, the graph of  $g(x)$  and the graph of  $y = -\frac{1}{x+2}$  are symmetric about the straight line  $x = -2$ , then  $g(x) = \frac{1}{x+2}$ . Thus  $F(x) = \lg \frac{1-x}{1+x} + \frac{1}{x+2}, x \in (-1, 1)$ .

(2) Let the two distinct points  $A, B$  on the graph of the function  $F(x)$  be  $A(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $B(x_2, y_2)$ ,  $-1 < x_1 < x_2 < 1$ , then  $y_1 - y_2 = F(x_1) - F(x_2) = \lg \frac{1-x_1}{1+x_1} + \frac{1}{x_1+2} - \lg \frac{1-x_2}{1+x_2} - \frac{1}{x_2+2} = \lg(\frac{1-x_1}{1+x_1} \frac{1+x_2}{1-x_2}) + (\frac{1}{x_1+2} - \frac{1}{x_2+2}) = \lg(\frac{1-x_1}{1+x_1} \frac{1+x_2}{1-x_2}) + \frac{x_2-x_1}{(x_1+2)(x_2+2)}$ . Since  $-1 < x_1 < x_2 < 1$ , then  $\frac{1+x_2}{1+x_1} > 1, \frac{1-x_1}{1-x_2} > 1, x_2 - x_1 > 0, (x_1+2)(x_2+2) > 0$ . Thus  $\lg(\frac{1-x_1}{1+x_1} \frac{1+x_2}{1-x_2}) > 0, \frac{x_2-x_1}{(x_1+2)(x_2+2)} > 0$ . Hence  $y_1 > y_2$ , which means  $F(x)$  is monotone decreasing on  $(-1, 1)$ . Therefore there do not exist two distinct points  $A, B$  on the graph of the function  $F(x)$  such that the straight line  $AB$  is perpendicular to y-axis.

6.80 ★★★ Given the function  $f(x) = ax^2 + (b+1)x + b - 2$  ( $a \neq 0$ ). If there is a real number  $x_0$  such that  $f(x_0) = x_0$  holds, then  $x_0$  is called the fixed point of  $f(x)$ . (1) Find the fixed point of  $f(x)$  when  $a = 2, b = -2$ . (2) If for an arbitrary real number  $b$ , the function  $f(x)$  has two distinct fixed points. Find the range of the real number  $a$ . (3) On the condition of (2), if the x-coordinates of the points  $A, B$  on the curve of  $f(x)$  are the fixed points of  $f(x)$ , and the straight line  $y = kx + \frac{1}{2a^2+1}$  is the perpendicular bisector of the line segment  $AB$ , find the range of the real number  $b$ .

Solution: (1) Since  $f(x) = ax^2 + (b+1)x + b - 2$ , ( $a \neq 0$ ),  $a = 2, b = -2$ , then  $f(x) = 2x^2 - x - 4$ . Assume  $x$  is a fixed point, then  $2x^2 - x - 4 = x$ . Thus  $x_1 = -1, x_2 = 2$ . Hence the fixed points of  $f(x)$  are  $2x^2 - x - 4 = x$  are  $x_1 = -1$  and  $x_2 = 2$ .  
 (2) Since  $f(x) = x$ , then  $ax^2 + bx + b - 2 = 0$ . Since the function  $f(x)$  has two distinct fixed points, then  $\Delta > 0$ . Thus  $b^2 - 4a(b-2) > 0 \Rightarrow b^2 - 4ab + 8a > 0$  always holds for arbitrary  $b \in R$ . This means  $\Delta_b < 0, 16a^2 - 32a < 0$ . Hence  $0 < a < 2$ .

(3) Let  $A(x_1, x_1)$ ,  $B(x_2, x_2)$ . Since the straight line  $y = kx + \frac{1}{2a^2+1}$  is the perpendicular bisector of the line segment  $AB$ , then  $k = -1$ . Let the midpoint of  $AB$  is  $M(x_0, x_0)$ . From (2), we have  $x_0 = -\frac{b}{2a}$ . Since  $M$  is on the straight line  $y = kx + \frac{1}{2a^2+1}$ , then  $-\frac{b}{2a} = \frac{b}{2a} + \frac{1}{2a^2+1}$ . By simplifying the equation, we have  $b = -\frac{a}{2a^2+1} = -\frac{1}{2a+\frac{1}{a}} \geq -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2a \cdot \frac{1}{a}}} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$ , and the equation holds if and only if  $a = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ . Hence  $b \in [-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}, +\infty)$ .

**6.81 ★★★** The curve of the quadratic function  $y = x^2 - (2m+4)x + m^2 - 4$  passes through y-axis, and its y-intercept is below the origin. The curve of the quadratic function  $y$  passes through x-axis, and its two x-intercepts are  $A, B$ .  $A$  is on the left of  $B$ . The distances from  $A, B$  to the origin are  $|AO|, |OB|$ .  $|AO|$  and  $|BO|$  satisfy  $3(|OB| - |AO|) = 2|AO| \cdot |OB|$ . The intersection of the straight line  $y = kx + k$  and the curve of the quadratic function is  $P$ . the tangent function of acute angle  $\angle POB$  is 4.

(1) Find the analytic expression of the quadratic function. (2) Find the analytic expression of the linear function  $y = kx + k$ . (3) Find the coordinates of  $P$ .

Solution: (1) Let the coordinates of  $A, B$  be  $A(x_1, 0)$ ,  $B(x_2, 0)$ , and  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $x_1, x_2$  are the two real roots of the equation  $x^2 - (2m+4)x + m^2 - 4 = 0$ .  $\Delta = [-(2m+4)]^2 - 4(m^2 - 4) > 0$ , then  $m > -2$ . On the other hand, since the quadratic function has y-intercept below the origin, and  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $x_1 < 0, x_2 > 0$ . Since  $3(|OB| - |AO|) = 2|AO||OB|$ , then  $3[x_2 - (-x_1)] = 2(-x_1)x_2$ .  $3(2m+4) = -2(m^2 - 4) \Rightarrow m^2 + 3m + 2 = 0$ . Thus  $m_1 = -1, m_2 = -2$ . Since  $m > -2$ ,  $m_1 = -1$ . Hence the analytic expression of the quadratic function is  $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$ .

(2) Since  $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$ , then  $A(-1, 0)$ ,  $B(3, 0)$ . Since the straight line  $y = kx + k$  intersects the quadratic curve, then  $\begin{cases} y = x^2 - 2x - 3 \\ y = kx + k \end{cases}$ . Thus  $\begin{cases} x_1 = -1 \\ y_1 = 0 \end{cases}$

or  $\begin{cases} x_2 = k+3 \\ y_2 = k^2 + 4k \end{cases}$ . Since  $\angle POB$  is an acute angle, then the point is on the right of y-axis. Thus,  $P$  is  $(k+3, k^2+4k)$ , and  $k+3 > 0$ . Since  $\tan \angle POB = 4$ , then  $\frac{|k^2 + 4k|}{k+3} = 4$ .

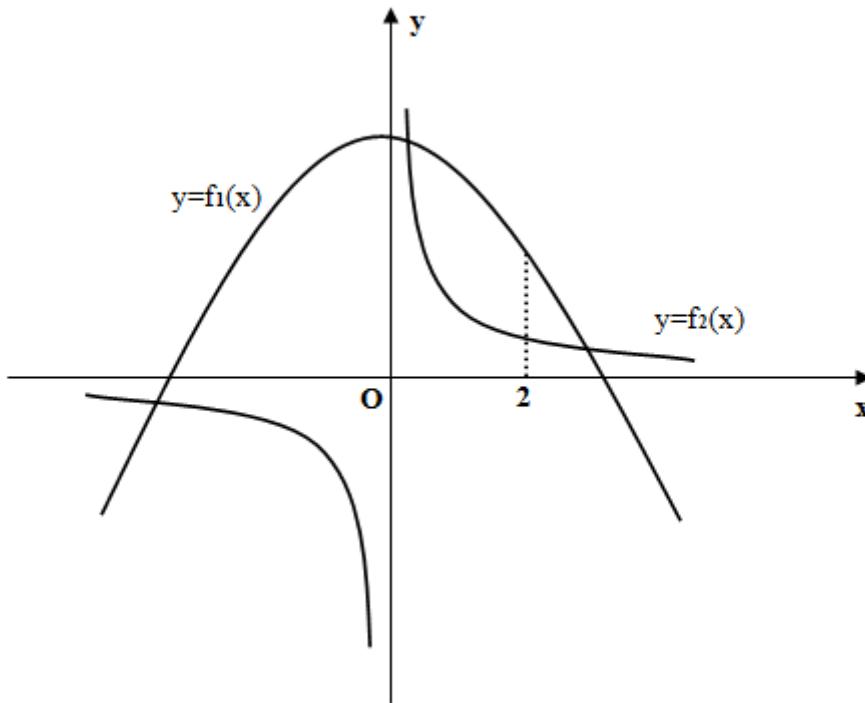
When  $\frac{|k^2 + 4k|}{k+3} = 4$ , we solve the equation to get  $k_1 = 2\sqrt{3}, k_2 = -2\sqrt{3}$ . We can validate that  $k_1 = 2\sqrt{3}$  and  $k_2 = -2\sqrt{3}$  are both the solutions of the equation. Additionally,  $k_2 + 3 < 0$ , then  $k_1 = 2\sqrt{3}$ . When  $\frac{k^2 + 4k}{k+3} = -4$ , we solve the equation to get  $k_3 = -2, k_4 = -6$ . We can validate that  $k_3 = -2$  and  $k_4 = -6$  are both the solutions of the equation. Additionally,  $k_4 + 3 < 0$ , then  $k_3 = -2$ . Thus the analytic expression of the linear function is  $y = 2\sqrt{3}x + 2\sqrt{3}$  or  $y = -2x - 2$ .

(3) From (2), the analytic expression of the linear function is  $y = 2\sqrt{3}x + 2\sqrt{3}$  or  $y = -2x - 2$ .

When  $y = 2\sqrt{3}x + 2\sqrt{3}$ , then  $\frac{2\sqrt{3}x + 2\sqrt{3}}{x} = 4$ . Thus  $x = 2\sqrt{3} + 3$ ,  $y = 12 + 8\sqrt{3}$ .

Hence,  $P$  is  $(2\sqrt{3} + 3, 12 + 8\sqrt{3})$ .

When  $y = -2x - 2$ , then  $\frac{-2x - 2}{-x} = 4$ . Thus  $x = 1$ ,  $y = -4$ . Hence,  $P$  is  $(1, -4)$ .



**Figure 6**

6.82 ★★★ If the quadratic curve  $y = f_1(x)$  has the origin as its vertex and passes through the point  $(1, 1)$ . The distance between the two intersection points of the reciprocal curve  $y = f_2(x)$  and the diagonal line  $y = x$  is 8. Let  $f(x) = f_1(x) + f_2(x)$ .

(1) Find the analytic expression of  $f(x)$ . (2) Show the function  $f(x) = f(a)$  with respect to  $x$  has three real roots when  $a > 3$ .

(1) Solution: From the given condition, we let  $f_1(x) = ax^2$ . Since  $f(1) = 1$ , then  $a = 1$ . Thus  $f_1(x) = x^2$ . Let  $f_2(x) = \frac{k}{x}$  ( $k > 0$ ). The intersection points of its graph and the diagonal line  $y = x$  are  $A(\sqrt{k}, \sqrt{k})$  and  $B(-\sqrt{k}, -\sqrt{k})$ . Since  $|AB| = 8$ , then  $\sqrt{(\sqrt{k} + \sqrt{k})^2 + (\sqrt{k} + \sqrt{k})^2} = 8$ . Thus  $k = 8$ . Then  $f_2(x) = \frac{8}{x}$ . Hence  $f(x) = x^2 + \frac{8}{x}$ .

(2) Proof: Since  $f(x) = f(a)$ , then  $x^2 + \frac{8}{x} = a^2 + \frac{8}{a}$  which is equivalent to  $\frac{8}{x} = -x^2 + a^2 + \frac{8}{a}$ . The curve  $f_2(x) = \frac{8}{x}$  and the curve  $f_3(x) = -x^2 + a^2 + \frac{8}{a}$  are sketched in Figure 6. From the figure, we observe that  $f_2(x)$  and  $f_3(x)$  have one intersection point in the third quadrant. Then  $f(x) = f(a)$  has a negative solution.

Since  $f_2(2) = 4$ ,  $f_3(2) = -4 + a^2 + \frac{8}{a}$ . When  $a > 3$ , the point  $(2, f(2))$  on the curve  $f_3(x)$  in the first quadrant is above the curve  $f_2(x)$ . Thus the curves  $f_2(x)$  and  $f_3(x)$  have two intersection points in the first quadrant. Hence  $f(x) = f(a)$  has two positive solutions. Therefore  $f(x) = f(a)$  has three real solutions.

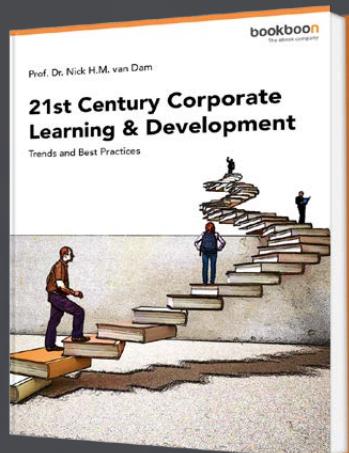
**6.83 ★★★★** If the domain of the function  $f(x)$  is symmetric about the origin but does not include zero. For an arbitrary real number  $x$  in the domain, there exist  $x_1, x_2$  in the domain such that  $x = x_1 - x_2$ ,  $f(x_1) \neq f(x_2)$ , and the following conditions hold: (A) If  $0 < |x_1 - x_2| < 2a$ , then  $f(x_1 - x_2) = \frac{f(x_1)f(x_2)+1}{f(x_2)-f(x_1)}$ . (B)  $f(a) = 1$  ( $a$  is a positive constant). (C)  $f(x) > 0$  when  $0 < x < 2a$ . Show (1)  $f(x)$  is an odd function. (2)  $f(x)$  is a periodic function. And evaluate the period. (3)  $f(x)$  is a decreasing function on  $(0, 4a)$ .

Proof: (1) From the given condition, we have  $f(x) = f(x_1 - x_2) = \frac{f(x_1)f(x_2)+1}{f(x_2)-f(x_1)} = -f(x_2 - x_1) = -f(-x)$ . Thus  $f(x)$  is an odd function.  
 (2) Since  $f(a) = 1$ , then  $f(-a) = -f(a) = -1$ . Thus  $f(-2a) = f(-a - a) = \frac{f(-a)f(a)+1}{f(a)-f(-a)} = 0$ . If  $f(x) \neq 0$ , then  $f(x + 2a) = f[x - (-2a)] = \frac{f(x)f(-2a)+1}{f(-2a)-f(x)} = -\frac{1}{f(x)}$ ,  $f(x + 4a) = f[(x + 2a) + 2a] = -\frac{1}{f(x + 2a)} = f(x)$ .

## Free eBook on Learning & Development

By the Chief Learning Officer of McKinsey

Download Now



Download free eBooks at [bookboon.com](http://bookboon.com)



Click on the ad to read more

If  $f(x) = 0$ , then  $f(x+a) = f[x - (-a)] = \frac{f(x)f(-a) + 1}{f(-a) - f(x)} = -1$ ,  $f(x+3a) = f[(x+a)+2a] = -\frac{1}{f(x+a)} = 1$ .  $f(x+4a) = f[(x+3a)-(-a)] = \frac{f(x+3a)f(-a) + 1}{f(-a) - f(x+3a)} = 0$ . Thus  $f(x+4a) = f(x)$ .

Hence  $f(x)$  is a periodic function, and the period is  $4a$ .

(3) When  $0 < x_1 < x_2 \leq 2a$ , then  $0 < x_2 - x_1 < 2a$ . Thus  $f(x_1) > 0$ ,  $f(x_2) \geq 0$  ( $f(x_2) = -f(-2a) = 0$  when  $x_2 = 2a$ ). and  $\frac{f(x_2)f(x_1) + 1}{f(x_1) - f(x_2)} = f(x_2 - x_1) > 0$ . Hence  $f(x_1) > f(x_2)$ .

When  $2a < x_1 < x_2 < 4a$ , then  $0 < x_1 - 2a < x_2 - 2a < 2a$ . Thus  $f(x_1 - 2a) > f(x_2 - 2a) > 0$ . Hence  $f(x) = f[(x-2a)+2a] = -\frac{1}{f(x-2a)}$ . Then  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) = -\frac{1}{f(x_1-2a)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2-2a)} > 0$ . Hence  $f(x)$  is a decreasing function on  $(2a, 4a)$ .

Therefore,  $f(x)$  is a decreasing function on  $(0, 4a)$ .

**6.84 ★★★★** If the inverse function of the function  $f(x) = \log_a(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 2})$  ( $a > 0, a \neq 1$ ) is  $f^{-1}(x)$  and let  $g(n) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}f^{-1}(n + \log_a \sqrt{2})$ . If  $g(n) < \frac{3^n + 3^{-n}}{2}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Find the range of  $a$ .

Solution: Since  $x + \sqrt{x^2 - 2} > 0$ , then the domain of  $f(x)$  is  $[\sqrt{2}, +\infty)$ . Thus  $x + \sqrt{x^2 - 2} \geq \sqrt{2}$ .

When  $a > 1$ , the domain of  $f^{-1}(x)$  is  $[\log_a \sqrt{2}, +\infty)$ . When  $0 < a < 1$ , the domain of  $f^{-1}(x)$  is  $(-\infty, \log_a \sqrt{2}]$ . Since  $y = \log_a(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 2})$ , we have  $x + \sqrt{x^2 - 2} = a^y$  ①. Rationalizing the numerator of ① to obtain  $x - \sqrt{x^2 - 2} = 2a^{-y}$  ②. From ① and ②, we have  $x = \frac{a^y + 2a^{-y}}{2}$ . Since  $n + \log_a \sqrt{2} \in [\log_a \sqrt{2}, +\infty)$ , then  $a > 1$ , and then  $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{a^x + 2a^{-x}}{2}$  ( $x \geq \log_a \sqrt{2}$ ). Hence  $g(n) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}f^{-1}(n + \log_a \sqrt{2}) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} [a^{n+\log_a \sqrt{2}} + 2a^{-(n+\log_a \sqrt{2})}] = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} [\sqrt{2}a^n + 2a^{-n} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}] = \frac{a^n + a^{-n}}{2}$ . Since  $g(n) < \frac{3^n + 3^{-n}}{2}$ , then  $a^n + a^{-n} < 3^n + 3^{-n} \Rightarrow 3^n a^{2n} + 3^n < 3^{2n} a^n + a^n \Rightarrow (3^n a^n - 1)(a^n - 3^n) < 0 \Rightarrow \frac{1}{3} < a < 3$ . Since  $a > 1$ , then  $1 < a < 3$ .

6.85 ★★★★ The straight line  $l$  with dip angle  $45^0$  passes through the point  $A(1 - 2)$  and the point  $B$  where  $B$  is in the first quadrant and  $|AB| = 3\sqrt{2}$ .

(1) Find the coordinates of the point  $B$ . (2) If the straight line  $l$  passes through the hyperbolic curve  $C : \frac{x^2}{a^2} - y^2 = 1(a > 0)$  at the two points  $E$  and  $F$ , and the middle point of the line segment  $EF$  is  $(4, 1)$ . Evaluate  $a$ . (3) For an arbitrary point  $P$  in the plane, when  $Q$  is moving on the line segment  $AB$ , we denote the minimum value of  $|PQ|$  as the distance from the point  $P$  to the line segment  $AB$ . If the point  $P$  moves on the x-axis, find the function for the distance  $h(t)$  from the point  $P(t, 0)$  to the line segment  $AB$ .

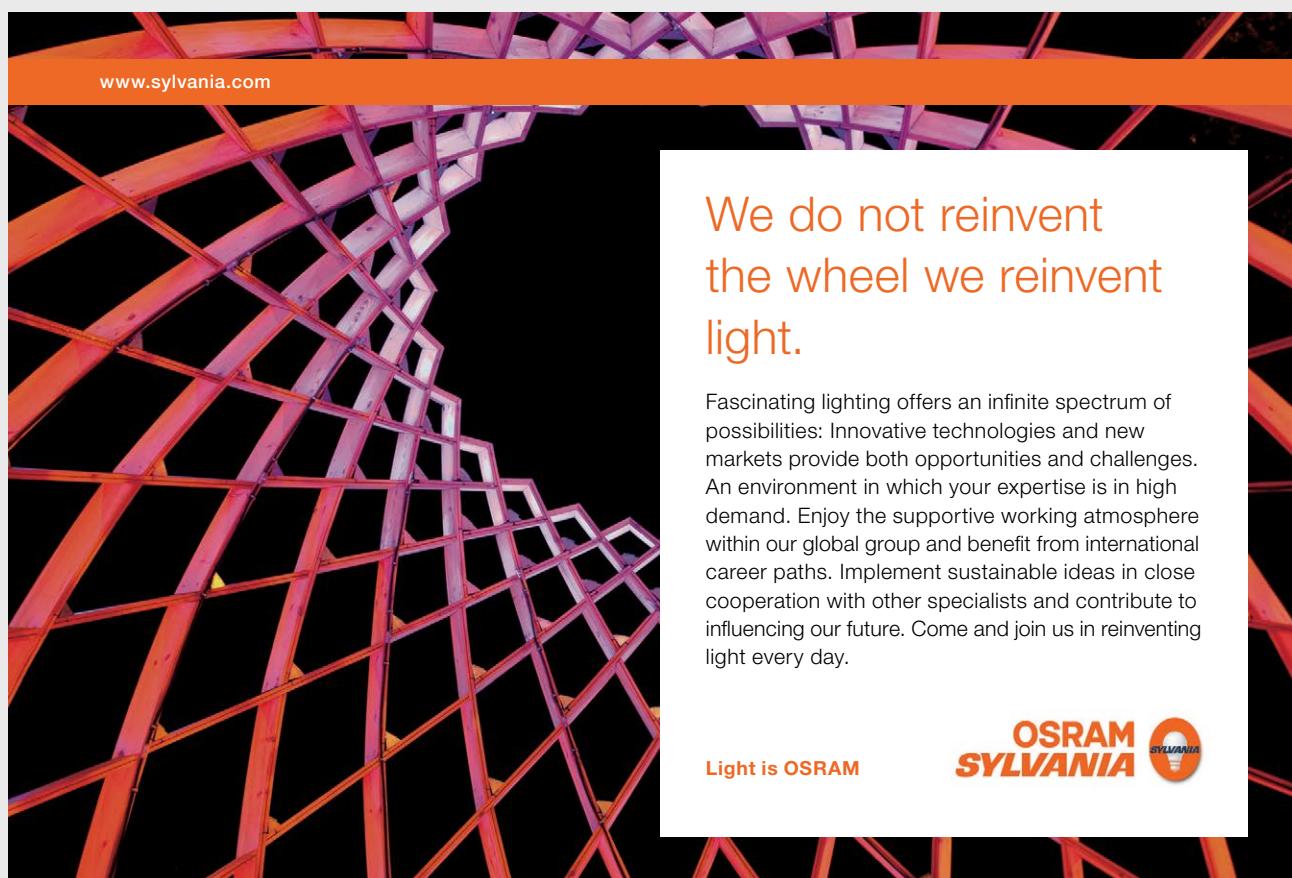
Solution: (1) Let the equation of the straight line  $l$  is  $y = \tan 45^0 x + b = x + b$ . Since the straight line passes through the point  $A(1 - 2)$ , then  $-2 = 1 + b$ . Thus  $b = -3$ .

And  $y = x - 3$ . Let the point  $B = (x, y)$ . Since  $\begin{cases} y = x - 3 \\ (x - 1)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = (3\sqrt{2})^2 \end{cases}$  and  $x > 0, y > 0$ , then  $x = 4, y = 1$ . Hence, the coordinate of  $B$  is  $(4, 1)$ .

(2) Since  $\begin{cases} y = x - 3 \\ \frac{x^2}{a^2} - y^2 = 1 \end{cases}$ , then  $(\frac{1}{a^2} - 1)x^2 + 6x - 10 = 0$ . Let  $E(x_1, y_1), F(x_2, y_2)$ .

Since the middle point of  $EF$  is  $(4, 1)$ , then  $x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{6a^2}{1 - a^2} = 8$ . Thus  $a = 2$ .

(3) Let the coordinates of an arbitrary point  $Q$  on the line segment  $AB$  is  $(x, x - 3)$ .  $|PQ| = \sqrt{(t - x)^2 + (x - 3)^2}$ .



[www.sylvania.com](http://www.sylvania.com)

We do not reinvent the wheel we reinvent light.

Fascinating lighting offers an infinite spectrum of possibilities: Innovative technologies and new markets provide both opportunities and challenges. An environment in which your expertise is in high demand. Enjoy the supportive working atmosphere within our global group and benefit from international career paths. Implement sustainable ideas in close cooperation with other specialists and contribute to influencing our future. Come and join us in reinventing light every day.

Light is OSRAM

**OSRAM** **SYLVANIA**



Denote  $f(x) = \sqrt{(t-x)^2 + (x-3)^2} = \sqrt{2(x - \frac{t+3}{2})^2 + \frac{(t-3)^2}{2}}$  ( $1 \leq t \leq 4$ ). When  $1 \leq \frac{t+3}{2} \leq 4$ , i.e.  $-1 \leq t \leq 5$ , then  $|PQ|_{\min} = f(\frac{t+3}{2}) = \frac{|t-3|}{\sqrt{2}}$ . When  $\frac{t+3}{2} > 4$ , i.e.  $t > 5$ , then  $f(x)$  is monotonous decreasing on  $[1, 4]$ . Thus  $|PQ|_{\min} = f(4) = \sqrt{(t-4)^2 + 1}$ . When  $\frac{t+3}{2} < 1$ , i.e.  $t < -1$ , then  $f(x)$  is increasing on  $[1, 4]$ . Thus  $|PQ|_{\min} = f(4) = \sqrt{(t-1)^2 + 4}$ .

$$\text{As a conclusion, } h(t) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{(t-1)^2 + 4} & (t < -1) \\ \frac{|t-3|}{\sqrt{2}} & (-1 \leq t \leq 5) \\ \sqrt{(t-4)^2 + 1} & (t > 5) \end{cases}$$

6.86 ★★★ Let the function  $f(x) = a^x + \frac{x-2}{x+1}$  ( $a > 1$ ). Show (1) The function  $f(x)$  is increasing on  $(-1, +\infty)$ . (2) The equation  $f(x) = 0$  has no negative roots.

Proof: (1) Let  $-1 < x_1 < x_2$ , then  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) = a^{x_1} + \frac{x_1-2}{x_1+1} - a^{x_2} - \frac{x_2-2}{x_2+1} = a^{x_1} - a^{x_2} + \frac{3(x_1 - x_2)}{(x_1+1)(x_2+1)}$ . Since  $-1 < x_1 < x_2$ , then  $x_1+1 > 0, x_2+1 > 0, x_1-x_2 < 0$ , then  $\frac{3(x_1 - x_2)}{(x_1+1)(x_2+1)} < 0$ .

Since  $-1 < x_1 < x_2$  and  $a > 1$ , then  $a^{x_1} < a^{x_2}$ ,  $a^{x_1} - a^{x_2} < 0$ . Thus  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) < 0$  which is equivalent to  $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$ . Hence  $f(x)$  is increasing on  $(-1, +\infty)$ .

(2) Assume  $x_0$  is a negative root of the equation  $f(x) = 0$ , and  $x_0 \neq -1$ , then  $a^{x_0} + \frac{x_0-2}{x_0+1} = 0 \Rightarrow a^{x_0} = \frac{2-x_0}{x_0+1} = \frac{3-(x_0+1)}{x_0+1} = \frac{3}{x_0+1} - 1$  ①. When  $-1 < x_0 < 0$ , i.e.  $0 < x_0+1 < 1$ , then  $\frac{3}{x_0+1} - 1 > 2$ . Since  $a > 1$ , then  $a^{x_0} < 1$ , then the formula ① does not hold. When  $x_0 < -1$ , i.e.  $x_0+1 < 0$ , then  $\frac{3}{x_0+1} - 1 < -1$ . Since  $a^{x_0} > 0$ , then  $a^{x_0} < 1$ , then the formula ① does not hold.

As a conclusion, the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has no negative roots.

6.87 ★★★★ Let  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  ( $a \neq 0$ ). If  $|f(0)| \leq 1, |f(1)| \leq 1, |f(-1)| \leq 1$ . Show  $|f(x)| \leq \frac{5}{4}$  holds for any  $x \in [-1, 1]$ .

Proof: Since  $f(-1) = a - b + c$ ,  $f(1) = a + b + c$ ,  $f(0) = c$ , then  $a = \frac{1}{2}(f(1) + f(-1) - 2f(0))$ ,  $b = \frac{1}{2}(f(1) - f(-1))$ ,  $c = f(0)$ . Substituting  $a, b, c$  into  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  and simplifying the equation to obtain  $f(x) = f(1)\left(\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right) + f(-1)\left(\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right) + f(0)(1-x^2)$ .

When  $-1 \leq x < 0$ , then  $|f(x)| \leq |f(1)|\left|\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right| + |f(-1)|\left|\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right| + |f(0)||1-x^2| \leq \left|\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right| + \left|\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right| + |1-x^2| = -\left(\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right) + (1-x^2) = -x^2 - x + 1 = -(x+\frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{5}{4} \leq \frac{5}{4}$ .

When  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ , then  $|f(x)| \leq |f(1)|\left|\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right| + |f(-1)|\left|\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right| + |f(0)||1-x^2| \leq \left|\frac{x^2+x}{2}\right| + \left|\frac{x^2-x}{2}\right| + |1-x^2| = \frac{x^2+x}{2} + \frac{-x^2+x}{2} + 1-x^2 = -x^2 + x + 1 = -(x-\frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{5}{4} \leq \frac{5}{4}$ .

As a conclusion,  $|f(x)| \leq \frac{5}{4}$  holds for any  $x \in [-1, 1]$ .

**6.88 ★★★★★** (1) If  $x$  is an arbitrary positive integer, and the values of the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  are all integers. Show  $2a, a-b, c$  are all integers.

(2) Write the inverse statement of the above statement. Judge the inverse statement is true or false and provide your reason.

**Proof (1):** From the given condition, the values of the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  are all integers when  $x$  is an arbitrary positive integer, we have  $f(0) = c$  is an integer when  $x = 0$ . Similarly, when  $x = -1$ , then  $f(-1) = a - b + c$  is an integer. Thus  $a - b = f(-1) - c$  is an integer. When  $x = -2$ , then  $f(-2) = (-2)^2a + (-2)b + c$  is an integer. Thus  $2a = f(-2) - 2f(-1) + c$  is an integer. Hence  $2a, a-b, c$  are all integers.

(2) The inverse statement is that if  $2a, a-b, c$  are all integers, then the values of the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  are all integers when  $x$  is an arbitrary positive integer. This inverse statement is true and the proof is provided below.

If  $2a, a-b, c$  are all integers, then  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c = ax^2 + ax - ax + bx + c = ax(x+1) - (a-b)x + c$ . When  $x$  is an integer, then  $x(x+1)$  is an even function. Thus  $\frac{1}{2}x(x+1)$  is an integer. Additionally,  $2a$  is an integer, then  $2a \cdot \frac{1}{2}x(x+1)$  is an integer. Since  $a-b, c$  are integers, then  $-(a-b)x + c$  is an integer. Hence the values of the quadratic function  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  are all integers when  $x$  is an arbitrary positive integer.

An alternative proof: If  $2a, a-b, c$  are all integers, then when  $x$  is an even number (let  $x = 2k$ ), we have  $f(2k) = a(2k)^2 + b(2k) + c = 2a \cdot 2k^2 + [2a - 2(a-b)]k + c$  is an integer.

When  $x$  is an odd number, let  $x = 2k-1$ , we have  $f(2k-1) = a(2k-1)^2 + b(2k-1) + c = (4k^2 - 4k)a + a + 2kb - b + c = 2a(2k^2 - 2k) + [2a - 2(a-b)] + (a-b) + c$  is an integer. Therefore, the inverse statement is true.

6.89 ★★★★★ Let the function  $f_n(x)(n \in N^*)$  satisfy  $f_1(x) = 2$ ,  $f_{n+1}(x) = xf_n(x) + 1$ . Find the analytic expression of  $f_n(x)$  and prove the conclusion.

Solution: Since  $f_1(x) = 2$ ,  $f_{n+1}(x) = xf_n(x) + 1$ , then  $f_2(x) = xf_1(x) + 1 = 2x + 1$ ,  $f_3(x) = xf_2(x) + 1 = 2x^2 + x + 1$ ,  $f_4(x) = xf_3(x) + 1 = 2x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$ ,  $\dots$ . Thus we have  $f_n(x) = 2x^{n-1} + x^{n-2} + \dots + x + 1$  and the proof is provided below.

(1) When  $n = 1$ , then  $f_1(x) = 2x = 2$ . Thus  $p(1)$  holds.

(2) Assume  $p(k)$  holds when  $n = k$ , i.e.  $f_k(x) = 2x^{k-1} + x^{k-2} + \dots + x + 1$ .

When  $n = k + 1$ , we have  $f_{k+1}(x) = xf_k(x) + 1 = x(2x^{k-1} + x^{k-2} + \dots + x + 1) + 1 = 2x^k + x^{k-1} + \dots + x + 1$ . Thus  $f_{k+1}(x) = 2x^k + x^{k-1} + \dots + x + 1$ .  $p(k + 1)$  holds.

$f_n(x) = 2x^{n-1} + x^{n-2} + \dots + x + 1$  holds for all  $n \in N^*$ .

6.90 ★★★★★ If the function  $f(x)$  is defined on  $R$ ,  $f(0) = 2008$ , and for any  $x \in R$ ,  $f(x+2) - f(x) \leq 3 \cdot 2^x$  and  $f(x+6) - f(x) \geq 63 \cdot 2^x$  both hold. Compute  $f(2008)$ .

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $f(x+2) - f(x) = -[f(x+4) - f(x+2)] - [f(x+6) - f(x+4)] + [f(x+6) - f(x)] \geq -3 \cdot 2^{x+2} - 3 \cdot 2^{x+4} + 63 \cdot 2^x = -12 \cdot 2^x - 48 \cdot 2^x + 63 \cdot 2^x = 3 \cdot 2^x$ . Since  $f(x+2) - f(x) \leq 3 \cdot 2^x$ , then  $f(x+2) - f(x) = 3 \cdot 2^x$ . Thus  $f(2008) = f(2008) - f(2006) + f(2006) - f(2004) + \dots + f(2) - f(0) + f(0) = 3(2^{2006} + 2^{2004} + \dots + 2^2 + 1) + f(0) = 3 \frac{4^{1004} - 1}{4 - 1} + 2008 = 2^{2008} + 2007$ .



**Deloitte.**

© Deloitte & Touche LLP and affiliated entities.

Discover the truth at [www.deloitte.ca/careers](http://www.deloitte.ca/careers)



6.91 ★★★★★ If the function  $f(x)$  is defined on  $(0, +\infty)$  and satisfies  $f(x) + f(y) = f(xy)$ , and  $f(x) < 0$  when  $x > 1$ . If the inequality  $f(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}) \leq f(\sqrt{xy}) + f(a)$  always holds for any  $x, y \in (0, +\infty)$ , find the range of the real number  $a$ .

Solution: Let  $x_1, x_2 \in (0, +\infty)$ , and  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $\frac{x_2}{x_1} > 1$ . We get  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) = f(x_1) - f(x_1 \cdot \frac{x_2}{x_1}) = f(x_1) - [f(x_1) + f(\frac{x_2}{x_1})] = -f(\frac{x_2}{x_1}) > 0$ . Since  $x > 1$ , then  $f(x) < 0$ . Thus  $f(x_1) - f(x_2) > 0$ . Hence  $f(x_1) > f(x_2)$ . We obtain that the function  $f(x)$  is decreasing on  $(0, +\infty)$ . Then  $f(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}) \leq f(\sqrt{xy}) + f(a) \Rightarrow f(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}) \leq f(a\sqrt{xy}) \Rightarrow \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \geq a\sqrt{xy}$ . Thus  $a \leq \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{\sqrt{xy}}$ . Since  $\sqrt{xy} \leq \sqrt{\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2}}$ , then  $\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{\sqrt{xy}} \geq \sqrt{2}$ . Hence  $a \leq \sqrt{2}$ . Additionally, since  $a > 0$ , we have  $0 < a \leq \sqrt{2}$ .

After all, the range of the real number  $a$  is  $(0, \sqrt{2}]$ .

6.92 ★★★★★ Given  $f(x) = \frac{x}{x+1}$  ( $x \neq -1$ ).

(1) Find the intervals on which  $f(x)$  is monotone. (2) If  $a > b > 0$ ,  $c = \frac{1}{(a-b)b}$ , show  $f(a) + f(c) > \frac{3}{4}$ .

(1) Solution: Since  $f(x) = \frac{x}{x+1} = 1 - \frac{1}{x+1}$ , then  $f(x)$  is an monotone function on the interval  $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, +\infty)$ . Let  $-\infty < x_1 < x_2 < -1 \cup -1 < x_1 < x_2 < +\infty$ , we have  $f(x_2) - f(x_1) = 1 - \frac{1}{x_2+1} - 1 + \frac{1}{x_1+1} = \frac{x_2-x_1}{(x_1+1)(x_2+1)} > 0$ . Thus  $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$ . Hence  $f(x)$  is a monotone increasing function on the intervals  $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, +\infty)$ .

(2) If  $x > y > 0$ , since  $f(x) + f(y) = \frac{x}{x+1} + \frac{y}{y+1} = \frac{xy+xy+x+y}{xy+x+y+1} > \frac{xy+x+y}{xy+x+y+1} = f(xy+x+y)$ . And  $xy+x+y > x+y$ . From (1), we have  $f(xy+x+y) > f(x+y)$ . Thus  $f(x) + f(y) > f(x+y)$ . On the other hand,  $c = \frac{1}{(a-b)b} \geq \frac{1}{(\frac{a-b+b}{2})^2} = \frac{4}{a^2} > 0$ ,

then  $a+c \geq a + \frac{4}{a^2} = \frac{a}{2} + \frac{a}{2} + \frac{4}{a^2} \geq 3\sqrt[3]{\frac{a}{2} \cdot \frac{a}{2} \cdot \frac{4}{a^2}} = 3$ . Therefore  $f(a) + f(c) > f(a+c) \geq f(3) = \frac{3}{4}$ .

6.93 ★★★★★ If the monotone function  $f(x)$  defined on  $R$  satisfies  $f(3) = \log_2 3$ , and for any  $x, y \in R$ ,  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$ . (1) Determine  $f(x)$  is odd or even. (2) If  $f(k3^x) + f(3^x - 9^x - 2) < 0$  holds for any  $x \in R$ , find the range of the real number  $k$ .

Solution: (1) Since  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$  ( $x, y \in R$ ). Let  $x = y = 0$ , then  $f(0) = f(0) + f(0)$ . Thus  $f(0) = 0$ . Let  $y = -x$ , then  $f(0) = f(x) + f(-x)$ , i.e.  $f(x) + f(-x) = 0$ . Hence  $f(-x) = -f(x)$  holds for any  $x, y \in R$ . Therefore  $f(x)$  is an odd function.

(2) Since  $f(3) = \log_2 3 > 0$ ,  $f(3) > f(0)$ . Since  $f(x)$  is a monotone function, then  $f(x)$  is an increasing function on  $R$ . And Since  $f(x)$  is an odd function according to (1), we get  $f(k3^x) < -f(3^x - 9^x - 2) = f(-3^x + 9^x + 2)$ . Hence  $k3^x < -3^x + 9^x + 2 \Rightarrow 3^{2x} - (k+1)3^x + 2 > 0$  holds for any  $x \in R$ . Let  $t = 3^x$ , the question is equivalent to the following:  $t^2 - (k+1)t + 2 > 0$  holds for any  $t > 0$ . Let  $f(t) = t^2 - (k+1)t + 2$ , the symmetric axis is  $x = \frac{k+1}{2}$ . When  $\frac{k+1}{2} < 0$ , i.e.  $k < -1$ , then  $f(0) = 2 > 0$

satisfies the given problem. When  $\frac{k+1}{2} \geq 0$ , i.e.  $k \geq -1$ , for any  $t > 0$ ,  $f(t) > 0$

$$\text{always holds } \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{k+1}{2} \geq 0 \\ \Delta = (k+1)^2 - 8 < 0 \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow -1 \leq k \leq -1 + 2\sqrt{2}.$$

As a conclusion, when  $k < -1 + 2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $f(k3^x) + f(3^x - 9^x - 2) < 0$  holds for any  $x \in R$ . Therefore the range of the real number  $k$  is  $(-\infty, -1 + 2\sqrt{2})$ .

6.94 ★★★★★ Let the function  $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & (x = 0) \\ -\frac{1}{2}x & (4^{k-1} \leq |x| < 2 \cdot 4^{k-1}, k \in Z) \\ 2x & (2 \cdot 4^{k-1} \leq |x| \leq 4^k, k \in Z) \end{cases}$

(1) What is the domain of  $f(x)$ ? (2) We rotate the curve of  $y = f(x)$  around the origin by  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  to obtain the curve of  $y = g(x)$ . Find the analytic expression of  $g(x)$ . (3) For the function  $f(x)$  defined on  $R$ , if we rotate the curve of  $y = f(x)$  around the origin by  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  to obtain the same curve, show that the function  $f(x) = x$  has a unique solution.

(1) Solution: Let the domain of the function  $f(x)$  is  $D$ . For any  $x \in R$ ,  $x \in D$  when  $x = 0$ ; when  $x \neq 0$ , then  $|x| > 0$ . There exists an integer  $k$  such that  $4^{k-1} \leq |x| \leq 4^k$ , then  $x \in D$ , which means  $R \subseteq D$ . Hence  $D = R$ . Therefore the domain of  $f(x)$  is  $x \in R$ .

(2) Solution: We rotate an arbitrary point  $(x_0, y_0)$  on  $y = f(x)$  around the origin by  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ , then the coordinates of the new point is  $(-y_0, x_0)$ .  $f(0) = 0$  when  $x_0 = 0$ , then  $g(0) = 0$ . When  $4^{k-1} \leq |x| < 2 \cdot 4^{k-1}$ , then  $f(x_0) = -\frac{1}{2}x_0$ . Thus  $g(\frac{1}{2}x_0) = x_0$ . Let  $\frac{1}{2}x_0 = x_1$ , then  $g(x_1) = 2x_1$ . Thus  $2 \times 4^{k-2} \leq |x_1| < 4^{k-1}$ . When  $2 \times 4^{k-1} \leq |x_0| \leq 4^k$ ,  $f(x_0) = 2x_0$ . Thus  $g(-2x_0) = x_0$ . Let  $-2x_0 = x_1$ , then  $g(x_1) = -\frac{1}{2}x_1$ . Thus  $4^k \leq |x_1| \leq 2 \times 4^k$ .

$$\text{As a conclusion, } g(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & (x = 0) \\ 2x & (2 \cdot 4^{k-2} \leq |x| < 4^{k-1}, k \in \mathbb{Z}) \\ -\frac{1}{2}x & (4^k \leq |x| \leq 2 \cdot 4^k, k \in \mathbb{Z}) \end{cases}$$

(3) Proof: Let  $f(0) = y_0$ , then  $(0, y_0)$  is on the curve of the function  $f(x)$ . We rotate the point twice (by  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  each time) in the same direction around the origin to obtain the point  $(0, -y_0)$  which is still on the curve of  $y = f(x)$ . Since  $y_0 = f(0) = -y_0$ , then  $y_0 = 0$ ,  $f(0) = 0$ . Hence  $x = 0$  is a solution of the equation  $f(x) = x$ .

Assume  $f(x_0) = x_0$ , then the point  $(x_0, x_0)$  is on the curve of  $y = f(x)$ . If it rotates three  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  around the origin to generate the point  $(x_0, -x_0)$ . And the point is also on

the curve of  $y = f(x)$ . Hence  $x_0 = f(x_0) = -x_0$ . Then  $x_0 = 0$ .

After all, the function  $f(x) = x$  has a unique solution  $x = 0$ .

**6.95 ★★★★★** Let  $N$  be the set of natural numbers, and  $k \in N$ . If the function  $f : N \rightarrow N$  is strictly increasing, and for every  $n \in N$ ,  $f(f(n)) = kn$ . Show for an arbitrary  $n \in N$ ,  $\frac{2k}{k+1}n \leq f(n) \leq \frac{k+1}{2}n$ .

Proof: Let  $a, b \in N$ , and  $a < b$ . Since  $f : N \rightarrow N$  is a strictly increasing, we have  $f(a+1) - f(a) > 0$ . Thus  $f(a+1) - f(a) \geq 1$ . Then  $f(b) - f(a) = [f(b) - f(b-1)] + [f(b-1) - f(b-2)] + \cdots + [f(a+1) - f(a)] \geq 1 + 1 + \cdots + 1 = b - a$ .

SIMPLY CLEVER
ŠKODA


**We will turn your CV into  
an opportunity of a lifetime**



Do you like cars? Would you like to be a part of a successful brand?  
We will appreciate and reward both your enthusiasm and talent.  
Send us your CV. You will be surprised where it can take you.

Send us your CV on  
[www.employerforlife.com](http://www.employerforlife.com)

From the above conclusion, we have  $f(f(f(n))) - f(f(n)) \geq f(f(n)) - f(n) \geq f(n) - n$ , which is equivalent to  $kf(n) - kn \geq kn - f(n) \geq f(n) - n$ . Since  $kf(n) - kn \geq kn - f(n)$ , then  $f(n) \geq \frac{2k}{k+1}n$ . Since  $kn - f(n) \geq f(n) - n$ , then  $f(n) \leq \frac{k+1}{2}n$ .

Therefore for any  $n \in N$ ,  $\frac{2k}{k+1}n \leq f(n) \leq \frac{k+1}{2}n$  holds.

**6.96 ★★★★★** Given the function  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|}$  ( $x \neq 0$ ). (1) If the function  $f(x)$  is increasing on  $(0, +\infty)$ , find the range of  $b$ . (2) When  $b = 2$ , if  $f(x) < x$  holds on  $(1, +\infty)$ , find the range of  $a$ . (3) If the range of  $f(x)$  is also  $[m, n]$  when  $x \in [m, n]$ , we call  $f(x)$  as the closed function on  $[m, n]$ . Find the conditions that  $a, b$  should satisfy.

Solution: (1) When  $x \in (0, +\infty)$ , then  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|} = a - \frac{b}{x}$  is an increasing function.

Let  $0 < x_1 < x_2$ , then  $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$ . Thus  $f(x_2) - f(x_1) = -\frac{b}{x_2} + \frac{b}{x_1} = \frac{b(x_2 - x_1)}{x_1 x_2} > 0$ . Since  $0 < x_1 < x_2$ , then  $x_2 - x_1 > 0$ ,  $x_1 x_2 > 0$ . Thus  $b > 0$  which is equivalent to  $b \in (0, +\infty)$ .

(2) When  $b = 2$ ,  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|} < x$  holds on  $(1, +\infty)$ , i.e.  $a < x + \frac{2}{x}$ . Since  $x + \frac{2}{x} \geq 2\sqrt{\frac{2}{x}} = 2\sqrt{2}$  and the equation holds if and only if  $x = \frac{2}{x}$  which is equivalent to  $x = \sqrt{2}$  and  $\sqrt{2} \in (1, +\infty)$ . Thus the minimum value of  $x + \frac{2}{x}$  is  $2\sqrt{2}$  when  $x \in (1, +\infty)$ . Hence  $a \leq 2\sqrt{2}$ . Therefore the range of  $a$  is  $(-\infty, 2\sqrt{2}]$ .

(3) From the given condition, we know that the domain of  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|}$  is  $\{x|x \neq 0\}$ .

Let  $f(x)$  be a closed function on  $[m, n]$ , then  $mn > 0$ , and  $b \neq 0$ .

(i) If  $0 < m < n$ , when  $b > 0$ , then  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|}$  is an increasing function on

$(0, +\infty)$ . We have  $\begin{cases} f(m) = m \\ f(n) = n \end{cases}$ . Thus the equation  $a - \frac{b}{x} = x$  has two distinct roots on  $(0, +\infty)$ . This means  $x^2 - ax + b = 0$  has two distinct roots on  $(0, +\infty)$ . Hence  $\Delta = a^2 - 4b > 0$ ,  $x_1 + x_2 = a > 0$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = b > 0$ . Then  $a > 0$ ,  $b > 0$  and  $a^2 - 4b > 0$ .

When  $b < 0$ , then  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|} = a + \frac{-b}{x}$  is an decreasing function on  $(0, +\infty)$ . We

have  $\begin{cases} f(m) = n \\ f(n) = m \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} a - \frac{b}{m} = n \\ a - \frac{b}{n} = m \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} a = 0 \\ mn = -b \end{cases}$ . Thus  $a = 0$ ,  $b < 0$ .

(ii) If  $m < n < 0$ , when  $b > 0$ , then  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|} = a + \frac{b}{x}$  is a decreasing function on

$(-\infty, 0)$ . We have  $\begin{cases} f(m) = n \\ f(n) = m \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} a + \frac{b}{m} = n \\ a + \frac{b}{n} = m \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} a = 0 \\ mn = b \end{cases}$ . Thus  $a = 0, b > 0$ .

When  $b < 0$ , then  $f(x) = a - \frac{b}{|x|} = a + \frac{b}{x}$  is an increasing function on  $(-\infty, 0)$ . We have  $\begin{cases} f(m) = m \\ f(n) = n \end{cases}$ . Thus the equation  $a + \frac{b}{x} = x$  has two distinct roots on  $(-\infty, 0)$ .

This means  $x^2 - ax - b = 0$  has two distinct roots on  $(-\infty, 0)$ . Hence  $\Delta = a^2 + 4b > 0$ ,  $x_1 + x_2 = a < 0$ ,  $x_1 x_2 = -b > 0$ . Then  $a < 0, b < 0$  and  $a^2 + 4b > 0$ .

After all,  $a = 0, b \neq 0$  or  $a < 0, b < 0$  and  $a^2 + 4b > 0$  or  $a > 0, b > 0$  and  $a^2 - 4b > 0$ . Thus  $a, b$  should satisfy the conditions:  $a = 0, b \neq 0$  or  $ab > 0$  and  $a^2 - 4|b| > 0$ .

**6.97 ★★★★★** The function  $f(t)$  satisfies  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y) + xy + 1$  and  $f(-2) = -2$ . (1) Evaluate  $f(1)$ . (2) Show  $f(t) > t$  always holds for any positive integer  $t$  larger than 1. (3) Compute the number of integers which satisfy  $f(t) = t$ , and explain the reason.

(1) Solution: Let  $x = y = 0$ , then  $f(0) = -1$ . Let  $x = y = -1$ , since  $f(-2) = -2$ , then  $f(-2) = 2f(-1) + 2$ . Thus  $f(-1) = -2$ . Let  $x = 1, y = -1$ , then  $f(0) = f(1) + f(-1)$ . Thus  $f(1) = f(0) - f(-1) = 1$ .

(2) Solution: Let  $x = 1$ , then  $f(y+1) = f(y) + y + 2$ . Thus  $f(y+1) - f(y) = y + 2$  (\*). When  $y \in N$ , then  $f(y+1) - f(y) > 0$ . Since  $f(y+1) > f(y)$  and  $f(1) = 1$ , then  $f(y) > 0$  holds for any integer  $y$ . Thus when  $y \in N$ ,  $f(y+1) = f(y) + 1 + y + 1 > y + 1$ . Then  $f(t) > t$  always holds for any positive integer  $t$  larger than 1.

(3) From (\*) and (1), we have  $f(-3) = -1, f(-4) = 1$ . Now we can show that  $f(t) > t$  when  $t \leq -4$ .

Since  $t \leq -4$ , then  $-(t+2) \geq 2 > 0$ . From (\*), we have  $f(t) - f(t+1) = -(t+2) > 0$  which is equivalent to  $f(-5) - f(-4) > 0, f(-6) - f(-5) > 0, \dots, f(t+1) - f(t+2) > 0, f(t) - f(t+1) > 0$ . Adding the above inequalities to generate  $f(t) - f(-4) > 0$ . Thus  $f(t) > f(-4) = 1$ . Hence  $t \leq -4$ .

Therefore, the number of integers  $t$  which satisfy  $f(t) = t$  is two, and  $t = 1$  or  $t = -2$ .

**6.98 ★★★★★** The function  $f(x)$  is defined on  $(-1, 1)$ , and  $f\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 1$ .  $f(x) - f(y) = f\left(\frac{x-y}{1-xy}\right)$  for  $x, y \in (-1, 1)$ . The sequence  $\{x_n\}$ ,  $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}, x_{n+1} = \frac{2x_n}{1+x_n^2}$ . (1) Show  $f(x)$  is an odd function on  $(-1, 1)$ . (2) Find the analytic expression of  $f(x_n)$ . (3) Is there a natural number  $m$  such that  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \dots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} < \frac{m-8}{4}$  for any  $n \in N^*$ . If  $m$  exists, find its minimum value. If  $m$  does not exist, please explain the reason.

(1) Proof: Let  $x = y = 0$ , then  $f(0) = 0$ . Let  $x = 0$ , then  $f(0) - f(y) = f(-y)$ . Thus  $f(-y) + f(y) = 0$ . Hence for arbitrary  $x \in (-1, 1)$ ,  $f(-x) + f(x) = 0$  holds. Therefore  $f(x)$  is an odd function on  $(-1, 1)$ .

(2) Solution: Since the sequence  $\{x_n\}$ ,  $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $x_{n+1} = \frac{2x_n}{1+x_n^2}$ , then  $0 < x_n < 1$ .

Since  $f(x_n) - f(-x_n) = f[\frac{x_n - (-x_n)}{1 - x_n(-x_n)}] = f(\frac{2x_n}{1+x_n^2})$ . Additionally, since  $f(x)$  is an odd function on  $(-1, 1)$ , then  $f(x_{n+1}) = 2f(x_n)$ . Thus  $\frac{f(x_{n+1})}{f(x_n)} = 2$ . Since  $f(\frac{1}{2}) = 1$ ,

$x_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ , then  $f(x_1) = 1$ . Hence the sequence  $\{f(x_n)\}$  is a geometric sequence with the first term 1 and the common ratio 2. Thus  $f(x_n) = 2^{n-1}$ .

(3) Solution:  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{2^n}}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = 2 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} (n \in N^*)$ .

Assume there is a natural number  $m$  such that  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} < \frac{m-8}{4}$  for arbitrary  $n \in N^*$ . Then  $2 - \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} < \frac{m-8}{4}$  holds. Thus  $\frac{m-8}{4} \geq 2$ . We have  $m \geq 16$ . Therefore there is a natural number  $m$ , and  $\frac{1}{f(x_1)} + \frac{1}{f(x_2)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{f(x_n)} < \frac{m-8}{4}$  holds when  $m \geq 16$  for arbitrary  $n \in N^*$ . The minimum value of  $m$  is 16.

The advertisement features a large central image showing a teacher smiling and interacting with two young students who are looking at a laptop screen. The background is a stylized yellow and orange swirl design. In the top left corner is the e-Learning for Kids logo, which consists of a stylized 'E' made of colored squares followed by the text 'e-learning for kids'. In the bottom right corner, there is a green oval containing three bullet points: 'The number 1 MOOC for Primary Education', 'Free Digital Learning for Children 5-12', and '15 Million Children Reached'.

**About e-Learning for Kids** Established in 2004, e-Learning for Kids is a global nonprofit foundation dedicated to fun and free learning on the Internet for children ages 5 - 12 with courses in math, science, language arts, computers, health and environmental skills. Since 2005, more than 15 million children in over 190 countries have benefitted from eLessons provided by EFK! An all-volunteer staff consists of education and e-learning experts and business professionals from around the world committed to making difference. eLearning for Kids is actively seeking funding, volunteers, sponsors and courseware developers; get involved! For more information, please visit [www.e-learningforkids.org](http://www.e-learningforkids.org).



6.99 ★★★★★ The domain of the function  $f(x)$  is  $R^+$ , for arbitrary  $x, y \in R^+$ ,  $f(xy) = f(x) + f(y)$  holds. (1) Show  $f\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -f(x)$  when  $x \in R^+$ . (2) If  $f(x) < 0$  holds when  $x > 1$ , show  $f(x)$  has an inverse function. (3) Let  $f^{-1}(x)$  is the inverse function of  $f(x)$ . Show that in the domain of  $f^{-1}(x)$ ,  $f^{-1}(x_1 + x_2) = f^{-1}(x_1) \cdot f^{-1}(x_2)$ .

(1) Proof: Let  $y = \frac{1}{x}$  in the given equation, then  $f(x) + f\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = f(x \cdot \frac{1}{x}) = f(1)$ .

Let  $x = y = 1$ , then  $f(1) = f(1) + f(1)$ . Thus  $f(1) = 0$ . Hence  $f(x) + f\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = 0$ .

Therefore  $f\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -f(x)$  when  $x \in R^+$ .

(2) Proof: Let  $x_1, x_2 \in R^+$ , and  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $\frac{x_2}{x_1} > 1$ . Thus  $f(x_2) - f(x_1) = f(x_2) + f\left(\frac{1}{x_1}\right) = f\left(\frac{x_2}{x_1}\right) < 0$ . Hence the function  $f(x)$  is decreasing in  $R^+$ . Therefore  $f(x)$  has an inverse function.

(3) Proof: Since  $x_1, x_2, x_1 + x_2$  are in the domain of  $f^{-1}(x)$ , then  $f^{-1}(x_1), f^{-1}(x_2), f^{-1}(x_1 + x_2) \in R^+$ . Thus  $f[f^{-1}(x_1) \cdot f^{-1}(x_2)] = f[f^{-1}(x_1)] + f[f^{-1}(x_2)] = x_1 + x_2 = f[f^{-1}(x_1 + x_2)]$ . Hence  $f^{-1}(x_1 + x_2) = f^{-1}(x_1)f^{-1}(x_2)$ .

6.100 ★★★★★ The function  $f(x) = 2x^3 + (m-x)^3$  ( $m \in N^*$ ).

(1) If  $x_1, x_2 \in (0, m)$ , show  $f(x_1) + f(x_2) \geq 2f\left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}\right)$ . (2) If  $a_n = f(n)$  ( $n = 1, 2, \dots, m-1$ ), show  $a_1 + a_{m-1} \geq a_2 + a_{m-2}$ . (3) For arbitrary  $a, b, c \in [\frac{m}{2}, \frac{2}{3}m]$ , can the values of  $f(a), f(b), f(c)$  form the three side lengths of a triangle? Please explain the reason.

(1) Proof: From the given condition, we have  $x_1, x_2 \in (0, m)$ ,  $f(x_1) = 2x_1^3 + (m-x_1)^3$ ,  $f(x_2) = 2x_2^3 + (m-x_2)^3$ . Since  $x_1^3 + x_2^3 - 2\left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}\right)^3 = \frac{3}{4}(x_1+x_2)(x_1-x_2)^2$ ,  $x_1, x_2 \in (0, m)$ , then  $\frac{3}{4}(x_1+x_2)(x_1-x_2)^2 \geq 0$ . Thus  $x_1^3 + x_2^3 \geq 2\left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}\right)^3$  which is equivalent to  $2x_1^3 + 2x_2^3 \geq 2 \times 2\left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}\right)^3$ . Similarly,  $(m-x_1)^3 + (m-x_2)^3 \geq 2\left(\frac{m-x_1+m-x_2}{2}\right)^3 = 2(m-\frac{x_1+x_2}{2})^3$ . Therefore  $f(x_1) + f(x_2) \geq 2f\left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}\right)$ .

(2) Proof: From (1), we have  $a_1 + a_3 \geq 2a_2$ ,  $a_2 + a_4 \geq 2a_3$ ,  $a_3 + a_5 \geq 2a_4, \dots, a_{m-3} + a_{m-1} \geq 2a_{m-2}$ . Adding the above  $(m-3)$  inequalities to generate  $a_1 + a_{m-1} \geq a_2 + a_{m-2}$ .

(3) Solution: Since  $f(x) = 2x^3 + (m-x)^3$ , then  $f'(x) = 6x^2 - 3(m-x)^2 = 3x^2 + 6mx - 3m^2$ . Obviously,  $f'(x) > 0$  when  $x \in [\frac{m}{2}, \frac{2}{3}m]$ . This means  $f(x)$  is an increasing function on  $[\frac{m}{2}, \frac{2}{3}m]$ . The minimum value of  $f(x)$  is  $f(x)_{min} = 2 \times \frac{m^3}{8} + \frac{m^3}{8} = \frac{3}{8}m^3$  when  $x = \frac{m}{2}$ . The maximum value of  $f(x)$  is  $f(x)_{max} = 2 \times \frac{8}{27}m^3 + \frac{1}{27}m^3 = \frac{17}{27}m^3$  when  $x = \frac{2}{3}m$ .

We let  $a \leq b \leq c$ , then  $\frac{3}{8}m^3 \leq f(a) \leq f(b) \leq f(c) \leq \frac{17}{27}m^3$ . Thus  $f(a) + f(b) \geq \frac{3}{8}m^3 \cdot 2 = \frac{3}{4}m^3 > \frac{17}{27}m^3 \geq f(c)$ .

Therefore  $f(a), f(b), f(c)$  can be the three side lengths of a triangle.

6.101 ★★★★★ Given  $f(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ , and  $f_n(x) = \underbrace{f(f \cdots (f(x)))}_{nf}$ ,  $n \in N^*$ . Find the analytic expression of  $f_n(x)$  and prove it.

Solution: From the given condition, we have  $f_1(x) = f(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ ,  $f_2(x) = f(f(x)) = \frac{f(x)}{\sqrt{1-[f(x)]^2}} = \cdots = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-2x^2}}$ ,  $f_3(x) = f(f(f(x))) = f(f_2(x)) = \cdots = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-3x^2}}$ ,  $\dots$ . Then we generalize  $f_n(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-nx^2}}$  ( $n \in N^*$ ).

Now we prove the conclusion by mathematical induction.

(1) When  $n = 1$ ,  $f_1(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = f(x)$ .  $p(1)$  holds.

(2) Assume  $p(k)$  holds when  $n = k$ . This means that  $f_k(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-kx^2}}$  holds.

When  $n = k+1$ ,  $f_{k+1}(x) = \underbrace{f(f \cdots (f(x)))}_{(k+1)f} = f(f_k(x)) = \frac{f_k(x)}{\sqrt{1-f_k^2(x)}} = \frac{\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-kx^2}}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{1-kx^2}}} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-(k+1)x^2}}$ . Then  $f_{k+1}(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-(k+1)x^2}}$ . Hence  $p(k+1)$  also holds.

Therefore, for all  $n \in N^*$ ,  $f_n(x) = f(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-nx^2}}$  always holds.

6.102 ★★★★★ Let the function  $f_n(\theta) = \sin^n \theta + (-1)^n \cos^n \theta$ ,  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}$ , where  $n$  is a positive integer.

(1) Determine the monotonicity of  $f_1(\theta)$  and  $f_3(\theta)$ . Prove your conclusions.

(2) Show  $2f_6(\theta) - f_4(\theta) = (\cos^4 \theta - \sin^4 \theta)(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta)$ .

(3) For an arbitrary given positive integer  $n$ , find the maximum value and minimum value of the function  $f_n(\theta)$ .

(1) Solution: We can show that  $f_1(\theta)$  and  $f_3(\theta)$  are both increasing functions on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ .

Now we provide the proof for the monotonicity of  $f_1(\theta)$ .

Since  $f_1(\theta) = \sin \theta - \cos \theta$ , let  $\theta_1, \theta_2 \in [0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , and  $\theta_1 < \theta_2$ , then  $f_1(\theta_1) - f_1(\theta_2) = (\sin \theta_1 - \cos \theta_1) - (\sin \theta_2 - \cos \theta_2) = (\sin \theta_1 - \sin \theta_2) + (\cos \theta_2 - \cos \theta_1)$ . Since  $\sin \theta_1 < \sin \theta_2$ ,  $\cos \theta_2 < \cos \theta_1$ , then  $f_1(\theta_1) - f_1(\theta_2) < 0$ . Thus  $f_1(\theta_1) < f_1(\theta_2)$ . Hence  $f_1(\theta)$  is increasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ .

Similarly,  $f_3(\theta)$  is increasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$

(2) Proof: The left-hand side of the equation  $2f_6(\theta) - f_4(\theta) = 2(\sin^6 \theta + \cos^6 \theta) - (\sin^4 \theta + \cos^4 \theta) = 2(\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta)(\sin^4 \theta - \sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \theta + \cos^4 \theta) - (\sin^4 \theta + \cos^4 \theta) = \sin^4 \theta - 2 \sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \theta + \cos^4 \theta = (\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta)^2 - 4 \sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \theta = 1 - \sin^2 2\theta = \cos^2 2\theta$ .

The right-hand side of the equation  $= (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta)(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta)^2 = \cos^2 2\theta$ .

Thus, The left-hand side of the equation equals the right-hand side.

(3) When  $n = 1$ , the function  $f_1(\theta)$  is increasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , then  $f_1(\theta)_{\max} = f_1(\frac{\pi}{4}) = 0$ ,  $f_1(\theta)_{\min} = f_1(0) = -1$ . When  $n = 2$ ,  $f_2(\theta)_{\max} = f_2(\theta)_{\min} = 1$ . When  $n = 3$ , the function  $f_3(\theta)$  is increasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , then  $f_3(\theta)_{\max} = f_3(\frac{\pi}{4}) = 0$ ,  $f_3(\theta)_{\min} = f_3(0) = -1$ .

When  $n = 4$ , the function  $f_4(\theta) = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sin^2 2\theta$  is decreasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , then  $f_4(\theta)_{\max} = f_4(0) = 1$ ,  $f_4(\theta)_{\min} = f_4(\frac{\pi}{4}) = \frac{1}{2}$ . Now we discuss the case  $n \geq 5$ .

When  $n$  is an odd number, for arbitrary  $\theta_1, \theta_2 \in [0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , and  $\theta_1 < \theta_2$ , since  $f_n(\theta_1) - f_n(\theta_2) = (\sin^n \theta_1 - \sin^n \theta_2) + (\cos^n \theta_2 - \cos^n \theta_1)$ , and  $0 \leq \sin \theta_1 < \sin \theta_2 < 1$ ,  $0 < \cos \theta_2 < \cos \theta_1 \leq 1$ . Thus  $\sin^n \theta_1 < \sin^n \theta_2$ ,  $\cos^n \theta_2 < \cos^n \theta_1$ . Hence  $f_n(\theta_1) < f_n(\theta_2)$ . Then  $f_n(\theta)$  is increasing on  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ . We have  $f_n(\theta)_{\max} = f_n(\frac{\pi}{4}) = 0$ ,  $f_n(\theta)_{\min} = f_n(0) = -1$ .

When  $n$  is an even number, on one hand,  $f_n(\theta) = \sin^n \theta + \cos^n \theta \leq \sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta \leq 1 = f_n(0)$ , and on the other hand, for an arbitrary positive integer  $l \geq 2$ , we have  $2f_{2l}(\theta) - f_{2l-2}(\theta) = (\cos^{2l-2} \theta - \sin^{2l-2} \theta)(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) \geq 0$ , then  $f_n(\theta) \geq \frac{1}{2} f_{n-2}(\theta) \geq \dots \geq \frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}-1}} f_2(\theta) = \frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}-1}} = f_n(\frac{\pi}{4})$ . Thus  $f_n(\theta)_{\max} = f_n(0) = 1$ ,  $f_n(\theta)_{\min} = f_n(\frac{\pi}{4}) = 2\sqrt{(\frac{1}{2})^n}$ .

As a conclusion, when  $n$  is an odd number, the maximum value of  $f_n(\theta)$  is 0, the minimum value of  $f_n(\theta)$  is  $-1$ . When  $n$  is an even number, the maximum value of  $f_n(\theta)$  is 1, the minimum value of  $f_n(\theta)$  is  $2\sqrt{(\frac{1}{2})^n}$ .